

## MX9

---

Hand-Held Computer

Microsoft® Windows® Mobile 6.5 Operating System

## Reference Guide

---

# Disclaimer

Honeywell International Inc. ("HII") reserves the right to make changes in specifications and other information contained in this document without prior notice, and the reader should in all cases consult HII to determine whether any such changes have been made. The information in this publication does not represent a commitment on the part of HII.

HII shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein; nor for incidental or consequential damages resulting from the furnishing, performance, or use of this material.

This document contains proprietary information that is protected by copyright. All rights are reserved. No part of this document may be photocopied, reproduced, or translated into another language without the prior written consent of HII.

© 2009-2013 Honeywell International Inc. All rights reserved.

Web Address: [www.honeywellaidc.com](http://www.honeywellaidc.com)

RTerm is a trademark or registered trademark of EMS Technologies, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Microsoft® Windows, ActiveSync®, MSN, Outlook®, Windows Mobile®, the Windows logo, and Windows Media are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Marvell® is a registered trademark of Marvell Technology Group Ltd., or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Summit Data Communications, the Laird Technologies Logo, the Summit logo, and "Connected. No Matter What" are trademarks of Laird Technologies, Inc.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Symbol® is a registered trademark of Symbol Technologies. MOTOROLA, MOTO, MOTOROLA SOLUTIONS and the Stylized M Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Motorola Trademark Holdings, LLC and are used under license.

Hand Held is a trademark of Hand Held Products, Inc., a subsidiary of Honeywell International.

Wavelink®, the Wavelink logo and tagline, Wavelink Studio™, Avalanche Management Console™, Mobile Manager™, and Mobile Manager Enterprise™ are trademarks of Wavelink Corporation, Kirkland.

RAM® and RAM Mount™ are both trademarks of National Products Inc., 1205 S. Orr Street, Seattle, WA 98108.

Acrobat® Reader © 2013 with express permission from Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Other product names or marks mentioned in this document may be trademarks or registered trademarks of other companies and are the property of their respective owners.

## Patents

For patent information, please refer to [www.honeywellaidc.com/patents](http://www.honeywellaidc.com/patents).

## Limited Warranty

Refer to [www.honeywellaidc.com/warranty\\_information](http://www.honeywellaidc.com/warranty_information) for your product's warranty information.

# Table of Contents

<b>Chapter 1 - Introduction</b>	<b>1-1</b>
About this Guide	1-1
Components	1-2
Front	1-2
Special Purpose Keys	1-3
Special Purpose Keys - 38 Key	1-4
Top	1-5
Bottom	1-5
Back	1-5
Trigger Handle	1-6
Handstrap	1-7
Label Locations	1-8
External Power Supplies	1-9
AC/DC 15V Power Supply	1-9
Car Power Adapter	1-10
Replace CLA Fuse	1-10
Locking the MX9	1-10
Reboot	1-11
Warmboot	1-11
Restart (or Cold Boot)	1-11
Startup Help	1-11
<b>Chapter 2 - Hardware</b>	<b>2-1</b>
System Hardware	2-1
802.11 b/g and a/b/g Wireless Client	2-1
Central Processing Unit	2-1
System Memory	2-1
Internal SD Memory Card	2-1
Video Subsystem	2-2
Power Supply	2-2
Input/Output Connector	2-2
Audio Support	2-2
Bluetooth	2-3
Input/Output Port	2-3
Keypads	2-4
Modifier Keys	2-4
Expansion Slots	2-5
Power Key Functions	2-5

---

Status LEDs.....	2-6
System Status LED.....	2-6
Battery Charging Status LED.....	2-6
Alpha mode Status LED.....	2-6
Bluetooth Status LED.....	2-6
Scanner Status LED.....	2-7
Cold Storage.....	2-7
Vibrate Indicator.....	2-8
Scanners and Imagers.....	2-8
Integrated Bar Code Decoders.....	2-8
Tethered Bar Code Decoders.....	2-8
Bluetooth Client Bar Code Decoders.....	2-8
GPS Module.....	2-8
<b>Chapter 3 - Power.....</b>	<b>3-1</b>
Power Modes.....	3-1
On Mode.....	3-1
Suspend Mode.....	3-1
Off Mode.....	3-1
Batteries.....	3-2
Checking Battery Status.....	3-2
Main Battery Pack.....	3-2
Battery Hotswapping.....	3-3
Low Battery Warning.....	3-3
Super-cap Internal Battery.....	3-3
Handling Batteries Safely.....	3-3
<b>Chapter 4 - Software.....</b>	<b>4-1</b>
Introduction - Operating System.....	4-1
Windows Mobile.....	4-1
Installed Software.....	4-1
Software Load.....	4-2
Software Backup.....	4-2
Version Control.....	4-2
Boot Loader.....	4-3
Startup Folders and Launch Sequences.....	4-3
Installing Applications.....	4-3
Software Development.....	4-3
Today Screen.....	4-4
Start Menu.....	4-4
Configurable Today Screen Listing.....	4-5



---

Date.....	4-5
Device Unlocked / Device Locked.....	4-5
Notification Bar.....	4-6
Status Icons.....	4-7
Soft Keys.....	4-7
Start Menu Options.....	4-8
Office Mobile.....	4-10
Installed Programs.....	4-11
Internet Explorer Mobile.....	4-11
Office Mobile Applications.....	4-11
ActiveSync.....	4-11
AppLock (Option).....	4-11
Summit.....	4-12
SCU (Summit Client Utility).....	4-12
Certs.....	4-12
Windows Media.....	4-12
Bluetooth (Option).....	4-12
RFTerm (Option).....	4-13
Status Popup.....	4-13
HSMConnect.....	4-14
GrabTime.....	4-14
Synchronize with a local time server.....	4-14
Enhanced Launch.....	4-14
MX9 OS Upgrade.....	4-15
Introduction.....	4-15
OS and Language Options.....	4-15
Preparation.....	4-15
Accessing the SD Card Slot.....	4-16
Procedure.....	4-17
Battery State and OS Upgrade.....	4-17
Upgrade Help.....	4-17
Settings.....	4-18
Personal.....	4-19
System.....	4-19
Connections.....	4-21
Settings Panels.....	4-22
About Info.....	4-22
Version Tab and the Registry.....	4-22
Languages.....	4-22
Identifying Software Versions.....	4-22

---

---

MAC Address.....	4-22
Clock & Alarms.....	4-23
Time.....	4-23
Alarms.....	4-24
More.....	4-25
Lock.....	4-26
Password.....	4-26
Hint.....	4-27
Display.....	4-28
Power.....	4-29
Battery.....	4-29
Advanced.....	4-30
Sounds & Notifications.....	4-31
Sounds.....	4-32
Notifications.....	4-33
Vibrations.....	4-34
Today.....	4-35
Personal Panels.....	4-37
Buttons.....	4-37
Program Buttons.....	4-37
Up/Down Control.....	4-39
Input.....	4-40
Input Method.....	4-40
Word Completion.....	4-41
Options.....	4-42
Owner Information.....	4-43
System Panels.....	4-44
About.....	4-44
Version.....	4-44
Device ID.....	4-45
Copyrights.....	4-46
Administration - for AppLock.....	4-47
Introduction.....	4-47
Factory Default Settings - AppLock.....	4-48
Setup a New Device.....	4-49
Administration Mode.....	4-50
End User Mode.....	4-50
Passwords.....	4-51
AppLock Password Help.....	4-51
End-User Switching Technique.....	4-52

---

Using a Stylus Tap .....	4-52
Using the Switch Key Sequence .....	4-52
Hotkey (Activation hotkey) .....	4-52
Application Configuration .....	4-53
Application Panel .....	4-54
Launch Button .....	4-56
Auto At Boot .....	4-57
Auto Re-Launch .....	4-58
Manual (Launch) .....	4-59
Match .....	4-59
Allow close .....	4-59
End User Internet Explorer (EUIE) .....	4-60
Security Panel .....	4-61
Setting an Activation Hotkey .....	4-61
Setting a Password in the Security Panel .....	4-62
Options Panel .....	4-63
Status Panel .....	4-64
View .....	4-64
Log .....	4-65
Save As .....	4-65
AppLock Help .....	4-66
AppLock Error Messages .....	4-67
Backlight .....	4-73
Battery Power .....	4-73
External Power .....	4-74
Bluetooth .....	4-75
Initial Configuration .....	4-77
Subsequent Use .....	4-77
Bluetooth Devices .....	4-78
Clear Button .....	4-78
Discover Button .....	4-79
Discover .....	4-79
Bluetooth Device List .....	4-80
Bluetooth Device Menu .....	4-81
Bluetooth Properties .....	4-82
Settings .....	4-83
Turn On Bluetooth .....	4-83
Options .....	4-84
Reconnect .....	4-85
Options .....	4-86

---

---

About .....	4-87
Easy Pairing and Auto-Reconnect .....	4-87
Bluetooth Indicators .....	4-88
Bluetooth Bar Code Reader Setup .....	4-89
Introduction .....	4-89
MX9 with Label .....	4-90
MX9 without Label .....	4-91
Bluetooth Reader Beep and LED Indications .....	4-92
Bluetooth Printer Setup .....	4-92
Certificates .....	4-93
Personal .....	4-93
Intermediate .....	4-94
Root .....	4-95
Encryption .....	4-96
External GPS .....	4-97
Access .....	4-98
License Manager .....	4-99
Managed Programs .....	4-100
Memory .....	4-101
Main .....	4-101
Storage Card .....	4-102
Mixer .....	4-103
Mixer Panels .....	4-103
MX9WM Options .....	4-104
Communication .....	4-104
Misc .....	4-105
Status Popup .....	4-106
Peripherals .....	4-107
Heaters .....	4-107
Flashlight .....	4-108
GPS .....	4-109
Regional Settings .....	4-110
Registry .....	4-112
Remove Programs .....	4-113
Screen .....	4-114
General .....	4-114
Align Screen .....	4-115
Clear Type .....	4-116
Text Size .....	4-117
Task Manager .....	4-118

Wi-Fi.....	4-119
WAN.....	4-119
Initial Setup.....	4-120
Connection.....	4-121
Network.....	4-122
TCP/IP.....	4-123
Autoconnect.....	4-124
Admin.....	4-125
About.....	4-126
Connections Panel.....	4-127
Beam.....	4-127
Connections.....	4-128
Domain Enroll.....	4-130
Network Cards.....	4-131
Wireless Manager.....	4-133
Miscellaneous Start Panels.....	4-135
Standard Microsoft Applications.....	4-135
Internet Explorer Mobile.....	4-142
Options.....	4-143
Office Mobile.....	4-145
Excel Mobile.....	4-145
PowerPoint Mobile.....	4-146
Word Mobile.....	4-146
OneNote Mobile.....	4-147
Remote Desktop.....	4-148
Set Remote Desktop Options.....	4-148
Connect to a Remote Server.....	4-149

## **Chapter 5 - Using ActiveSync..... 5-1**

Introduction.....	5-1
Initial Setup.....	5-2
Connect via USB.....	5-2
Cable for USB ActiveSync Connection:.....	5-2
Explore.....	5-3
Backup Data Files using ActiveSync.....	5-3
Prerequisites.....	5-3
Connect.....	5-3
Disconnect.....	5-4
Reset and Loss of Host Re-connection.....	5-4
ActiveSync Help.....	5-4

---

Configuring the MX9 with HSMConnect .....	5-5
Install HSMConnect .....	5-5
Using HSMConnect .....	5-6
<b>Chapter 6 - Data Collection .....</b>	<b>6-1</b>
Return to Factory Default Settings .....	6-2
Data Processing Overview .....	6-2
Main Tab .....	6-3
Continuous Scan Mode .....	6-4
COM1 Tab .....	6-5
Notification Tab .....	6-6
Data Options Tab .....	6-8
Enable Code ID .....	6-9
Buttons .....	6-10
Symbology Settings .....	6-11
Clear Button .....	6-11
Advanced Button .....	6-12
Processing Order .....	6-12
Enable, Min, Max .....	6-13
Strip Leading/Trailing Control .....	6-14
Barcode Data Match List .....	6-15
Barcode Data Match Edit Buttons .....	6-16
Match List Rules .....	6-17
Add Prefix/Suffix Control .....	6-18
Symbologies .....	6-19
Custom AIM IDs .....	6-19
HHP Symbologies .....	6-20
OCR Symbology .....	6-28
OCR Template Examples .....	6-29
OCR Checksum Calculation .....	6-29
Ctrl Char Mapping .....	6-30
Translate All .....	6-31
Custom Identifiers .....	6-32
Control Code Replacement Examples .....	6-34
Bar Code Processing Examples .....	6-34
HHP Properties .....	6-36
Length Based Bar Code Stripping .....	6-38
Processing Tab .....	6-40
About Tab .....	6-41
Hat Encoding .....	6-42

---

<b>Chapter 7 - Enhanced Launch Utility</b>	<b>7-1</b>
Introduction .....	7-1
Registry Based Launch Items .....	7-1
Launch Startup options .....	7-3
Example .....	7-3
Script Based Launch Items .....	7-4
Enhanced Launch Utility Use .....	7-4
File Names .....	7-5
Command line structure .....	7-5
Comments .....	7-5
Commands Supported by Launch .....	7-6
Launch Error Messages .....	7-19
Example Script File .....	7-21
<b>Chapter 8 - Enabler Installation and Configuration</b>	<b>8-1</b>
Introduction .....	8-1
Installation .....	8-1
Installing the Enabler on Mobile Devices .....	8-1
Enabler Uninstall Process .....	8-2
Stop the Enabler Service .....	8-2
Update Monitoring Overview .....	8-2
Mobile Device Wireless and Network Settings .....	8-3
Preparing a Device for Remote Management .....	8-3
User Interface .....	8-4
Enabler Configuration .....	8-4
File Menu Options .....	8-5
Avalanche Update using File > Settings .....	8-6
Menu Options .....	8-6
Connection .....	8-7
Execution .....	8-8
Server Contact .....	8-9
Data .....	8-10
Preferences .....	8-11
Taskbar .....	8-13
Scan Config .....	8-14
Display .....	8-15
Shortcuts .....	8-16
SaaS .....	8-17
Adapters .....	8-18
Status .....	8-21

Exit .....	8-22
Using Remote Management .....	8-23
Using eXpress Scan .....	8-24
Step 1: Create Bar Codes .....	8-24
Step 2: Scan Bar Codes .....	8-24
Step 3: Process Completion .....	8-25
<b>Chapter 9 - Wireless Network Configuration .....</b>	<b>9-1</b>
Introduction .....	9-1
Important Notes .....	9-1
Summit Client Utility .....	9-2
Help .....	9-2
Summit Tray Icon .....	9-3
Using Windows Mobile Wireless Manager .....	9-4
Create a New Network Connection .....	9-4
Edit a Network Connection .....	9-6
Switch Control to SCU .....	9-6
Main Tab .....	9-7
Auto Profile .....	9-8
Admin Login .....	9-9
Profile Tab .....	9-10
Buttons .....	9-11
Profile Parameters .....	9-12
Status Tab .....	9-14
Diags Tab .....	9-15
Global Tab .....	9-16
Custom Parameter Option .....	9-17
Global Parameters .....	9-18
Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials .....	9-22
How to: Use Stored Credentials .....	9-22
How to: Use Sign On Screen .....	9-23
Windows Certificate Store vs. Certs Path .....	9-24
User Certificates .....	9-24
Root CA Certificates .....	9-24
Configuring the Profile .....	9-26
No Security .....	9-27
WEP .....	9-28
LEAP .....	9-30
PEAP/MSCHAP .....	9-32
PEAP/GTC .....	9-35



---

WPA/LEAP.....	9-38
EAP-FAST.....	9-40
EAP-TLS.....	9-42
WPA PSK.....	9-45
Certificates.....	9-47
Generating a Root CA Certificate.....	9-48
Installing a Root CA Certificate.....	9-51
Generating a User Certificate.....	9-52
Exporting a User Certificate.....	9-55
Installing a User Certificate.....	9-56
<b>Chapter 10 - Keymaps.....</b>	<b>10-1</b>
MX9 62-Key Keymap.....	10-1
MX9 62-Key 5250 Keypad Keymap.....	10-6
MX9 38-key Keymap.....	10-12
<b>Chapter 11 - Technical Specifications.....</b>	<b>11-1</b>
Dimensions and Weight.....	11-2
Environmental Specifications.....	11-2
Main Battery Technical Specifications.....	11-3
Wireless Radio.....	11-3
Bluetooth System Compatibility.....	11-4
WAN Radio.....	11-4
COM Ports.....	11-4
AC/DC Wall Adapter.....	11-5
GPS Receiver Technical Specifications.....	11-6
<b>Chapter 12 - Technical Assistance.....</b>	<b>12-1</b>

---

# Chapter 1 - Introduction

The MX9 is a rugged handheld computer targeted for indoor and outdoor use. It is powered by a lightweight main battery that can be removed and replaced without the need for special tools. MX9 wireless connectivity is secured by user-configured encryption and authentication protocols.

The MX9 has an integrated keyboard, outdoor readable touch display, a tethered stylus, Microsoft® Windows® Mobile® 6.5 operating system, and many wireless connection options.

The keypad is available in a 62-key or 38-key configuration. The 62-key keypad is also available in an IBM 5250 configuration. Bar code reader options are: an imager or laser scanner integrated in the MX9, or a handheld scanner tethered to the port at the base of the MX9, Bluetooth mobile bar code imagers and scanners, or the Honeywell Bluetooth ring scanner / ring imager.

Wireless network connection can be accomplished using a Summit WLAN 802.11 radio, WWAN, and Bluetooth. Desk and vehicle cradles, a trigger handle or handstrap, holsters with shoulder straps or belts, clear covers for cases and holsters, Bluetooth scanners and printer, standard and low temperature batteries, and battery chargers are among the many accessories available for the MX9.

- If the MX9 has AppLock installed, please refer to [AppLock](#) for setup and processing information.
- Wireless configuration and security parameters are described in detail in [Wireless Network Configuration](#).
- Review the [Unlock](#) process before locking the MX9.

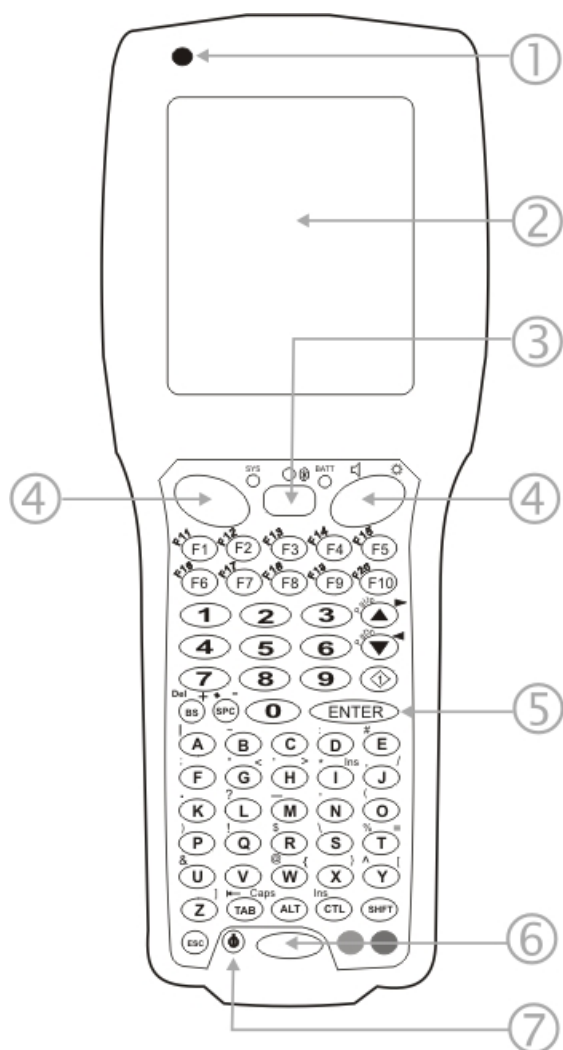
*Note: Contact [technical assistance](#) for upgrade availability if your application or control panels are not the same as the application or control panels presented in this guide.*

## About this Guide

This MX9 Reference Guide provides instruction for the system administrator to follow when configuring a MX9. This MX9 Reference Guide has been developed for a MX9 with a Microsoft® Windows® Mobile 6.5 Operating System.

## Components

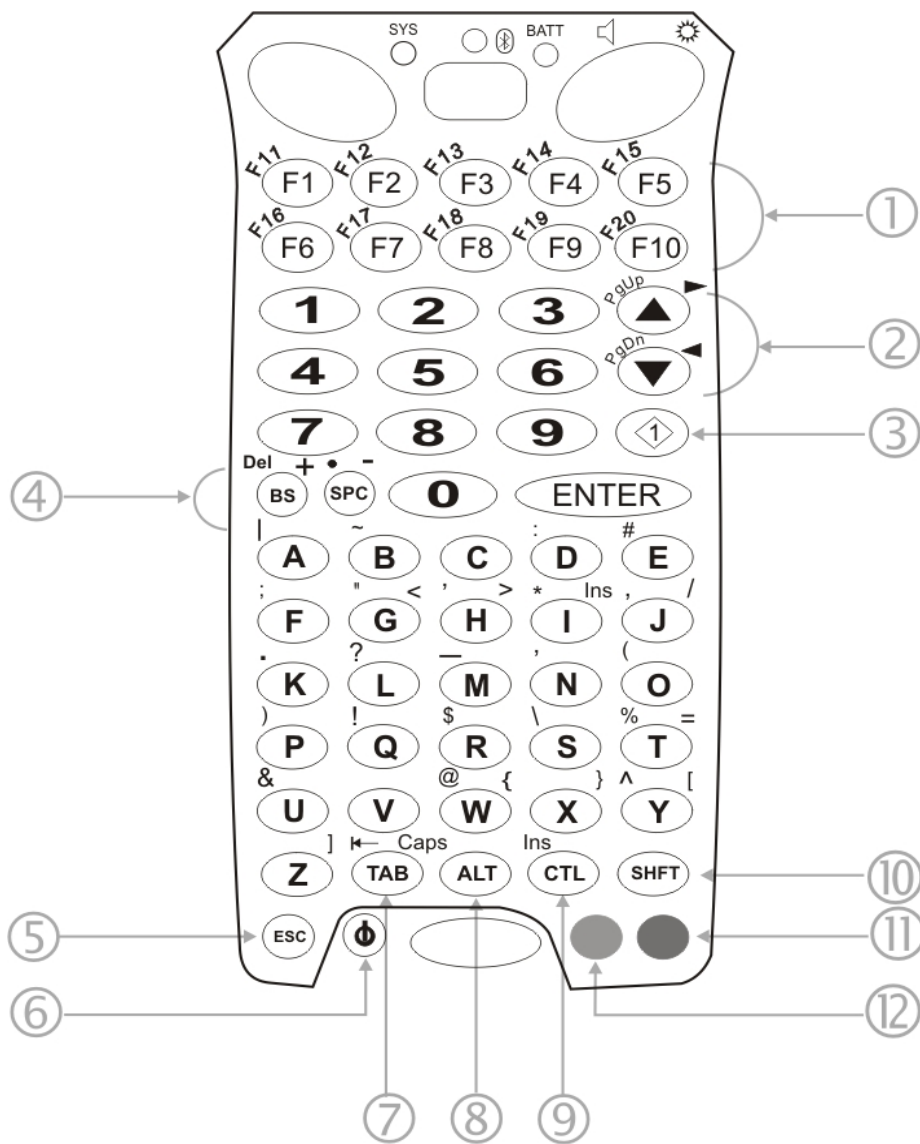
### Front



1. Microphone
2. Touch screen
3. Speaker
4. Scan buttons
5. Enter key
6. Scanner status LED
7. Power key

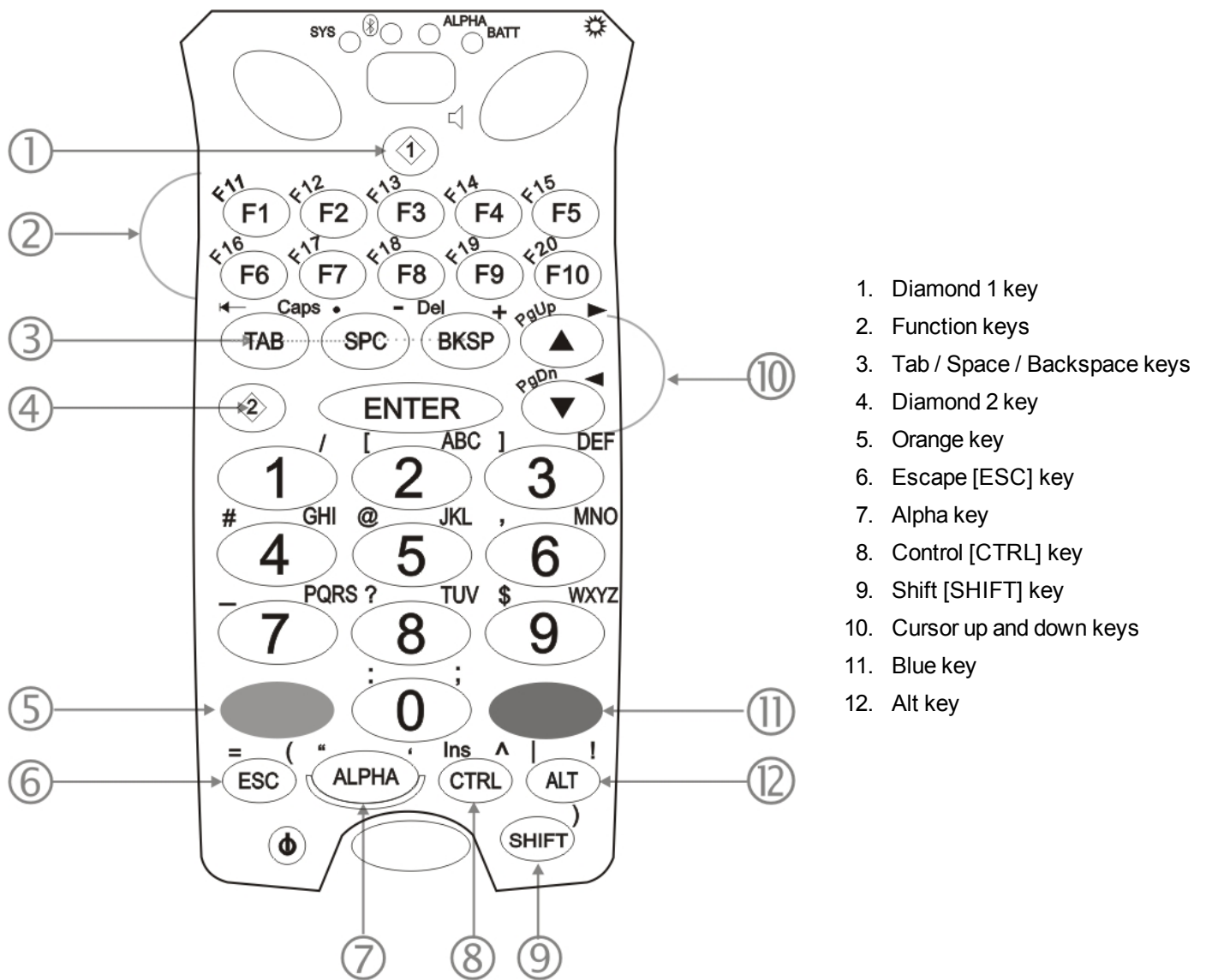
*Note: The above list is the same on the 38 key MX9. Special keys are listed below.*

## Special Purpose Keys



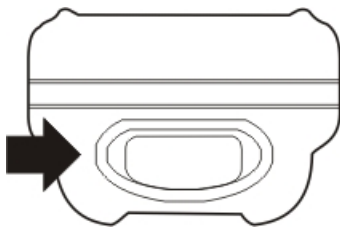
1. Function Keys
2. Cursor up and down Keys
3. Diamond 1 key
4. Backspace [BS] key and Space [SPC] key
5. Escape [ESC] key
6. Power key
7. Tab key
8. Alt key
9. Control [CTL] key
10. Shift [SHFT] key
11. Blue key
12. Orange key

## Special Purpose Keys - 38 Key



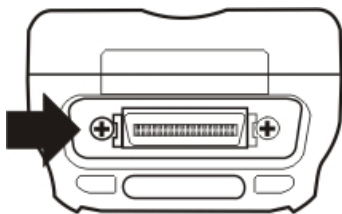
---

## **Top**



Bar code reader aperture

## **Bottom**

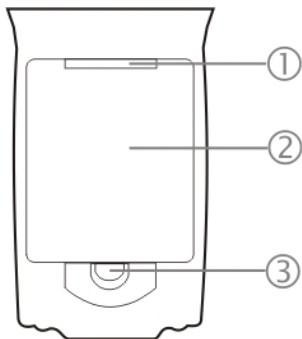


Input / Output Connector

Tethered boot cover not shown (covers I/O connector)

## **Back**

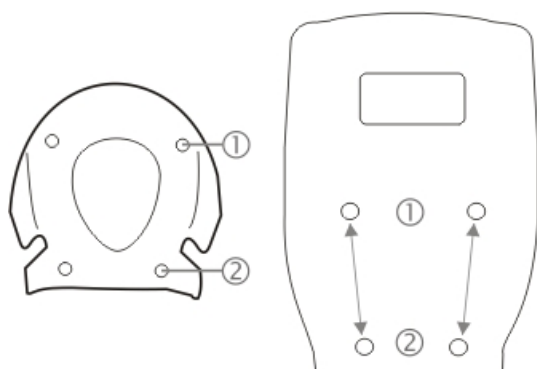
### **Battery Bay**



1. Battery Terminals
2. Battery Bay
3. Battery Bay Access Tab

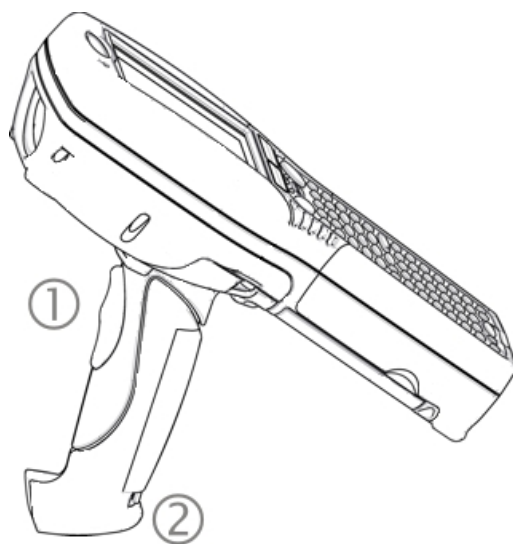
---

## Trigger Handle

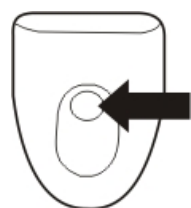


Trigger handle attach points

1. Upper
2. Lower



1. Trigger
2. Tether attach point

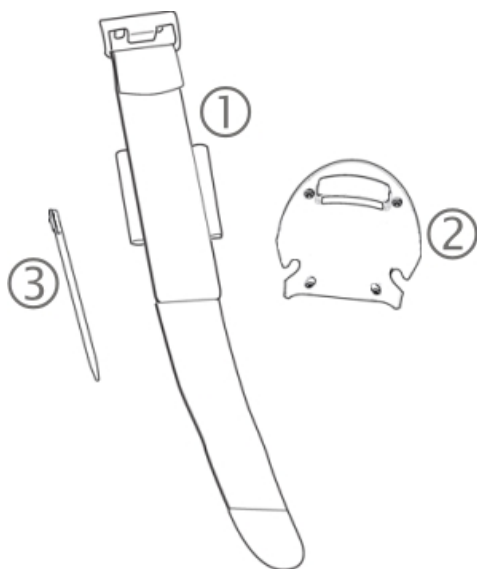


Stylus storage bay in handle

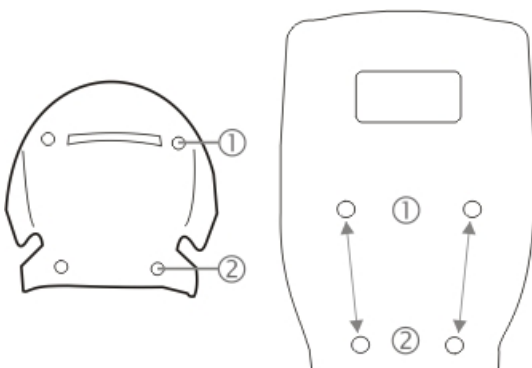


---

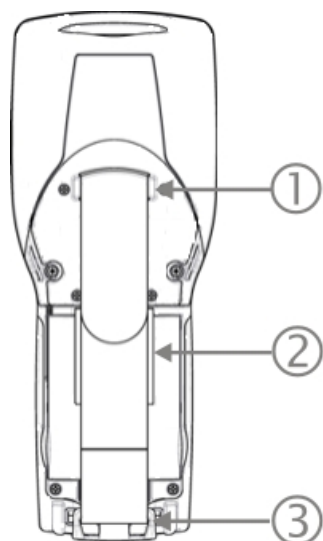
## Handstrap



1. Handstrap
2. Handstrap Base
3. Stylus



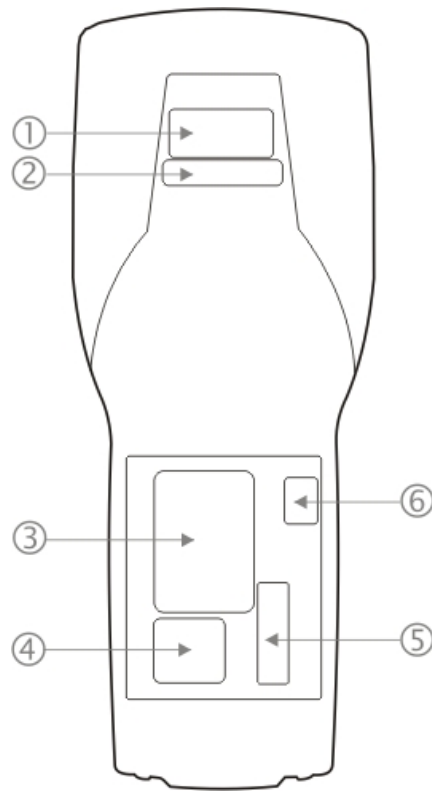
1. Attach - Upper Handstrap Base
2. Attach - Lower Handstrap Base



1. Handstrap connector, upper
2. Stylus holder on Handstrap
3. Handstrap connector, lower

---

## Label Locations



1. Laser Warning Label
2. Bluetooth Label
3. Product Identification Label
4. Java Label (if installed)
5. Windows OS License Label
6. Tamper Proof Label

The tamper-proof label covers the top right screw in the battery bay. The label states "Warranty void if removed or damaged". The battery pack will not deface the label as the battery pack does not touch the label.

---

## External Power Supplies

External power supplies are available for the following:

- any I/O cable with a power connector
- desk cradle
- vehicle cradle
- car power adapter (CLA)
- Battery multi-charger

The indoor power supplies (e.g., AC/DC Adapters) use IEC320-C 14 AC power connectors.

The car power adapter uses the cigarette lighter adapter (CLA) and is powered by the vehicle's automotive 12V battery. The adapter power supply converts the input voltage into a voltage suitable to power the MX9 and charge the unit's internal backup battery.

The vehicle mount cradle uses a 36V, 24-60V or 70-150V DC-DC power supply.

*Note: The MX9 and desk cradle and multi-charger use the same external power supply.*

### AC/DC 15V Power Supply

The MX9 receives AC/DC power from the AC/DC (15 VDC - 4 Amp - 60 Watt) Power Supply. The MX9 external power connection is part of the serial cable assembly and the USB cable assembly.

The AC/DC Power Supply is connected to a wall outlet then to the power cable secured to the base of the MX9.

*Note: The Honeywell-approved AC Power Adapter is only intended for use in a 25°C (77°F) maximum ambient temperature environment.*

The indoor power supply has a IEC320-C 14 AC power connector.

When the power supply is receiving AC/DC power from the wall outlet, an LED on the power supply illuminates green. The green LED indicates the power supply is ready for use.

This AC/DC power supply is designated for:

- the MX9 I/O port multi-cables
- the MX9 desktop cradle
- the MX9 battery multi-charger

There are specific DC/DC power supply adapters for the MX9 vehicle cradle; do not use any other power supply with the vehicle cradle.

---

## Car Power Adapter

The MX9 Car Power Adapter is a self-contained unit. The cable has one and a half feet of coiled cord and one and a half feet of straight cord. The coiled portion is on the end of the adapter. An LED on the adapter illuminates when the car power adapter is receiving vehicle input power.

The cigarette lighter adapter contains a power supply which converts the vehicle's nominal 12V to 15V, a voltage suitable to power the MX9 and charge the MX9 battery.

One end consists of a plug compatible with a standard vehicle cigarette lighter adapter (CLA). The Car Power Adapter has a standard size CLA plug that uses center positive (+12V) and sleeve ground. A replaceable fuse is provided on the input side.

The other end of the three foot cable connects to the MX9 36-pin I/O port. It has a security latch for stability when connected to the Car Power Adapter cable.

## Replace CLA Fuse

**Equipment needed: 5A fuse of the same size and amperage.**

Remove the Cigarette Lighter Adapter (CLA) from the cigarette lighter outlet on the vehicle.

1. Disconnect the cable from the MX9.
2. Unscrew the tip of the CLA adapter end.
3. Replace the blown fuse with a fuse of the same rating and size.
4. Screw the tip back on to the CLA adapter end, replacing any previously removed parts in the order in which they were removed.

*Note: Upon reassembling the cigarette lighter adapter with the new fuse, and plugging it into the cigarette lighter port on the vehicle -- if the LED on the CLA does not illuminate green, there may be a problem with the vehicle power source.*

## Locking the MX9

The MX9 can be locked manually by tapping **Device unlocked** on the [Today screen](#). Care should be taken to not accidentally tap this area of the Today screen.

Lock can be removed from the Today screen menu by selecting [Start > Settings > Today > Items](#) tab.

The MX9 can also be configured to Lock automatically after a defined period of inactivity. This setting is accessed on the [Start > Settings > Lock > Password](#) tab. By default, this option is Disabled.

When the MX9 is locked, the Today screen displays *Device locked* by default. Tap Unlock at the lower part of the screen:

- If there *is no password* or PIN set, tap Unlock on the next screen to unlock the MX9. The MX9 is returned to normal operation.
- If there *is a password* or PIN set, enter the password/PIN and tap Unlock. If several unsuccessful attempts are made, the MX9 may be configured to display a password hint.

The password and hint are configured by selecting [Start > Settings > Lock > Password](#) and Hint tabs.

---

## Reboot

When the Windows Mobile Today panel is displayed or an application begins, the power up (or reboot) sequence is complete.

## Warmboot

A warmboot reboots the MX9 without erasing any registry data. Applications and data in RAM are preserved during a warmboot.

All registry configurations are automatically preserved. Any applications stored as .CAB files in the System folder and configured in the Registry to persist are reinstalled on boot up by the Launch utility.

Use the **Registry** control panel **Warmboot** button.

*Note: There may be slight delays while the wireless client connects to the network, re-authorization for voice-enabled applications completes, Wavelink Avalanche management of the MX9 startup completes, or Bluetooth relationships establish or re-establish.*

## Restart (or Cold Boot)

The Restart (or cold boot) function reboots the device and reloads RAM.

Use the **Registry** control panel **Load Factory Defaults** button to erase the registry and set the registry back to factory defaults. No other clearing is available or necessary.

*Note: Because of the extreme nature of restart, Honeywell recommends using this command only as an emergency (or when instructed to do so as part of a specific MX9 procedure).*

## Startup Help

Can't change the date/time or adjust the volume.	AppLock is installed and may be running in User Mode on the MX9. AppLock user mode restricts access to the control panels.
Touch screen is not accepting stylus taps or needs recalibration.	Press <Ctrl>+<Esc> to force the Start Menu to appear. Use the tab, backtab and cursor keys to move the cursor from element to element.
MX9 seems to lockup as soon as it is warm booted.	There may be slight delays while the wireless client connects to the network, authorization for voice-enabled applications complete, and Bluetooth relationships establish or re-establish. When the desktop appears or an application begins, the MX9 is ready for use.
New MX9 main batteries don't last more than a few hours.	New batteries must be fully charged prior to first use. Li-Ion batteries (like all batteries) gradually lose their capacity over time (in a linear fashion) and never just stop working. This is important to remember – the MX9 is always 'on' even when in the Suspend state and draws a small amount of battery power at all times.
Keep losing ActiveSync connection between my host computer and the MX9.	When the MX9 enters Suspend Mode, all connections are closed to save battery power. When the MX9 wakes up, if ActiveSync connection does not automatically re-establish, disconnect the cable, wait 1-2 seconds and reconnect the cable.

---

# Chapter 2 - Hardware

## System Hardware

### ***802.11 b/g and a/b/g Wireless Client***

The MX9 has an 802.11x network card that supports diversity with two internal antennas. The CPU board does not allow hot swapping the network card. Power management on the network card is set to static dynamic control.

WEP, WPA and LEAP are supported.

### ***Central Processing Unit***

The CPU is a 806 MHz Marvell PXA-320 CPU. The operating system is Microsoft Windows Mobile 6.5. The OS image is stored in on-board flash memory.

The MX9 supports the following I/O components of the core logic:

- One serial port (DTE) with appropriate power for a WAN radio
- One serial port (DTE) for an integrated laser decoder with RI
- USB 1.1 Host (capable) with power (5V @ 500mA)
- One SSP port (capable, not implemented)
- One SDIO port for I/O expansion (capable)
- One SIM port for WAN
- One serial port (DTE) for interface with GPS receiver chip
- Non-decoding imager

### ***System Memory***

The MX9 supports 128 MB on-board RAM and 128 MB on-board Flash. Operating system and boot loader software image update is supported via expansion card and remote management via radio.

Internal flash is used for boot loader code and system low-level diagnostics code. Bootloader code is validated at system startup. The UUID is stored in the boot flash. A second copy of the bootloader code is stored on the internal SD Flash drive, so that if a damaged bootloader is detected, it may be re-flashed correctly.

### ***Internal SD Memory Card***

The MX9 has one [SD card interface](#) for storage of operating system and program code, as well as persistent storage.

The internal SD flash card appears to the OS as a folder (Storage Card). This allows the contents to be manipulated via the standard Windows interface.

---

## ***Video Subsystem***

The touch screen display supports QVGA and 16 bit color depth, and is readable indoors or outdoors even in direct sunlight.

The display is transfective active-matrix TFT and has an LED backlight.

A tethered stylus is included. The touch screen surface can be activated with the stylus or a gloved or bare finger.

The Cold Storage option includes a touch screen heater and a scan aperture heater to eliminate condensation. The heaters can be enabled or disabled by the user. Once enabled, the heaters will turn on whenever the ambient temperature warrants, for example, when moving into and out of freezers or refrigerated buildings.

## ***Power Supply***

The MX9 uses one of two batteries for operation. A Lithium-Ion (Li-Ion) standard battery has a 2400 mAh capacity. Low temperature Lithium-Ion (Li-Ion) batteries have a 2100 mAh capacity.

## ***Input/Output Connector***

A single external connector at the base of the MX9 provides the following signals:

- USB Host and USB Client
- RS232 with support for powering a tethered device (e.g., scanner or imager)
- Audio in and out for headset
- Power input
- Ethernet (only accessible when MX9 is secured in a cradle's docking bay)

The MX9 cables are designed to be securely connected to this port. This port is also used to connect the MX9 to the docking bay connector in cradles.

A tethered protective cap is provided to cover the I/O connector when it is not in use.

## ***Audio Support***

All Microsoft-supplied audio codecs are included in the OS image. The hardware codecs, the input and output analog voice circuitry and the system design are designed to support voice applications using a headset accessory cable.



---

## ***Bluetooth***

The MX9 contains Bluetooth version 2.0 with Enhanced Data Rate (EDR) up to 3.0 Mbit/s over the air. Bluetooth device connection (or pairing) can occur at distances up to 32.8 ft (10 meters) Line of Sight. The wireless client retains network connectivity while Bluetooth is active.

The user will not be able to select PIN authentication or encryption on connections to or from the MX9. However, the MX9 supports authentication requests from pairing devices. If a pairing device requests authentication or encryption, the MX9 displays a prompt for the PIN or passcode. Maximum encryption is 128 bit. Encryption is based on the length of the user passcode.

Bluetooth devices can be paired and managed using the LXEZ Pairing control panel.

- The LED on a mobile Bluetooth scanner illuminates during a scanning operation; the Scan LED on the MX9 does not illuminate.
- Bar code data captured by a mobile Bluetooth scanner is manipulated by the settings in the MX9 Data Collection panel.
- Multiple beeps may be heard during a bar code scan using the mobile Bluetooth scanner; beeps from the mobile Bluetooth scanner as the bar code data is accepted/rejected, and other beeps from the MX9 during final bar code data manipulation.

## ***Input/Output Port***

A single external connector at the base of the MX9 provides the following signals:

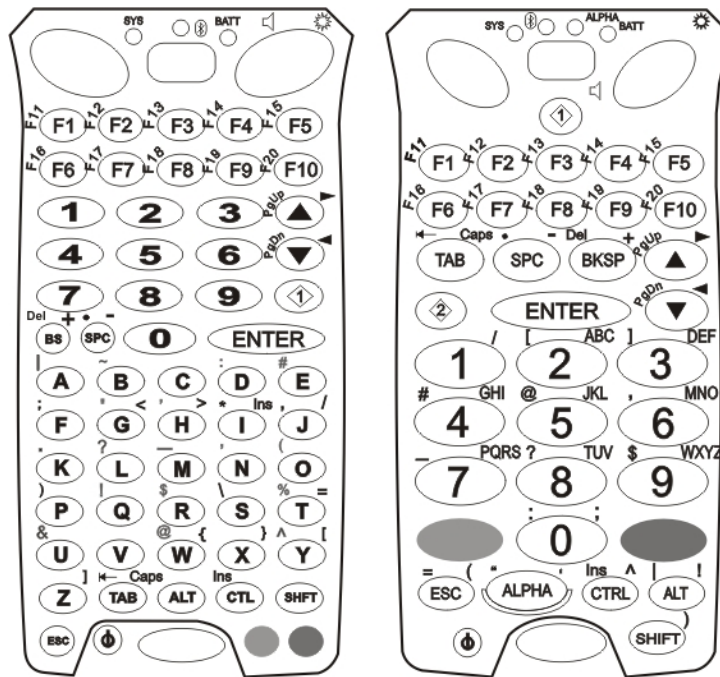
- USB Host and USB Client
- RS232 with support for powering a tethered device (e.g., scanner or imager)
- Audio in and out for headset
- Power input
- Ethernet (accessible when MX9 is secured in a powered cradle's docking bay)

The MX9 cables are designed to be securely connected to this port. This port is used to connect the MX9 to the docking bay connector in cradles.

A tethered protective cap is provided to cover the external port when it is not in use.

---

## Keypads



The MX9 keypad is either a 62-key full alphanumeric keypad or 38-key numeric-alpha. The 62 key keypad has an ANSI or a 5250 overlay. [Keymaps](#) are available for all keypads.

*Note: The keypad backlight default setting is to follow the display backlight setting until it is changed by the user.*

## Modifier Keys

The orange and blue modifier keys are located at the bottom of the keypad. The Orange and Blue keys do not need to be held down while another key is pressed.

A modifier key pressed after itself toggles that modifier mode off.

A modifier keypress cancels the other modifier's active state. Then the state of the modifier key that was pressed last becomes active. For example, if the Orange modifier state is active (MX9 is currently in Orange mode), pressing the Blue key cancels Orange mode and sets Blue mode active.

Once a modifier key is pressed, the modifier map state continues until another key is pressed.

Modifier keys do not auto-repeat.

---

## Expansion Slots

- Summit radio card
- SIMM card
- SD card

The expansion slots in the MX9 are accessible via the hatch. The hatch can be opened using a standard size screwdriver. When the hatch is opened, the MX9 automatically shuts down.

SD card configurations in 512MB, 1GB and 4GB are available from Honeywell.

*Note: For best results save your changes then perform an orderly shutdown to preserve RAM contents before opening the hatch.*

## Power Key Functions

The Power key is located at the bottom left of the keypad. The Power On/Off key is a momentary contact. Function is as follows:

When the MX9 is in ...	Pressing the Power key ...
Off mode	boots the unit and sets it to the On mode
On mode	sets the unit in Suspend mode
Suspend mode	sets the unit in On mode
Critical Suspend mode	has no effect
Backlight off mode	sets the unit in Suspend mode

---

## Status LEDs

Several LEDs are located on the front of the MX9 above the integrated speaker. They are:

- **System Status (SYS) LED** indicates power management status.
- **Battery Charging Status (BATT) LED** indicates main battery charging status.
- **Alpha Mode Status (ALPHA) LED** applies to the 38-key keypad only.
- **Bluetooth Status LED** applies to Bluetooth client functions.

### System Status LED

Blinking Red	Battery power fail; critical suspend
Solid Red	Main battery low
Yellow / Amber	Initial few seconds when Power key is pressed

### Battery Charging Status LED

Off	No battery, no AC power, battery pack not plugged in or no AC power applied
Flashing Red	Fault, battery pack fault or failure
Yellow / Amber	Standby, battery pack temperature out of range
Red	Charging, battery pack charging (icon on touch screen)
Green	Charged, battery pack fully charged. Connected to external power.

### Alpha mode Status LED

- Green when in alpha mode, 38-key keypad only.

### Bluetooth Status LED

Blinking slowly	Bluetooth is active but not connected to a device.
Blinking medium	Bluetooth is paired and connected to a device.
Blinking fast	Bluetooth is discovering other Bluetooth devices.
Unlit	Bluetooth hardware has been turned off or does not exist in the MX9.

---

## Scanner Status LED

The integrated scanner, and imager, Scan Status LED is centered below the MX9 keypad, next to the Power button.

- Steady green indicates a good scan
- Steady red indicates a scan is in progress
- Steady yellow/amber indicates parameter changes are being written to the integrated scanner/imager engine

The Scan Status LED illuminates when a Scan button on the MX9 is depressed (scan in progress), or the trigger on the attached handle is pressed (scan in progress), or when the scanner/imager engine parameters have been changed and the changes are being saved (writing to scan engine). While the changes are being saved, the scanner/imager is inoperable.

- The MX9 Scan Status LED does not illuminate when the Scan button is pressed on a scanner cabled to the MX9 or cabled to an MX9 cradle communication port. The Scan LED on the cabled scanner/imager illuminates.
- The MX9 Scan Status LED does not illuminate when the Scan button is pressed on a wireless Bluetooth mobile scanner paired with the MX9. The Scan LED on the wireless Bluetooth mobile scanner/imager illuminates.

*Note: A scanned bar code can be accepted as a good scan or a bad scan by the MX9 bar code decoder (as configured). The appropriate audible or tactile indicator is activated.*

*Note: The result of the host processing (as configured) of the good scan bar code data can indicate either accept or reject. If rejected, a bad scan indicator is activated if the host process has been configured to indicate audible or tactile accept or reject.*

## Cold Storage

When the MX9 has been configured as a cold storage or low temperature device, it has a snowflake decal between the touch screen and the keypad.

The MX9, with its special low temperature battery and condensation controlling heaters is designed specifically for use in freezers and refrigerator environments including transitioning between the two.

### Heating Elements

Heating elements activate when ambient temperature drops below 0°C (32°F). Honeywell recommends using the stylus when performing screen touch functions on the display when the temperature drops below freezing.

There may be some condensation as the MX9 moves in and out of cold storage areas. The condensation on the touch screen and the scan aperture quickly dissipates.

Although no user interaction is required to enable the heating elements, the automatically controlled heating elements can be enabled and disabled using the Heaters tab in the [Peripherals panel](#).

---

## ***Vibrate Indicator***

The MX9 has a vibration motor.

It is user-configurable to vibrate on a good scan, bad scan, or via an API call. The vibrations from this motor are detectable under the handstrap at the rear of non-handle units or through the trigger handle when a trigger handle is installed.

Three vibration duration settings are provided for both good and bad scan. The settings can be assigned on the [Start > Settings > System > Data Collection > Notification](#) tab. The default setting for both good scan and bad scan is Off.

## ***Scanners and Imagers***

*Note: The maximum number of communication ports from which the Data Collection Wedge can simultaneously support input is three.*

### **Integrated Bar Code Decoders**

The MX9 may have any of the following bar code reader built in (integrated) and protected by the hatch:

- Symbol SE955 short range laser scanner engine (bar code decoding only)
- Symbol SE1524 Lorax laser scanner engine (bar code decoding only)
- Hand Held Products 5300SF laser imager engine (non-decoding)

A scan aperture heater is implemented for low temperature environments.

### **Tethered Bar Code Decoders**

The external serial port at the base of the MX9 is used to connect (via serial tether) tethered laser scanners as needed.

### **Bluetooth Client Bar Code Decoders**

The Bluetooth Module in the MX9 can accept data from paired Bluetooth bar code readers.

## ***GPS Module***

**The default setting for GPS is Off.**

GPS (Global Positioning System) is a U.S. space-based radio navigation system that provides reliable positioning, navigation, and timing services on a continuous basis. The primary function of the embedded GPS module is to provide worldwide location to applications which are running on the MX9.

GPS presence is displayed on the [Peripherals](#) panel. Using the GPS tab, GPS power can be toggled on or off only when a GPS is installed.

[See Also: "Technical Specifications"](#)

# Chapter 3 - Power

## Power Modes

### *On Mode*

#### The Display

When the display is On:

- the keypad, touch screen and all peripherals function normally
- the display backlight and keypad backlight are on until the Backlight timer expires

#### The MX9

After a new MX9 has been received, a charged main battery inserted, and the Power key tapped, the MX9 is always On until both batteries are drained completely of power.

When the main battery and Super-cap battery are drained completely, the unit is in the Off mode. The unit transitions from the Off mode to the On mode when a charged main battery is inserted or external power is applied and the Power key is pressed.

### *Suspend Mode*

The Suspend mode is entered when the unit is inactive for a predetermined period of time or the user taps the Power key. MX9 Suspend timers are set using [Start > Settings > Power > Advanced](#) tab.

Wake-up Events - all configurable via Power Management API call:

- Any key on the keypad
- Stylus touch on the touch screen
- Handle trigger press
- Connecting to AC adapter
- Power button tap
- USB connection
- COM port control CTS
- Real time clock
- Bluetooth device reconnect / disconnect message

When the MX9 wakes up, the Display Backlight and the Power Off timers begin the countdown again. When any one of the above events occurs prior to the Power Off timer expiring, the timer starts the countdown again. The MX9 needs to be placed in Suspend mode before hotswapping the main battery.

### *Off Mode*

The unit is in Off Mode when the main battery and the Super-cap battery are depleted. Insert a fully charged main battery and press the Power key to turn the MX9 On.

---

## Batteries

The MX9 is designed to work with a replaceable 2400 mAh Lithium-Ion (Li-Ion) battery pack from Honeywell. Under normal conditions it should last approximately eight hours before requiring a recharge.

MX9 low temperature 2100 mAh Lithium-Ion (Li-Ion) batteries (designed for freezer environments and with a blue label) have an average use time of 4 hours before requiring a recharge.

During very heavy scanning or wireless transmitter use, the operating time of the battery may be less.

HazLoc versions of the MX9 require a screwdriver to remove the plate covering the battery release mechanism.

*Note: New main battery packs must be charged prior to use. This process takes up to four hours in an MX9 Battery Charger and six hours when the MX9 is connected to external power.*

## Checking Battery Status

Tap the **Start > Settings > System > Battery**. Battery voltage level, status and power remaining is displayed.

## Main Battery Pack

The main battery pack has a rugged plastic enclosure that is designed to withstand the ordinary rigors of an industrial environment. Exercise care when transporting the battery pack making sure it does not come in contact with excessive heat or any power source other than the MX9 Multi-Charger or the MX9 unit.

When the main battery pack is properly installed in the unit it provides up to eight hours of operation depending upon use and accessories installed. The battery pack is resistant to impact damage and falls of up to four feet to a concrete surface. Under normal conditions it should last approximately eight hours before requiring a recharge. The more you use the scanner or the wireless transmitter, the shorter the time required between battery recharges.

**When the MX9 is docked in a powered cradle**, the battery in the MX9 is recharged through the cradle connector in the docking bay. An extra Li-Ion battery pack can be recharged in a powered desktop cradle. The battery is fully recharged in a powered cradle in less than 4 hours. The MX9 can be Off, in use or in Suspend Mode while the battery is recharging.

*Note: When the main battery and internal battery are fully depleted, the MX9 turns off. The operating system reverts to the last saved registry settings when a fully powered battery is inserted and the MX9 is turned on.*



---

## ***Battery Hotswapping***

Important: When the internal battery power is Low or Very Low (**Start > Settings > Power**) connect the AC adapter to the MX9 before replacing the main battery pack.

When the main battery power level is low, the MX9 will signal the user with the low battery warning indicator (the Status LED remains a steady red) that continues until the main battery is replaced, the battery completely depletes, or external power is applied to the MX9 using an AC Adapter.

You can replace the main battery by first placing the MX9 in Suspend Mode then removing the discharged main battery and installing a charged main battery within a five minute time limit (or before the Super-cap internal battery depletes). When the main battery is removed the MX9 enters Critical Suspend state; the MX9 remains in Suspend mode, the display is turned off and the internal battery continues to power the unit for at least five minutes.

Though data is retained, the MX9 cannot be used until a charged main battery is installed. After installing the new battery, press the Power key. Full operational recovery from Suspend can take several seconds while the client is reestablishing a network link. If the internal battery depletes before a fully charged main battery can be inserted, the MX9 will turn Off.

## ***Low Battery Warning***

It is recommended that the main battery pack be removed and replaced when its energy depletes. When the main battery Low Battery Warning appears (the Status LED remains a steady red) perform an orderly shut down, minimizing the operation of any installed devices and insuring any information is saved that should be saved.

## ***Super-cap Internal Battery***

The MX9 has an internal battery that is designed to provide limited-duration electrical power in the event of main battery failure. The energy needed to maintain the internal battery near full charge at all times is drawn from the MX9 main battery. It takes 5 minutes or less to fully charge the internal battery. The duration of internal battery life is dependent upon operation of the MX9, its features and any operating applications. The internal battery has a minimum service life of two years. The Super-cap internal battery is replaced by Honeywell.

## ***Handling Batteries Safely***

- Never dispose of a battery in a fire. This may cause an explosion.
- Do not replace individual cells in a battery pack.
- Do not attempt to pry open the battery pack shell.
- Be careful when handling any battery. If a battery is broken or shows signs of leakage do not attempt to charge it. Dispose of it using proper procedures.

### **Caution**

Nickel-based cells contain a chemical solution which burns skin, eyes, etc. Leakage from cells is the only possible way for such exposure to occur. In this event, rinse the affected area thoroughly with water. If the solution contacts the eyes, get immediate medical attention.

NiMH and Li-Ion batteries are capable of delivering high currents when accidentally shorted. Accidental shorting can occur when contact is made with jewelry, metal surfaces, conductive tools, etc., making the objects very hot. Never place a battery in a pocket or case with keys, coins, or other metal objects.

---

# Chapter 4 - Software

## Introduction - Operating System

*This MX9 Reference Guide has been developed for a MX9 with a Windows Mobile® operating system.*

There are several different aspects to the setup and configuration of the MX9. Many of the setup and configuration settings are dependent upon the optional features such as hardware and software installed on the mobile device. The examples found in this section are to be used as examples only, because the configuration of your specific MX9 may vary. The following sections provide a general reference for the configuration of the MX9 and some of its optional features.

*Note: For best results frequently charge the MX9 battery using an external power source to ensure continuous charging of the internal Super-cap battery.*

## Windows Mobile

*Note: For general use instruction, please refer to commercially available Windows Mobile user guides or the Windows Mobile on-line Help application installed with the MX9*

This section's contents assumes the system administrator is familiar with Microsoft Windows options and capabilities loaded on most standard Windows 2000 or later desktop computers.

Therefore, the sections that follow describe only those Windows capabilities that are unique to the MX9 and its Windows Mobile environment.

### Notes

Based on your installed software version and hardware options, your setup may not be exactly the same as those that are described in this guide. Contact [technical assistance](#) for information on the latest upgrades for your MX9.

## Installed Software

*Note: Some standard Windows options require an external modem connection. Modems are not available.*

When you order an MX9 you receive the software files required by the separate programs needed for operation and wireless client communication. The files are stored in folders in the mobile device.

This section lists the contents of the folders and the general function of the files. Files installed in each MX9 are specific to the intended function of the MX9.

Files installed in Windows mobile devices that are configured for a wireless environment usually contain a radio specific driver – the driver for the radio is specific to the manufacturer of the radio installed in the wireless host environment and are not interchangeable.

---

## **Software Load**

The software loaded on the MX9 computer consists of Windows Mobile Operating System, hardware-specific OEM Adaptation Layer, device drivers, Internet Explorer for Windows Mobile browser and MX9-specific utilities. The software supported by the MX9 is summarized below:

### **Operating System**

Full Operating System License: Includes all operating system components, including Windows Mobile kernel, file system, communications, connectivity (for remote APIs), device drivers, events and messaging, graphics, keyboard and touch screen input, window management, and common controls.

### **Network and Device Drivers**

**Bluetooth (Option)**

**AppLock (Option)**

**RFTerm (VT220, TN5250, TN3270) Terminal Emulation (Option)**

**Honeywell API Routines**

*Note:* Contact [technical assistance](#) to get access to updated software releases.

## **Software Backup**

Application programs and data that are normally RAM resident are backed up via ActiveSync.

## **Version Control**

Version numbers are applied to the boot loader and the OS image independently. The version information stored consists of the build number, plus the date and time of compile (in lieu of a build number). These version numbers are stored in non-volatile storage, where the user cannot inadvertently modify them. A Settings panel and API are provided so the user can reference the version numbers for support purposes.

The MX9 has a unique 128-bit ID code as required by the Windows Mobile specification. This ID number is generated by the boot loader. This ID code is available in the About Info settings panel, and via a Win32 standard API.

In addition, an API is provided to return a standard copyright string, so that applications may reference the string for licensing purposes.

---

## Boot Loader

The MX9 supports a proprietary boot loader. It is the responsibility of the boot loader to:

- Initialize all system hardware
- Initiate OS startup
- Handle wakeup from system suspend, loading saved state

The MX9 starts the OS every time during warm boot or restart.

## Startup Folders and Launch Sequences

The MX9 operating system uses two startup folders:

- User applications placed in the Windows\Startup folder automatically run during a warm boot. They are deleted upon a restart.
- User applications placed in the System\Startup folder automatically run during a warm boot, after a restart and after restoring factory defaults.

## Installing Applications

Applications can be installed on the MX9 from CAB files.

CAB files are (re)installed after a cold boot, but not after a suspend/resume since the OS was not reset and the CAB files are still in use.

An unsigned executable (CAB or package file) prompts the user when executed:

*The program is from an unknown publisher. Running it can possibly harm your device. Do you want to continue?*

If you trust the program, tap Yes. Otherwise tap No.

CAB files can be copied to the MX9 via ActiveSync or they can be installed from the Flash card.

Contact [technical assistance](#) or your system administrator for more information on CAB files available for the MX9.

## Software Development

The *CE API Programming Guide* documents API calls for the MX9. It is intended as an addition to the standard Microsoft Windows Mobile API documentation.

A Software Developers Kit (SDK) and additional information about software development can be found on the Developer Portal. Contact [technical assistance](#) for more information.

---

## Today Screen

For general use instruction, please refer to commercially available Windows Mobile user guides or the Windows Mobile on-line Help on the MX9.

*Note: Whenever possible, use the AC power adapter with the MX9 to conserve the main battery and to ensure the internal battery is charged.*

The main screen for the MX9 is known as the Today screen. The Today screen shows various options and status icons. The Today screen appearance is configurable by selecting Start > Settings > Today. Both the appearance of the Today screen and the items displayed may be configured.



1. Start menu
2. Configurable Today screen listing
3. Notification Bar
4. Status icons
5. Soft Keys

## Start Menu

The Start menu consists of applications and folders.

- Selecting an application from the menu starts that application.
- Selecting a folder opens a window displaying the contents of the folder.
- Selecting Settings displays the Settings panels by category.
- Selecting Help displays context sensitive help. The contents displayed in the help window vary depending on the screen displayed before Help was accessed.

Programs not appearing on the Start menu can be accessed by using the File Explorer.

---

## ***Configurable Today Screen Listing***

The items displayed in the Today screen listing can be configured from Start > Settings > Today > Items.

For more information, please see [Today](#) settings later in this section.

### **Date**

When the Date is enabled to display on the Today screen, the date is displayed on the left side of the screen and the time is displayed on the right side. If there are any alarms set, a bell icon is displayed under the current time.

For more information, please see the [Clock & Alarm](#) settings section.

### **Device Unlocked / Device Locked**

When the MX9 is unlocked, tapping on **Device unlocked** locks the MX9.











When the MX9 is locked, tapping on **Unlock** at the bottom of the screen unlocks the MX9. Depending on the settings, a password may be required. The MX9 can also be configured to lock after a period of inactivity. For more information, please see the [Lock](#) settings.

---

## Notification Bar

The Notification Bar is displayed at the top of the Today screen. The notification bar remains visible even when other screens are selected, though the icons displayed may vary.

When the Notification bar is displayed on other screens there may be an X (close the current screen/program) or an ok (accept the current input and close the screen).

Category	Icon	Meaning
Network		The Windows Mobile Wireless Manager is managing the wireless connection and the MX9 is connected to a wireless network.
Network		A wireless manager is managing the wireless connection.
Network		A wireless manager is managing the wireless connection and has detected one or more wireless networks in range.
Network		A wireless manager is managing the wireless connection and has not detected a wireless network in range.
Network		The Wireless Wide Area Network is connected to a cellular network.
Volume		The speaker is on.
Volume		The speaker is off.
Volume		Vibrate is on.
Power		The MX9 is connected to external power.
Power		The MX9 is operating on battery power. The strength of the battery is indicated by the number of bars displayed: 0 (low battery) to 4 (fully charged battery).










---

## Status Icons

Additional icons may be displayed at the lower edge of the Today screen.

*Note:* Summit signal strength icons are displayed only when the Summit Client Utility is controlling the radio.

	Bluetooth module is connected to one or more of the targeted Bluetooth device(s).
	MX9 is not connected to any Bluetooth device. MX9 is ready to connect with any Bluetooth device. MX9 is out of range of all paired Bluetooth device(s). Connection is inactive.
	Summit radio is not currently associated or authenticated to an Access Point.
	The signal strength for the currently associated/authenticated Access Point is less than -90 dBm
	The signal strength for the currently associated/authenticated Access Point is -71 dBm to -90 dBm
	The signal strength for the currently associated/authenticated Access Point is -51 dBm to -70 dBm
	The signal strength for the currently associated/authenticated Access Point is greater than -50 dBm

More information on Bluetooth can be found in the [Bluetooth settings](#) section.

## Soft Keys

Soft Keys are displayed at the bottom of the Today screen. The keys displayed vary by the active screen/application.

The soft keys generally provide menus for the selected application. By default, on the Today screen, the left Soft Key (Calendar) can also be accessed by pressing F3 and the right Soft Key (Contacts) can be accessed by pressing F4. The Soft Key events can be changed by selecting [Start > Settings > Personal > Buttons](#).

---












## Start Menu Options

The following options represent the **factory default program installation**. Your system may be different based on the software and hardware options purchased.










Use the up and down arrow keys on the MX9 to quickly scroll through the icons,

or,

using screen touch gestures, brush the window up or down with a finger or the stylus.






<u>Icon</u>	<u>Function</u>
	Basic <a href="#">ActiveSync</a> configuration, including synchronization with an Exchange server.
	<a href="#">Avalanche</a> . Mobile devices have the Avalanche Enabler installation files loaded, but not installed, on the mobile device when it is shipped.
	<a href="#">Calculator</a>
	<a href="#">Calendar</a> /date book application. Can be synchronized with PC Outlook calendar using ActiveSync.
	<a href="#">Contacts</a> . Address book application. Can be synchronized with PC Outlook address book using ActiveSync.
	<a href="#">Email</a> application. Can be synchronized with PC Outlook email using ActiveSync or it can synchronize with an Exchange server.
	<a href="#">File Explorer</a> . Displays a structured picture of files on the system.
	<a href="#">Help</a> . Access Windows Mobile help system on the MX9. Options to search using Windows Live Search are available.
	<a href="#">Internet Explorer</a> . Access web pages on the Internet.
	<a href="#">Notes</a> . Notebook application. Select Menu > View Recording Toolbar to create an audio note. Can be synchronized with PC Outlook notes using ActiveSync.
	<a href="#">Office Mobile</a> . Access to Excel, PowerPoint, Word and OneNote. Compatible with Microsoft Office 2007.

---

<u>Icon</u>	<u>Function</u>
	<a href="#">Pictures and Video</a> . Picture/video viewer application. Can be synchronized with PC My Documents folder using ActiveSync.
	<a href="#">Remote Desktop (Auto)</a> . A shortcut to Remote Desktop Mobile with Connect activated.
	<a href="#">Remote Desktop Mobile</a> . Display remote desktop. Setup for computer, user name, password and domain required. Use Options to setup connected options for the remote desktop.
	<a href="#">Settings</a> . Access to system level setup programs: <a href="#">Connections</a> , <a href="#">Personal</a> , and <a href="#">System</a> among others.
	<a href="#">Task Manager</a> . View and cancel running tasks.
	<a href="#">Tasks</a> . Task list application. Can be synchronized with PC Outlook task list using ActiveSync.
	<a href="#">Today</a> . Configure the appearance and the items to display on the Today screen.
	<a href="#">Windows Live</a> . Sign in to Microsoft Windows Live online service. Internet access required.
	<a href="#">Windows Media</a> . Audio visual management program. Not supported on the MX9.

---

## Office Mobile

<u>Icon</u>	<u>Function</u>
	<a href="#">Excel Mobile</a> . Spreadsheets can be edited, data can be sorted, formatting and changes are preserved.
	<a href="#">PowerPoint Mobile</a> . Open, view and edit slides in landscape or portrait format. Zoom and GoTo features enabled.
	<a href="#">Word Mobile</a> . Open, view, edit documents. Formats are saved. Spelling checker, cut and paste are available, undo and redo commands.
	<a href="#">OneNote Mobile</a> . Open, view, edit text-only notes.
	<b>Note:</b> Tap Start > Help for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the X icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.

---

## ***Installed Programs***

Additional information on installed programs is listed below.

### **Internet Explorer Mobile**

#### **Start > Internet Explorer Mobile**

This browser is a subset of and is compatible with IE 6.0 (as might be installed on a desktop PC). Internet Explorer Mobile has two viewing modes: Mobile mode and Desktop mode. Mobile mode is used for web sites which specifically support mobile phone formatted web pages. Desktop mode displays a small portion of the web site, and a small window which allows the view to move around within the larger web page window (or move with gestures).

For information on general configuration options, please see the Windows Mobile help system on the MX9 or other commercially available Internet Explorer configuration resources. Tap the IE Menu soft key (on the lower right) and select Tools > Options to set up the default home page, view browsing history, setup privacy and security, preferred language, and Other options.

If an Internet Explorer web page is larger than the MX9 screen can display at one time, use touch screen gestures for horizontal and vertical scrolling.

For information on the version of Internet Explorer loaded on the MX9, tap the Favorites soft key and select About Internet Explorer.

### **Office Mobile Applications**

#### **Start > Office Mobile**

Office 2003 and Office 2007 formats are supported, though these are subset applications so not all objects may appear as expected.

ActiveSync handles all file format conversions for these files transferred between the MX9 and the host PC.

### **ActiveSync**

#### **Start > ActiveSync**

ActiveSync can be setup to synchronize with an Exchange server. Contact your system administrator for configuration information.

### **AppLock (Option)**

#### **Start > Settings > System > Administration**

The AppLock program is accessed by the user or the AppLock Administrator at boot up or upon completion of a cold boot. Set parameters using the Administration option in the Settings Panel.

---

## Summit

### ***SCU (Summit Client Utility)***

#### **Start > Settings > System > Summit**

Summit automatically installs and runs after every cold boot. Use this option to set up radio client profiles. See [Wireless Network Configuration](#) for instruction.

### ***Certs***

#### **Start > Settings > System > Summit > Certs**

The Certs option displays a readme file containing details on how the Summit Configuration Utility (SCU) handles certificates for WPA authentication.

See [Wireless Network Configuration](#) for instructions for acquiring CA and user certificate files.

## Windows Media

#### **Start > Windows Media**

Codecs are included for WMA, WMV, MP3 and WAV files.

## Bluetooth (Option)

#### **Start > Settings > System > Bluetooth**

Only installed on a Bluetooth equipped MX9. The System Administrator can Discover and Pair targeted Bluetooth devices for each MX9. The System Administrator can enable / disable Bluetooth settings and assign a Computer Friendly Name for each MX9. Bluetooth can be accessed by tapping [Start > Settings > System > Bluetooth](#), or by tapping the Bluetooth icon on the Today screen.

---

## RFTerm (Option)

### Start > RFTerm

Factory installed when ordered. The application can be accessed by tapping **Start > RFTerm**.

Refer to the *RFTerm Reference Guide* for complete information and instruction. WAV files added by the user should be stored in System\LXE\RFTerm\Sounds.

## Status Popup

### Start > Settings > System > MX9 Options

The Status Popup provides real time information on several status icons when a specified keypress occurs.

To use the Status Popup, first map a key to the status window. Use the Buttons panel (Start > Settings > Personal > Buttons) to assign a key to Admin Statpop (for the Admin Popup) and StatPopup (for the User Popup). For best results use a Diamond key for the popup. If a Function key is used, that Function key is not available to other applications such as RFTerm.

Use the MX9 Options panel ([Start > Settings > System > Options](#)) to configure other parameters including:

- Dismiss Status Popup on 5 second timeout
- Information to include in Admin or User Status Popup.

The Status Popup can be dismissed by the expiration of the timeout (if enabled), tapping the status window or pressing the key assigned to the popup.

For more information, please refer to the Buttons and MX9 Options settings.

---

## HSMConnect

HSMConnect allows a user with an ActiveSync connection between a PC and the MX9 to display the MX9 screen on the host PC. Any keystrokes on the host PC are passed to the MX9 as if they were keystrokes on the MX9 keypad.

HSMConnect for the MX9 is available on the *Getting Started Disc*.

## GrabTime

GrabTime is a utility to synchronize the MX9 with a world-wide time server. GrabTime can be started as a service by setting it in the [Launch option](#) (see the following section for details on Launch).

### Synchronize with a local time server

- Use ActiveSync to copy GrabTime.ini from the My Device > Windows folder on the MX9 to the host PC.
- Edit GrabTime.ini (on the host PC) to add the local time server's domain name to the beginning of the list of servers. You can then optionally delete the remainder of the list.
- Copy the modified GrabTime.ini to the My Device > Windows folder on the MX9.

## Enhanced Launch

Launch is a utility that runs automatically at startup. A partial list of Enhanced Launch functions includes:

- Launch a .CAB file
- Run an .EXE or .BAT file
- Process a .REG file
- Manipulate files and directories
- Modify registry keys
- Perform conditional operations

*Note: The Enhanced Launch utility does not interact with or affect the AppLock Launch command.*

For a complete list of Launch functions including commands and command structure, please see [Launch Utility](#).



---

## **MX9 OS Upgrade**

### **Introduction**

Depending on the size of the operating system, the total time required for a successful upgrade may require several minutes. The OS upgrade files are unique to your MX9 physical configuration and date of manufacture. OS upgrade files designed for one device configuration should not be used on a different device configuration.

During the upgrade process all settings revert to factory defaults. Parameters will need to be changed from factory defaults to your preferred values at the conclusion of the upgrade process.

### **OS and Language Options**

The MX9 running Windows Mobile must be returned to the manufacturer, Honeywell, if the device is to be re-imaged with any other Windows operating system (for example, Windows CE).

### **Preparation**

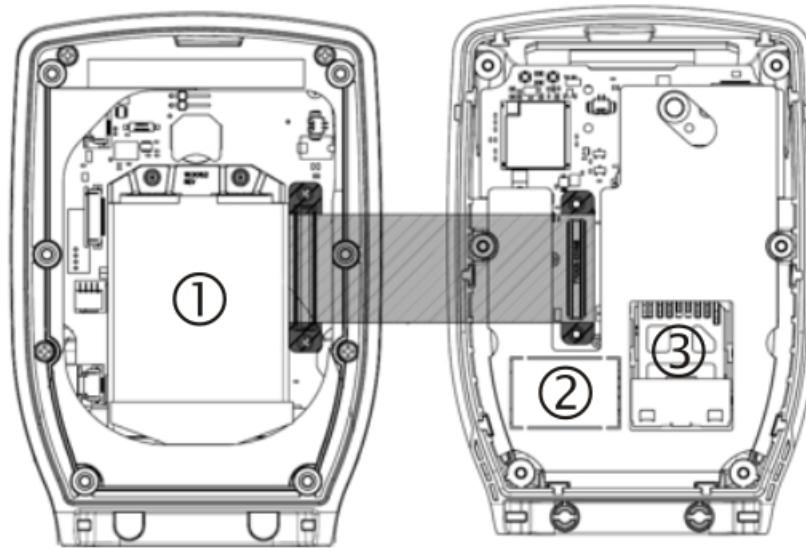
- Please Contact [technical assistance](#) to get the **OS upgrade files** from Honeywell.
- Put the upgrade files on a PC with ActiveSync capability.
- Use ActiveSync to backup MX9 user files and store them elsewhere before beginning an upgrade on the MX9.
- Copy the upgrade files from the PC to a SD card.
- SD card removal/installation should be performed on a clean, well-lit surface.
- Always perform MX9 updates when it has a fully charged main battery and/or a dependable external power source connected to the MX9.

---

## Accessing the SD Card Slot

**Tools required:** standard size Phillips screwdriver (customer supplied).

The expansion slots in the MX9 are accessible via the hatch. The hatch can be opened using a standard size screwdriver. When the hatch is opened, the MX9 automatically shuts down. It is good practice to save any changes then perform an orderly shutdown to preserve RAM contents before opening the hatch.



When the hatch is open during this procedure, do not remove any cables or allow them to kink.

1. Summit radio card is located in the back half of the MX9 assembly.
2. SIMM card is located in the front half of the MX9 assembly.
3. **SD card** is located in the front half of the MX9 assembly.

---

## Procedure

While the hatch is open slide the installed SD card out of the slot. The MX9 may not have a SD card in the slot because the OS is in flash.

1. Place the card with the new image files on it into the SD slot. The label on the SD card should be facing up.
2. Close the hatch. When the hatch is being closed, carefully move cables and wires back into the cavity before securing the hatch. Before securing the hatch completely, examine the seam between the front and back half of the MX9. If the gasket is off-center, loosen the screws a little, adjust the gasket and re-tighten the screws.
3. Press the Power button to turn the MX9 on.
4. The bootloader file in **My Device > Storage Card** automatically launches.
5. **Important:** If a failure occurs during the update, DO NOT RESTART (or coldboot). Follow the instructions on the screen to Exit the update utility then restart the update utility.
6. Do not touch the device until the install/update is complete.

When the process is finished, remove the SD card following the instructions in [Accessing the SD Card Slot](#). When finished, press the Power button.

Check the OS update version by viewing the **About** or **About Info** panels.

*Note: If the application displays "Update OS Image Failed" or "Update Boot Loader Image Failed", do not Restart the system manually. Perform a warm boot, then try the upgrade again. Restarting will cause a system crash, since there is no valid image in the MX9 system.*

## Battery State and OS Upgrade

A fully charged main battery must be installed in the MX9 prior to upgrading the operating system. A prompt may appear when the battery reaches Critical Low that informs the user there is not enough power in the main battery to perform the upgrade.

The operating system will not be able to execute the OS upgrade when the battery level is too low (25% or less), as there is a high risk that the power remaining in the battery expires when executing the upgrade and the MX9 will be left in an inoperable state.

When main battery power level is too low, connect external power to the MX9 before performing the upgrade procedure. Do not disconnect external power before the upgrade process is complete.

## Upgrade Help

**The powered device won't boot up after the upgrade is finished.**

Contact [technical assistance](#) for re-imaging options if the MX9 won't boot up after the upgrade is finished.

The MX9 running Windows Mobile must be returned to Honeywell if the device is to be re-imaged with any other Windows operating system (for example, Windows CE 6).

**Warning: Opening the device e.g., removing endcaps or access panels, etc. could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.**

---

## Settings

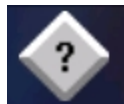
### Start > Settings



**Note:** Tap Start > Help for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the X icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.

#### Icon

#### Function



**About Info.** View software, hardware, versions and network IP. No user intervention required.



**Clock & Alarms.** Set Date, Time, Time Zone, and alarms.



**Lock.** Set password protection.



**Power.** Review battery status. Set time limit before device is turned off.



**Sounds & Notifications.** Enable / disable sounds and vibrations. Set volume parameters and assign sound (wav) files to OS events.



**Today.** Configure the Today screen.



**Connections.** Set up various connections between a host and the MX9.



**Personal.** Configure Buttons, Input method and Owner information.






**System.** Review system information. Set up operating system and equipment parameters.

---






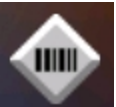

## Personal

Start > Settings > Personal













Icon	Option
	<a href="#">Buttons</a> . Set functions of programmable buttons.
	<a href="#">Input</a> . Set input options for keypad, touch screen and voice.
	<a href="#">Owner Information</a> . Set the mobile device owner details (name, phone, etc). Enter notes. Enable / disable Owner display parameters.

## System

Start > Settings > System

Icon	Option
	<a href="#">About</a> . Display OS version information. Set device name.
	<a href="#">AppLock</a> Administration utility.
	<a href="#">Backlight</a> . Set the display backlight brightness and display/keypad backlight timeout. Configure the timeout based on type of power source: battery or external power.
	<a href="#">Bluetooth</a> . Discover then pair with nearby discoverable Bluetooth devices.
	<a href="#">Certificates</a> . Manage digital certificates used for secure communication.
	<a href="#">Data Collection</a> . Wedge utility for data collected from bar code scans. Set data collection device, notifications, data stripping, prefix/suffix, and vibration (if installed) options. Assign baud rate, parity, stop bits and data bits for COM1 port. Assign collected data manipulation parameters.
	<a href="#">Encryption</a> . Enable file encryption on removable storage cards.

---

Icon	Option
	<a href="#">External GPS</a> . Configure serial GPS access.
	<a href="#">License Manager</a> . View license information for installed licensed applications.
	<a href="#">Managed Programs</a> . View install history for .NET programs.
	<a href="#">Memory</a> . Display current state of virtual memory.
	<a href="#">Mixer</a> . Adjust the input and output parameters – volume, side-tone, and record gain, for headphone, software and microphone.
	<a href="#">MX9WM Options</a> . Set various device specific configuration options.
	<a href="#">Peripherals</a> . Enable or disable touch screen heater and scanner window heater, if installed. Set the heater trip point in degrees C.
	<a href="#">Regional Settings</a> . Set appearance of numbers, currency, time and date based on country region and language settings.
	<a href="#">Registry</a> . Load User Defaults, Save User Defaults, Load Factory Defaults, Warmboot and Restart.
	<a href="#">Remove Programs</a> . Remove user installed programs.
	<a href="#">Screen</a> . Calibrate touch screen, adjust text options.
	<a href="#">Task Manager</a> . Display running tasks. Cancel running tasks.
	<a href="#">Wi-Fi</a> . Set the parameters for a Summit client.

---

Icon	Option
------	--------



	<a href="#">WAN</a> . Set up the wireless Wide Area Network. The WAN utilizes a cellular network instead of a spread spectrum network.
--	--

## Connections

Start > Settings > Connections

Icon	Option
------	--------



	<a href="#">Beam</a> . Enable receiving InfraRed and Bluetooth beams. (Not supported on the MX9.)
--	---



	<a href="#">Connections</a> . Configure connections to servers.
--	---



	<a href="#">Domain Enroll</a> . Enroll in Active Directory domain.
--	--



	<a href="#">Network Cards</a> . Set the parameters for a wireless network using the utility included in Windows Mobile.
--	---



	<a href="#">Wireless Manager</a> . Provides information on the currently connected wireless network(s).
--	---

---

## ***Settings Panels***

### **About Info**

**Start > Settings > About Info**

The data cannot be edited by the MX9 user on these panels.

<b>Tab</b>	<b>Contents</b>
Software	GUID, Windows CE Version, OAL Version, Bootloader Version, Compile Version, and Language. Language indicates localized version.
Hardware	CPU Type, Codec Type, Keyboard, FPGA Type, Display, Flash memory, and DRAM memory
Versions	Revision level of software modules and .NET Compact Framework Version. Utilities, Drivers, Image, API, and Internet Explorer versions.
Network	Current IP address, MAC address, and gateway address for all network ports (radio, ActiveSync).

Version window information is retrieved from the registry.

### ***Version Tab and the Registry***

Modify the Registry using the Registry Editor. Use caution when editing the Registry and make a backup copy of the registry before changes are made.

The registry settings for the Version tab are under HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE \ Software \ LXE \ Version in the registry.

To add a user application to the Version panel, create a new string value under the HKLM\Software\LXE\Version key. The string name should be the Application name to appear in the Version window. The data for the value should be the version number to appear in the Version window .

Version strings can be equal to or less than 254 characters. Because the strings are displayed in a text box, any number can be accommodated, up to the 64K byte text box limitation.

### ***Languages***

The Software tab may display the current language. All languages are built into the OS image; English, French, German, Simplified Chinese, Traditional Chinese, Japanese, Korean, Spanish, Thai.

### ***Identifying Software Versions***

The Versions tab displays the versions of many of the software programs installed. Not all installed software on the mobile device is included in this list and the list varies depending on the applications loaded on the MX9. The Image line displays the revision of the system software installed. Refer to the last three digits to determine the revision level.

### ***MAC Address***

The Network IP tab displays the MAC address of the network card.

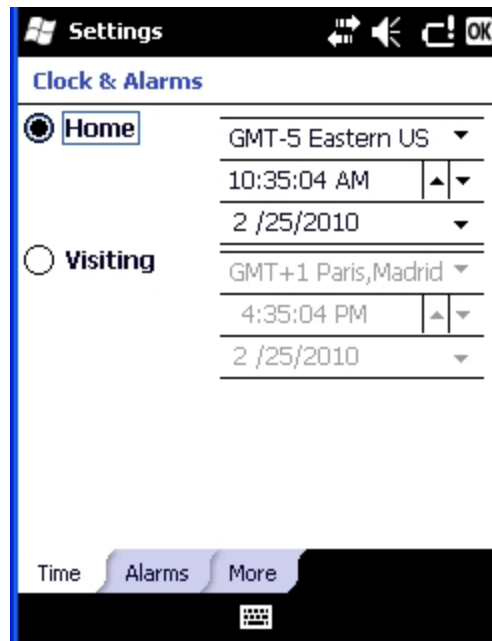


---

## Clock & Alarms

Start > Settings > Clock & Alarms

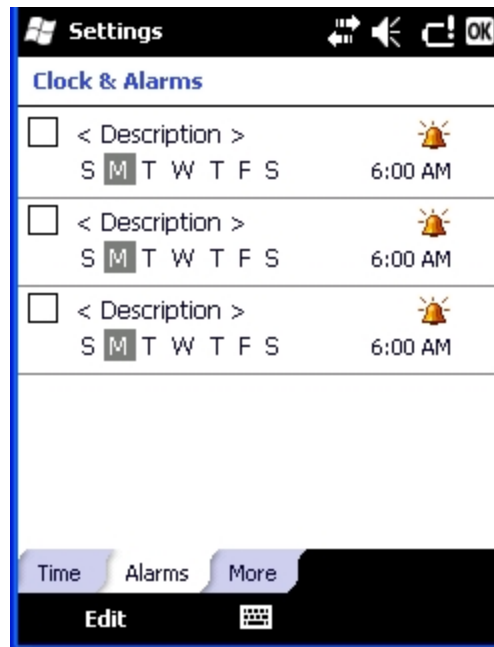
### *Time*



Adjust the settings and tap ok to save the changes. Select Yes on the popup box and the changes take effect immediately. The Time can be set for both a Home and a Visiting location.

---

## Alarms

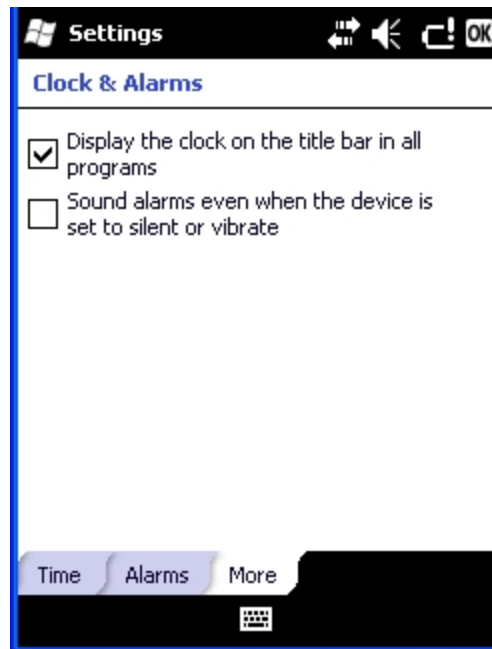


To set an alarm:

1. Tap the checkbox to enable the alarm.
2. Tap < Description > and enter a description. The description is limited to 63 characters.
3. Tap the day (or days) to play the alarm.
4. Tap the time to set the time to play the alarm. Set the time and tap ok to return to the Alarms panel.
5. Tap the Bell icon to set the notification. Notifications may include sound, light flash (the Alpha LED flashes) and vibration. Set the desired options and tap ok to return to the Alarms panel.
6. Tap ok when finished to dismiss the Alarms panel.

---

## More



**Note:** Tap *Start > Help* for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the *X* icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.

---

## Lock

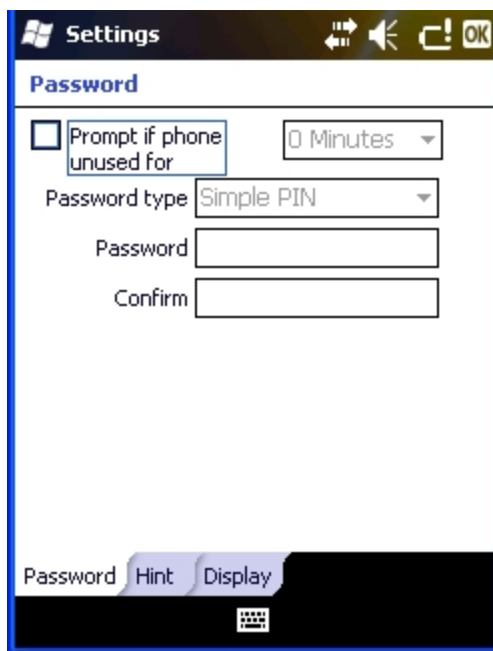
Start > Settings > Lock

### Password

Set the lock / unlock behavior for the MX9.

#### Factory Default Settings

Prompt if device unused for	Unchecked
Timer	0 minutes
Password type	Simple PIN
Password	<blank>
Confirm	<blank>



*Prompt if phone unused for* – Check the checkbox and set the inactivity timeout before the MX9 locks. When selecting a *Password type* the screen displays a numeric keypad or the input panel depending on the type of password selected.

*Note:* Once a password has been entered, the password must be used to access the Lock panels again.

Select the Password type, Simple PIN (numeric) or strong alphanumeric. Enter the desired password and confirm. Note that Windows Mobile places restrictions on what it considers a valid password. If the chosen password is not strong enough, a warning is displayed and a new password should be entered and confirmed.

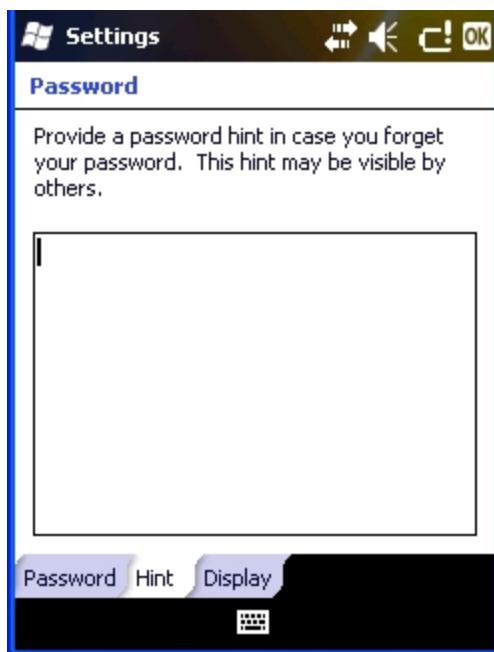
---

## Hint

If the password entry isn't successful after a predefined number of attempts, the password hint is displayed.

### Factory Default Settings

Password hint	<blank>
---------------	---------



---

## Display

Unlock display defaults to Windows Classic. Windows Default can be selected to be the unlock display. Changing the unlock display, and tapping OK (at the top right corner of the screen) presents the following screen:



Tap Yes to restart, or cold boot. Tap No to cancel the operation.



**Note:** Tap Start > Help for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the X icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.

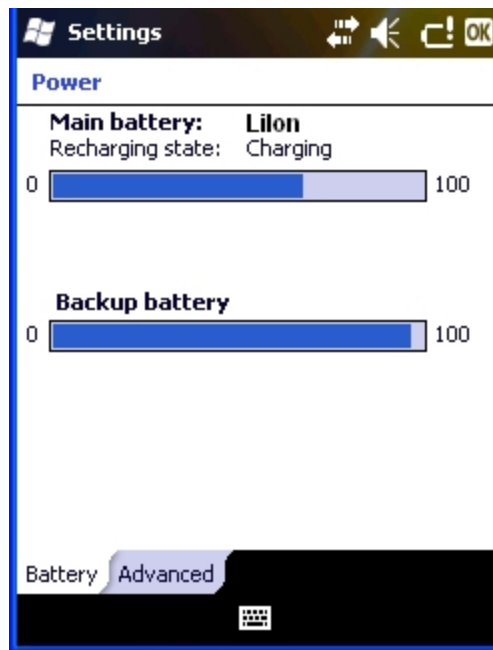
---

## Power

Start > Settings > System > Power

Reports the current battery state and allows the user to set suspend timeouts.

### *Battery*



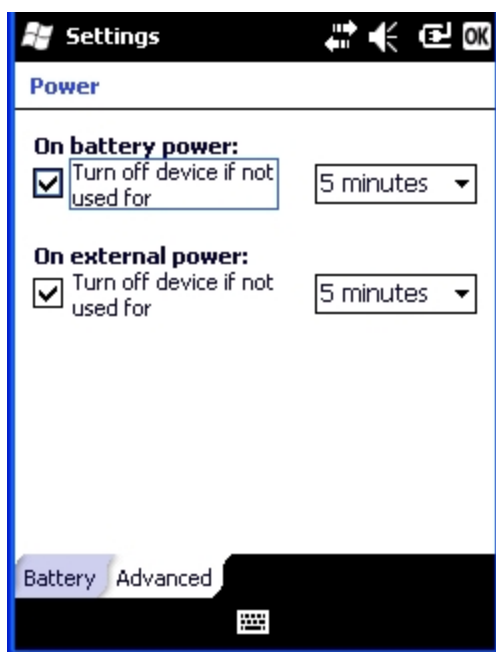
Battery power is displayed for both the main and internal Super-cap batteries.

---

## Advanced

### Factory Default Settings

On battery power:	
Turn off device if not used for	Enabled
Timer setting	5 minutes
On external power:	
Turn off device if not used for	Enabled
Timer setting	5 minutes



Select the inactivity timeout period before the MX9 goes into suspend. The settings on this panel are for the suspend timers only. Backlight timers are set using the [Backlight](#) settings panel.



**Note:** Tap *Start > Help* for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the *X* icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.



---

## Sounds & Notifications

### Start > Settings > Personal > Sounds & Notifications

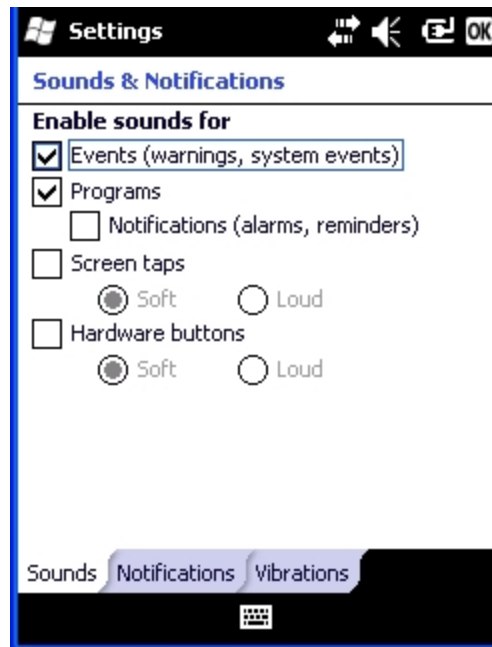
Set volume parameters and assign sound WAV files to Windows Mobile events. Options that cannot be edited by the user are dimmed.

#### Factory Default Settings

Sounds	
Events	Enabled
Programs	Enabled
Notifications	Enabled
Screen taps	Disabled
Hardware buttons	Disabled
Notifications	
Play Sound	Disabled
Display message on screen	Disabled
Flash light for	Disabled
Vibrate	Disabled
Vibrations	
Screen taps	Disabled
Short	Enabled

---

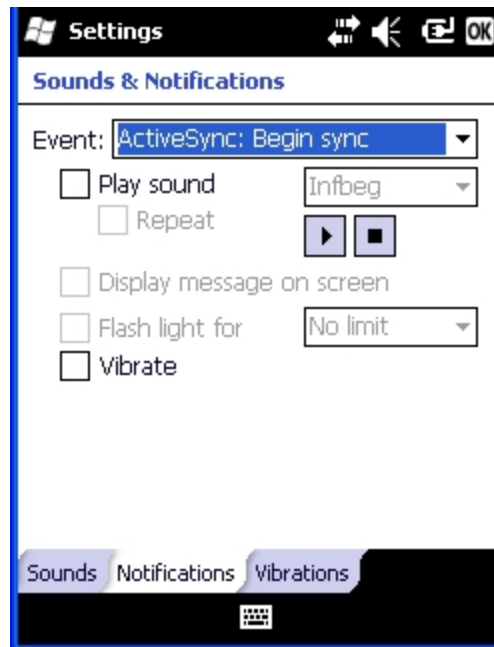
## Sounds



Follow the instructions on the screen and tap ok to save the changes. Changes take effect immediately.

---

## Notifications

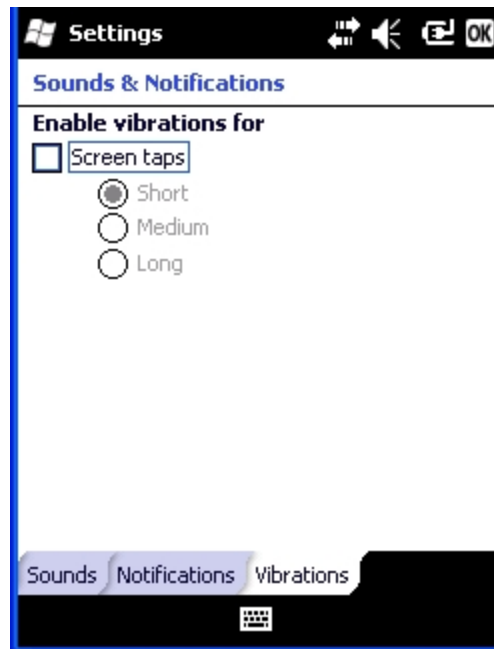


The Event box lists several events that can have an associated notification. The notification, depending on the event selected, may consist of playing a sound, displaying a screen message, flashing a light or triggering the vibration motor.

When finished, tap ok to save the changes.

---

## Vibrations



Vibration on Screen taps is disabled by default. Check the checkbox to enable vibration on screen taps.

Short vibration is enabled by default.

When finished, tap ok to save the changes. Changes take effect immediately.



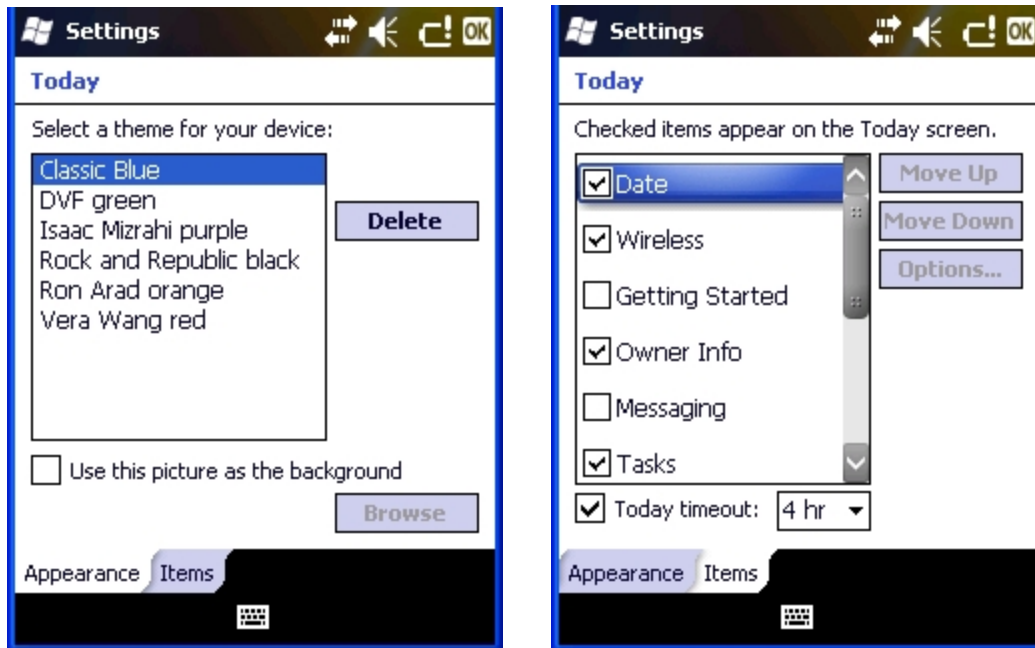
**Note:** Tap Start > Help for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the X icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.

---

## Today

### Start > Settings > Today

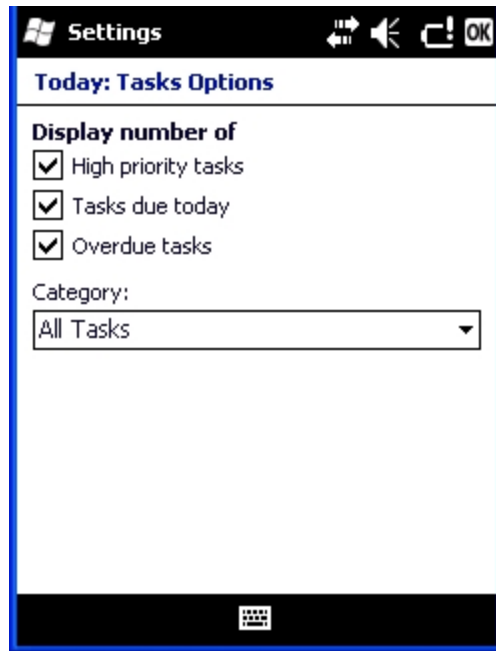
Configure the appearance and the items to display on the Today screen.



Use the **Appearance** panel to assign a theme for the device. The default theme is Windows Mobile Classic Blue. Any user installed themes are included in the list.

Use the **Items** panel to select the items to be shown on the Start panel.

The Today timeout timer refers to the "return to Today screen" function. When the device is placed in Suspend, and the timer expires, a return from Suspend displays the Today screen, not the application in focus when the MX9 was placed in Suspend. The application in focus, which is running in the background, will need to be selected again.



Use **Options** to set display parameters for highlighted items in the Checked Items list.



*Note: Tap Start > Help for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the X icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.*

---

## Personal Panels

### Buttons

Start > Settings > Personal > Buttons

### Program Buttons

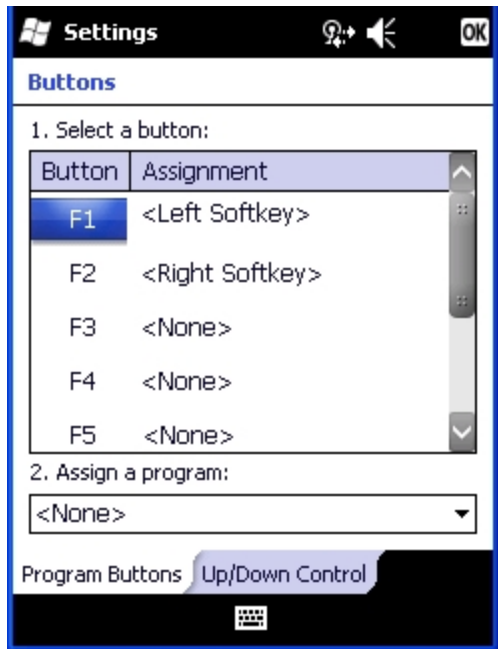
Program buttons can be used to assign functions to certain keys such as F1 through F5 and the diamond keys. Buttons can only be assigned to programs that have an icon in the Start menu or the Settings folder (including sub-folders). A program that is not in the above mentioned locations does not show up in the list here. The 62-key keypad includes a Diamond 1 key. The 38-key keypad includes a Diamond 1 key and a Diamond 2 key.

*Note:* The button links to the shortcut to the program, not the executable file.

*Note:* The System Administrator uses the Buttons setting panels to assign a Status User key and a Status Admin key on the [Status Popup panel](#).

### Factory Default Settings

38-Key Keypad	
F1	Left Softkey
F2	Right Softkey
F3, F4, F5, D1, D2	<None>
62-Key Keypad	
F1	Left Softkey
F2	Right Softkey
F3, F4, F5, D1	<None>



To assign a button:

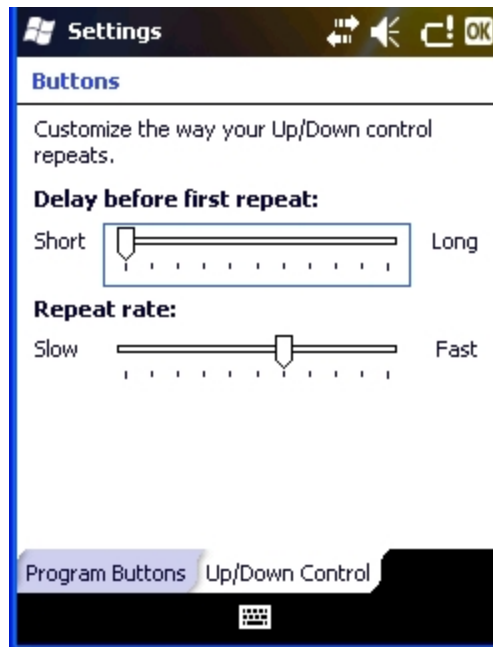
1. Tap to highlight the desired button.
2. Select the program or shortcut from the *Assign a program* pulldown box.
3. Tap ok.



---

## Up/Down Control

Customize the delay before repeating and the repeat rate for the up/down controls.



**Note:** Tap Start > Help for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the X icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.

---

## Input

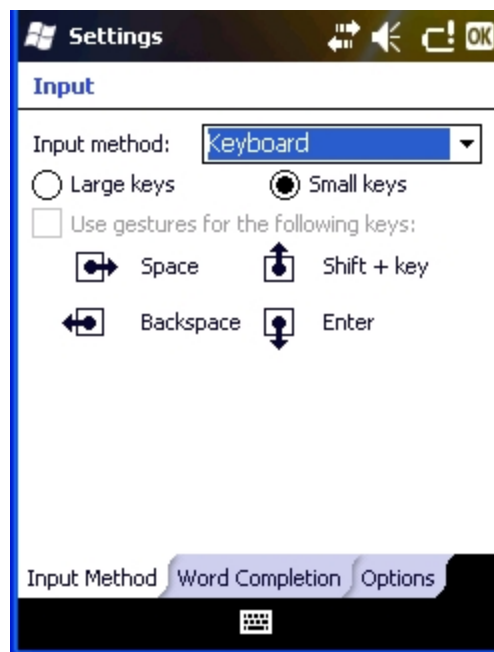
Start > Settings > Personal > Input

### *Input Method*

Select the preferred method of input.

#### Factory Default Settings

Input Method	Keyboard
Small keys	Enabled



The default method of input is the keyboard or input panel. When the cursor is located in a field allowing text input, the input panel may automatically be displayed. If not automatically displayed, the input panel can be accessed by tapping on the keyboard icon at the bottom center of the screen.

If a different input method is active, the icon for that input method is displayed instead of the keyboard icon.

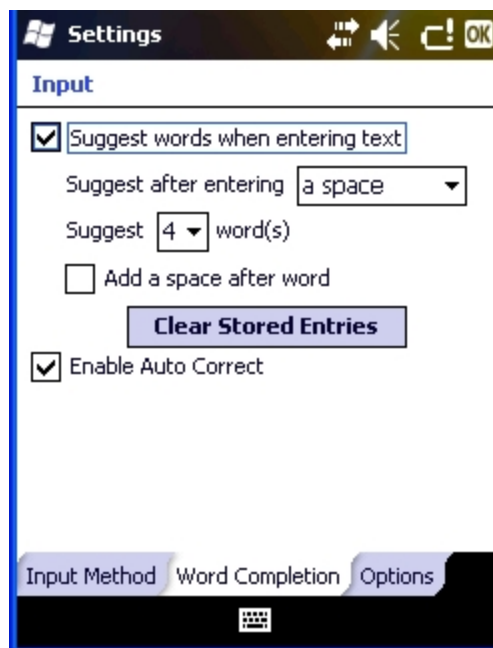
Tap ok to save any changes.

---

## Word Completion

### Factory Default Settings

Suggest words when entering text	Enabled
Suggest after entering	A space
Suggest _ word(s)	4
Add a space after word	Enabled
Enable auto correct	Enabled

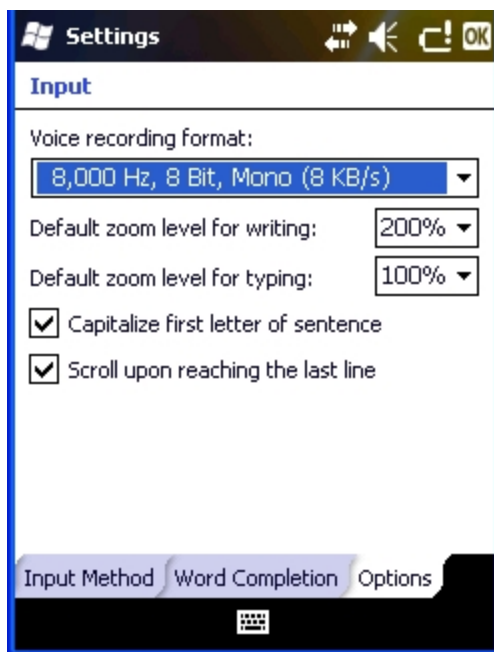


---

## Options

### Factory Default Settings

Voice recording format	8000 Hz, 8 Bit, Mono
Default zoom level for writing	200%
Default zoom level for typing	100%
Capitalize first letter of sentence	Enabled
Scroll upon reaching the last line	Enabled



**Note:** Tap Start > Help for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the X icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.

---

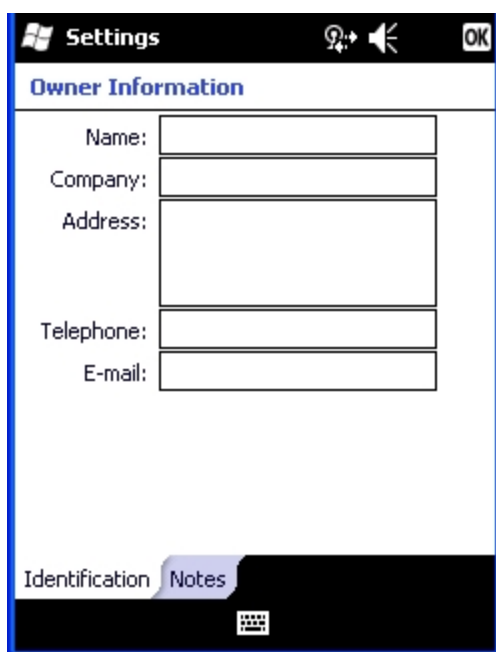
## Owner Information

**Start > Settings > Personal > Owner Information**

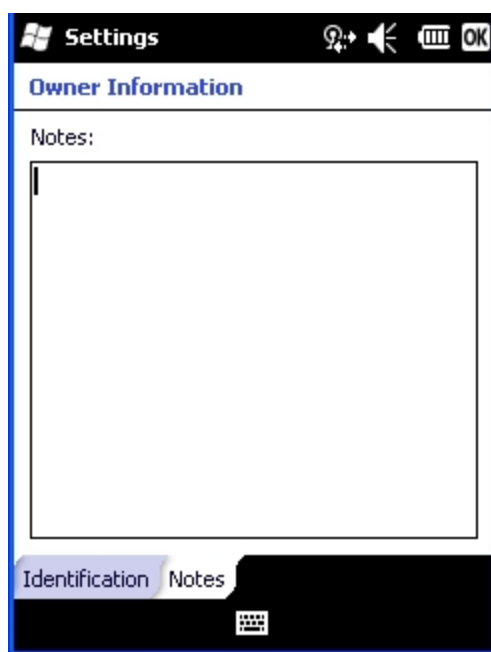
Set the MX9 owner details.

### Factory Default Settings

Identification	
Name, Company, Address, Telephone, E-mail	Blank
Notes	
Notes	Blank



The screenshot shows the 'Settings' application with the 'Owner Information' screen. The 'Identification' tab is selected. It contains input fields for Name, Company, Address, Telephone, and E-mail. The 'Notes' tab is also visible at the bottom.



The screenshot shows the 'Settings' application with the 'Owner Information' screen. The 'Notes' tab is selected, displaying a large text area for notes. The 'Identification' tab is also visible at the bottom.

Enter the information and tap ok to save the changes. The changes take effect immediately.

**Note:** Owner Identification name listed in Start > Settings > Personal > Owner > Information is not used during Bluetooth operation.



**Note:** Tap Start > Help for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the X icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.

---

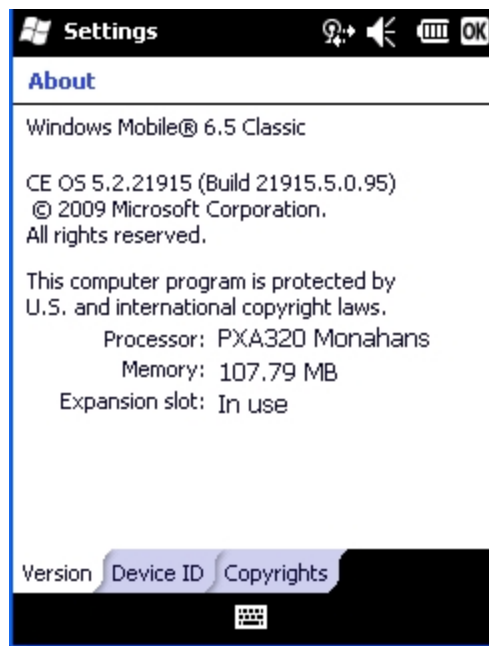
## System Panels

### About

Start > Settings > System > About

The About panels show OS versions, allow device name and description input and display copyright information. The following screens are *examples* only.

### Version



This screen displays information on the installed operating system and the hardware.

Note that Windows Mobile is based on a Windows CE engine. The underlying version of Windows CE is displayed here.

---

## Device ID

### Factory Default Settings

Device Name	[device_specific]001
Device Description	WM_MX9



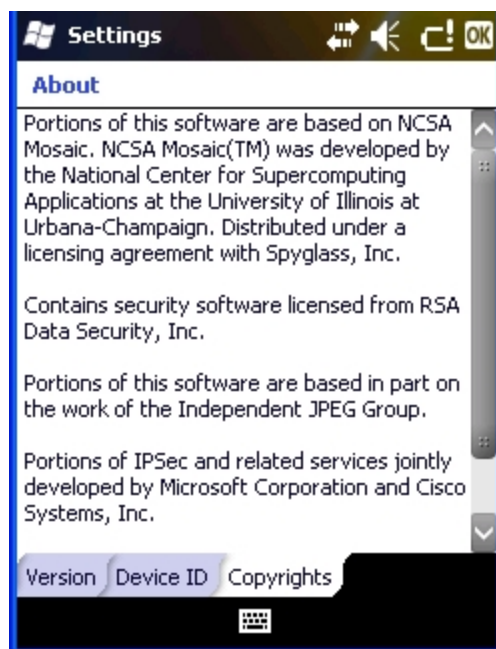
The device name and description can be changed. Enter the name and description using either the keypad or the Input Panel and tap ok to save the changes. The changes take effect immediately.

**Note:** Changing the device name deletes previous ActiveSync settings including backed up user files. Upon the next ActiveSync session, a different Device name will be entered and the device will need to re-partner with ActiveSync.

**Note:** The Device Name listed in Start > Settings > System > About > Device ID is not used during Bluetooth operation.

---

## Copyrights



This screen is presented for information only. The Copyrights information cannot be changed by the user.



---

## Administration - for AppLock

### ***Introduction***

AppLock is designed to be run on Windows based devices only. The AppLock program is installed before shipping.

MX9 AppLock is setup by the Administrator by tapping Start > Settings > System > Administration.

Configuration parameters are specified by the AppLock Administrator for the MX9 end-user. AppLock is password protected by the Administrator.

End-user mode locks the end-user into the configured application or applications. The end user can still reboot the mobile device and respond to dialog boxes. The administrator-specified applications are automatically launched in the specified order and run in full screen mode when the MX9 boots up.

When the mobile device is reset to factory default values, for example after a cold reset, the Administrator may need to reconfigure the AppLock parameters.

The assumption, in this section, is that the first user to power up a new mobile device is the system administrator.

*Note: AppLock Administrator panel file Launch option does not inter-relate with similarly-named options contained in other MX9 System Panels.*

*Note: A few applications do not follow normal procedures when closing. AppLock cannot prevent this type of application from closing, but is notified that the application has closed. For these applications, AppLock immediately restarts the application (see Auto Re-Launch) which causes the screen to flicker. If this type of application is being locked, the administrator should close all other applications before switching to end-user mode to minimize the screen flicker.*

AppLock is updated periodically as new options become available. Contact [technical assistance](#) for downloads and update availability.

---

## Factory Default Settings - AppLock

Application Panel	
Filename	Blank
Title	Blank
Arguments	Blank
Order	1
Internet	Disabled
Global Key	Ctrl+Spc / Ctrl+Spc
Global Delay	10 sec
Input Panel	Disabled
Launch Button Panel	
Auto at Boot	Enabled
Auto at Boot Retries	0
Auto at Boot Delay	10 sec
Auto Re-launch	Enabled
Auto Re-launch Retries	0
Auto Re-launch Delay	0 sec
Manual Launch	Disabled
Allow Close	Disabled
Options Panel	
Launch timeout	60000 msec
Replace timeout	20000 msec
Restart timeout	20000 msec
Security Panel	
Hotkey (Activation key) 62 key	Shft+Ctrl+A
Hotkey (Activation key) 38 key	Shift+Ctrl+Alpha+2
Password	Blank
Status Panel	
Filename	\System\applock.txt
View Level	None
Log Level	None

---

## Setup a New Device

### Prerequisites:

- The touch panel must be enabled. Refer to the (Start > Settings > Options > Misc) Touch Panel Disabled setting. If the Touch Panel Disabled option is dimmed, the touch panel cannot be turned off by the user.
- An MX9 default input method (Input Panel, Transcriber, or custom input method) is assigned.

Devices with AppLock are shipped to boot in Administration mode with no default password, thus when the device is first booted, the user has full access to the MX9 and no password prompt is displayed. After the administrator specifies applications to lock, a password is assigned and the device is rebooted or the hotkey is pressed, the MX9 switches to end-user mode.

The process to configure a new device is as follows:

1. Insert a fully charged battery and press the Power button.
2. Connect an external power source to the device (if required).
3. Adjust screen display, audio volume and other parameters if desired. Install accessories (e.g., handstrap, stylus).
4. Tap Start > Settings > System > Administration icon.
5. Assign a Switch Key (hotkey) sequence for AppLock. See [Security Panel](#).
6. Assign an application on the Application tab screen. More than one application can be assigned.
7. Assign a password on the Security tab screen.
8. Select a view level on the [Status Panel](#) screen, if desired.
9. Tap OK.
10. Press the Switch Key sequence to launch AppLock and lock the configured application(s).

The device is now in end-user mode.

---

## Administration Mode

Administration mode gives full access to the mobile device, hardware and software configuration options.

The administrator must enter a valid password (when a password has already been assigned) before access to Administration mode and configuration options are allowed. The administrator can configure the following options:

- Create/change the keystroke sequence to activate administrator access.
- Create/change the password for administrator access.
- Assign the name of the application, or applications, to lock.
- Select the command line of the application to lock.

In addition to these configuration options, the administrator can view and manage the status logs of AppLock sessions.

Administrator default values for this device:

### Administrator Hotkey

Shift+Ctrl+A

### Password

none

### Application path and name

none

### Application command line

none

## End User Mode

End-user mode locks the end-user into the configured application or applications. The end user can still reboot and respond to dialog boxes. Each application is automatically launched and runs in full screen mode when the device boots up.

The user cannot unintentionally or intentionally exit the application nor can the end user execute any other applications. Normal application exit or switching methods and all Microsoft defined Windows OS key combinations, such as close (X) icon, File Exit, File Close, Alt-F4, Alt-Tab, etc. are disabled. The Windows OS desktop icons, menu bars, task bar and system trays are not visible or accessible. Task Manager is not available.

If the end-user selects File/Exit or Close from the applications menu bar, the menu is cleared and nothing else happens; the application remains active. Nothing happens when the end-user clicks on the Close icon on the application's title bar and the application remains active.

*Note: A few applications do not follow normal procedures when closing. AppLock cannot prevent this type of application from closing, but is notified that the application has closed. For these applications, AppLock immediately restarts the application which causes the screen to flicker. If this type of application is being locked, the administrator should close all other applications before switching to end user mode to minimize the screen flicker.*

Windows accelerator keys such as Alt-F4 are disabled.

---

## **Passwords**

A password must be configured. If the password is not configured, a new device switches into Administration mode without prompting for a password. In addition to the Administrator hotkey press, a mode switch occurs if inaccurate information has been configured or if mandatory information is missing in the configuration.

There are several situations that display a password prompt after a password has been configured.

If the configured hotkey is pressed, the password prompt is displayed. In this case the user has 30 seconds (and within three attempts) to enter a password. If a valid password is not entered within 30 seconds, the password prompt is dismissed and the device returns to end-user mode.

All other situations that present the password prompt do not dismiss the prompt – this is because the other situations result in invalid end-user operation.

These conditions include:

- If inaccurate configuration information is entered by the administrator, i.e., an application is specified that does not exist.
- If the application name, which is mandatory for end-user mode, is missing in the configuration.
- Invalid installation of AppLock (e.g., missing DLLs).
- Corrupted registry settings.

To summarize, if an error occurs that prevents AppLock from switching to user mode, the password will not timeout and AppLock will wait until the correct password is entered.

### ***AppLock Password Help***

Contact [technical assistance](#) for help when troubleshooting passwords.

---

## End-User Switching Technique



A checkmark in the switchpad menu (see image above) indicates applications currently active or available for Launching by the user. When Keyboard is selected, the MX9 default input method (Input Panel, Transcriber, or custom input method) is activated.

The check to the left of the application name indicates that the application is active.

If the application is listed but does not have a checkmark to the left of the application name, this means the application is configured in AppLock and can be manually launched by tapping on the application name in the list.

### Using a Stylus Tap

When the mobile device enters end-user mode, a Switchpad icon (it looks like three tiny windows one above the other) is displayed in the lower right corner of the display. The Switchpad is always visible on top of the application in focus. However, if only one application is configured in AppLock and the Input Panel is disabled the Switchpad is not visible.

When the user taps the Switchpad icon, a menu is displayed showing the applications available to the user. The user can tap an application name in the popup menu and the selected application is brought to the foreground. The previous application continues to run in the background. Stylus taps affect the application in focus only. When the user needs to use the Input Panel, they tap the Keyboard option. Input Panel taps affect the application in focus only.

See Also: Application Panel > Launch > [Manual \(Launch\)](#) and [Allow Close](#)

### Using the Switch Key Sequence

One switch key sequence (or hotkey) is defined by the administrator for the end-user to use when switching between locked applications. This is known as the **Activation key**. The Activation key is assigned by the Administrator using the Global Key parameter.

When the switch key sequence is pressed on the keypad, the next application in the AppLock configuration is moved to the foreground and the previous application moves to the background. The previous application continues to run in the background. End-user key presses affect the application in focus only.

See Also: Application Panel > [Global Key](#)

### Hotkey (Activation hotkey)

If the mobile device uses AppLock to allow the user to switch between applications, the default Activation key is **Ctrl+Spc**. The key sequence switches the focus between one application and another. Data entry affects the application running in the foreground only. Note that the system administrator may have assigned a different key sequence to use when switching applications.

---

## ***Application Configuration***

### **Settings > System > Administration icon**

The default Administrator Hotkey sequence is **Shift+Ctrl+A**.

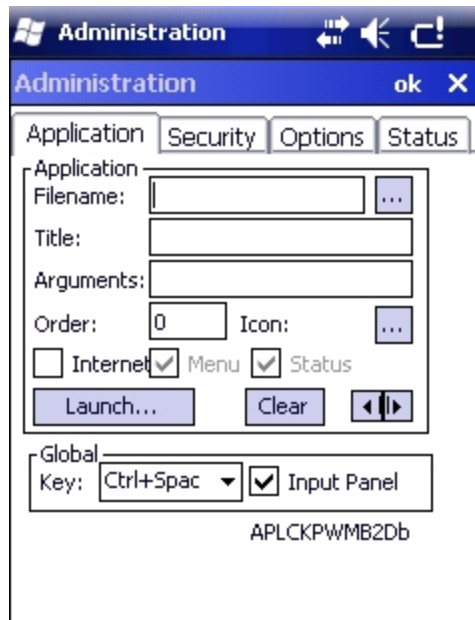
Administrator mode allows access to all features on the device. When the hotkey is pressed to switch into Administrator mode, a password prompt is displayed (if a password has been configured). A password must be entered within 30 seconds (and within three tries) or the password prompt is removed and the device remains in end-user mode with the focus returned to the locked application. Without entry of a valid password, the switch into Administrator mode will not occur.

The password prompt is displayed if a password has been configured. When the valid password is entered, the Administration panel is displayed. When a valid password is not entered within 30 seconds, the user is returned to the System Panel.

If a password has not been configured, the Administrator panel is displayed.

**Important: Before setting up multiple instances of the same application, make sure the targeted software application will allow two instances to run at the same time.**

## Application Panel



Use the Application tab options to select the applications to launch when the device boots up in End-user Mode.

If no application is specified when the Administrator Panel is closed, the MX9 reboots into Administrator mode. If a password has been set, but an application has not been specified, the user will be prompted for the password before entering administration mode. The password prompt remains on the display until a valid password is entered.

Option	Explanation
Filename	Default is blank. Move the cursor to the Filename text box and either type the application path or tap the Browse button (the ... button). The standard Windows Browse dialog is displayed. After selecting the application from the Browse dialog, tap OK.
Title	Default is blank. Enter the Title to be associated with the application. The assumption is that multiple copies of the same application may need unique titles in order to differentiate them in the <a href="#">Switchpad</a> .
Arguments	Default is blank. Enter the command line parameters for the application in the Arguments text box.
Order	Default is 1. Enter the Order in which the application is to be loaded or presented to the end-user. Applications are launched in lowest to highest number order and do not need to be sequential.
Internet	Default is Disabled. Enable the Internet checkbox to use the End-user Internet Explorer (EUIE.EXE) When the checkbox is enabled, the Internet Menu and Internet Status are available. See the section titled <a href="#">End-user Internet Explorer (EUIE)</a> for more details.
Launch Button	See following section titled <a href="#">Launch Button</a> .
Global Key	Default is Ctrl+Spc. Select the Global Key key sequence the end-user is to press when switching between applications. The Global Key default key sequence must be defined by the AppLock Administrator. The Global key is presented to the end-user as the Activation key.

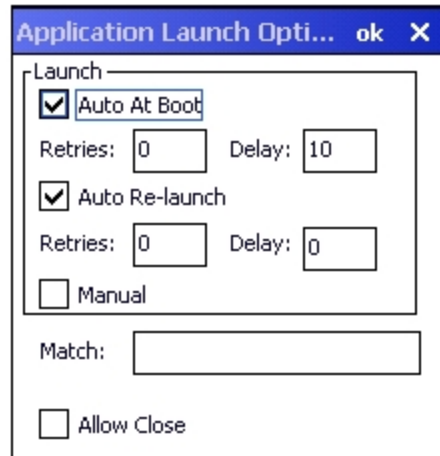


Option	Explanation
Global Delay	<p>Default is 10 seconds. Enter the number of seconds that Applications must wait before starting to run after reboot.</p> <p><i>Note: Delay (Global) may not be available in all versions of AppLock. You can simulate a Global Delay function by setting a delay for the first application (lowest Order) launched and setting the delay to 0 for all other applications.</i></p>
Input Panel	<p>Default is Disabled. Enable (check) to show the Keyboard option on the Switchpad menu. When enabled the input panel cannot be enabled or disabled for each individual application, and is available to the user for all configured applications.</p>
Clear Button	<p>Tap the Clear button to clear all currently displayed Filename or Application information. The Global settings are not cleared.</p>
Scroll Buttons	<p>Use the left and right scroll buttons to move from application setup screen to application setup screen. The left and right buttons update the information on the screen with the previous or next configured application respectively.</p>

---

## Launch Button

When clicked, displays the Launch options panel for the Filename selected on the Administration panel.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Application Launch Opti..." with "ok" and "X" buttons. The dialog contains a "Launch" section with three options: "Auto At Boot" (checked), "Auto Re-launch" (checked), and "Manual" (unchecked). Below "Auto At Boot" are input fields for "Retries" (0) and "Delay" (10). Below "Auto Re-launch" are input fields for "Retries" (0) and "Delay" (0). Below the "Launch" section is a "Match:" label followed by an empty text box. At the bottom is an unchecked checkbox labeled "Allow Close".

*Note: Launch order is determined by the Order specified in the Application tab. The Order value does not have to be sequential.*

---

## **Auto At Boot**

Default is Enabled.

### **Auto At Boot**

When enabled, automatically launches (subject to the specified Delay in seconds) the application after the unit is rebooted. If a Delay in seconds is specified, AppLock waits for the specified period of time to expire before launching the application. The Delay default value is 10 seconds; valid values are between 0 “no delay” and a maximum of 999 seconds.

### **Retries**

This is the number of times the application launch will be retried if a failure occurs when the application is automatically launched at bootup. Valid values are between 0 (no tries) and 99 tries or -1 for infinite. Infinite tries ends when the application successfully launches. The default is 0 retries.

### **Delay**

This timer is the time that AppLock waits prior to the initial launch of the selected application when it is automatically launched at bootup. Delay default is 10 seconds. Valid values are between 0 seconds (no delay) and 999 seconds.

The Auto At Boot delay is associated for each application; it will be either a value specified by the Administrator or it will be the delay default value. At startup, when a delay has been assigned for each application, AppLock waits for the delay associated with the first application to expire before launching the first application then AppLock waits for the delay associated with the second application to expire before launching the second application. AppLock continues in this manner until all applications are launched.

*Note: A “Global Delay” can be accomplished by setting a timed delay for the first application to be launched (by lowest Order number) and no delay (0 seconds) for all other applications.*

*Note: Launch order is determined by the Order specified in the Application tab. The Order value does not have to be sequential.*

---

## **Auto Re-Launch**

Default is Enabled.

When enabled for a specific application, automatically re-launches it (subject to the specified Auto Re-Launch Delay in seconds) after it terminates. This option allows the Administrator to disable the re-launch operation. AppLock cannot prevent all applications from closing. When an application that AppLock cannot prevent from closing terminates, perhaps because of an error condition, AppLock re-launches the application when this option is enabled.

*Note: If [Allow Close](#) is enabled and both Auto Re-launch and Manual (Launch) are disabled, the application cannot be restarted for the end-user or by the end-user after the application terminates.*

### **Retries**

Default is 0 tries. Retries is the number of times AppLock will try to re-launch the application. The retry count is reset after an application is successfully launched and controlled by AppLock. Valid values are between 0 (no tries) and 99 tries or -1 for infinite. Infinite tries ends when the application successfully launches.

### **Delay**

Default is 0 seconds (no delay). Delay is the amount of time AppLock waits prior to re-launching an application that has terminated. The delay is specified in seconds. Valid values are between 0 (no delay) and 99 seconds.

AppLock must also be configured to automatically re-launch an application. To AppLock, application termination by the end-user is indistinguishable from application termination for any other reason.

---

## **Manual (Launch)**

Default is Disabled. Enabling this option allows the end-user to launch the specified application(s). Upon bootup completion an application with Manual enabled is listed on the Switchpad accompanied by a checkmark that indicates the application is currently active or available for Launching. When an application name is tapped by the end-user, the application is launched (if inactive) and brought to the foreground.

Applications set up with Manual (Launch) enabled may or may not be launched at bootup. This function is based on the application's Auto At Boot setting. The applications have been listed as approved applications for end-user manual launch using the Switchpad menu structure. The approved applications are listed on the Switchpad. A checkmark indicates the applications active status.

When Manual (Launch) is disabled for an application, and Allow Close is enabled for the application, when the end-user closes the specific application it is no longer available (shown) on the Switchpad.

When Auto At Boot and Manual (Launch) are both disabled for a specific application, the application is 1) not placed on the list of approved applications for end-user manual launch and 2) never launched, and 3) not displayed on the Switchpad.

## **Match**

Default is blank (Match is not used).

AppLock works by associating display windows with the launched process ID. If an application uses different process IDs for windows it creates, the Match field must be used.

Use the Match field to specify up to 32 characters of the class name for the application.

- DOS applications using a standard DOS display box should specify **condev\_appcls** in the Match textbox.
- Remote Desktop (remote.exe) should specify TSSHELLWND in the Match textbox.

*Note:* An update may be required to support locking remote.exe. Contact [technical assistance](#) for details.

## **Allow close**

Default is Disabled. When enabled, the associated application can be closed by the end-user.

This option allows the administrator to configure applications that consume system resources to be terminated if an error condition occurs or at the end-user's request. Error conditions may generate a topmost popup requiring an end-user response, memory resource issues requiring an end-user response, etc. Also at the administrator's discretion, these types of applications can be started manually (see Manual [Launch]) by the end-user.

---

## ***End User Internet Explorer (EUIE)***

AppLock supports applications that utilize Internet Explorer, such as .HTML pages and JAVA applications. The end user can run an application by entering the application name and path in Internet Explorer's address bar.

To prevent the end user from executing an application using this method, the address bar and Options settings dialog are restricted in Internet Explorer. This is accomplished by creating an Internet Explorer that is used in end user mode: End-user Internet Explorer (EUIE.EXE). The EUIE executes the Internet Explorer application in full screen mode which removes the address bar and status bar. The Options Dialog is also removed so the end user cannot re-enable the address bar.

The administrator specifies the EUIE by checking the Internet checkbox in the Application tab of the Administrator applet. The internet application should then be entered in the Application text box.

When the Internet checkbox is enabled, the Menu and Status check boxes are available.

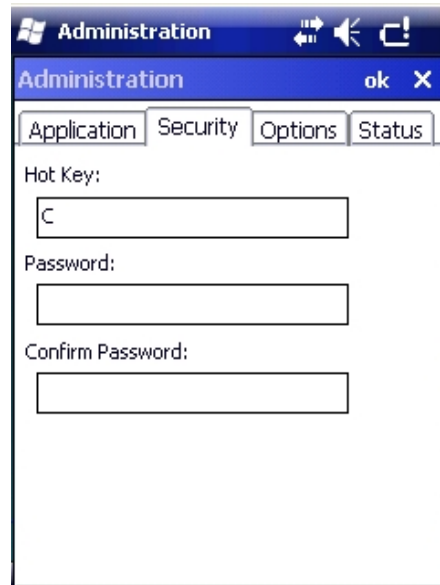
Enabling the Menu checkbox displays the EUIE menu which contains navigation functions like Back, Forward, Home, Refresh, etc., functions that are familiar to most Internet Explorer users. When the Menu checkbox is blank, the EUIE menu is not displayed and Navigation functions are unavailable.

When the Status checkbox is enabled, the status bar displayed by EUIE gives feedback to the end-user when they are navigating the Internet.

If the standard Internet Explorer that is shipped with the mobile device is desired, it should be treated like any other application. This means that IEXPLORER.EXE (or equivalent) should be specified in the Application text box and the internet application should be entered in the command line. In this case, do not check the Internet checkbox.

---

## Security Panel



### Setting an Activation Hotkey

Specify the hotkey sequence that triggers AppLock to switch between administrator and user modes and the password required to enter Administrator mode. The default hotkey sequence is Shift+Ctrl+A.

A 2<sup>nd</sup> key keypress is an invalid keypress for a hotkey sequence.

Move the cursor to the Hot Key text box. Enter the new hot key sequence by first pressing the Shift state key followed by a normal key. The hotkey selected must be a key sequence that the application being locked does not use. The hotkey sequence is intercepted by AppLock and is not passed to the application.

Input from the keyboard or Input Panel is accepted with the restriction that the normal key must be pressed from the keyboard when switching modes. The hotkey sequence is displayed in the Hot key text box with <Shift>, <Alt>, and <Ctrl> text strings representing the shift state keys. The normal keyboard key completes the hotkey sequence. The hotkey must be entered via the keypad. Some hotkeys cannot be entered via the Input Panel. Also, hotkeys entered via the [SIP<sup>1</sup>](#) are not guaranteed to work properly when switching operational modes.

For example, if the <Ctrl> key is pressed followed by <A>, Ctrl+A is entered in the text box. If another key is pressed after a normal key press, the hotkey sequence is cleared and a new hotkey sequence is started.

A normal key is required for the hotkey sequence and is unlike pressing the normal key during a mode switch; this key can be entered from the SIP when configuring the key. However, when the hotkey is pressed to switch user modes, the normal key must be entered from the keypad; it cannot be entered from the SIP.

---

<sup>1</sup>Soft Input Panel. The keyboard that appears on the display when the cursor is placed in a text input box.

---

## ***Setting a Password in the Security Panel***

Move the cursor to the Password text box. The passwords entered in the Password and Confirm Password fields must match. Passwords are case sensitive.

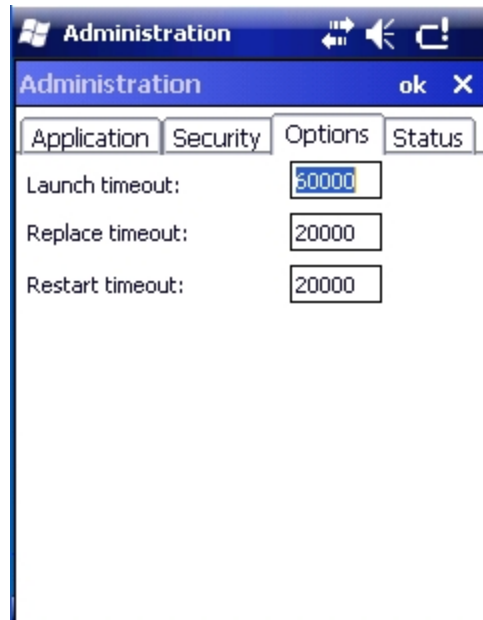
When the user exits the Administrator panel, the two passwords are compared to verify that they match. If they do not match, a dialog box is displayed notifying the user of the error. After the user closes the dialog box, the Security Panel is displayed and the password can then be entered and confirmed again. If the passwords match, the password is encrypted and saved.

See Also: ["Passwords"](#)



---

## Options Panel



AppLock uses 3 timeout values when locking applications:

Launch timeout – the time to wait for an application to initially launch before timing out. Default value is 60000 milliseconds (60 seconds).

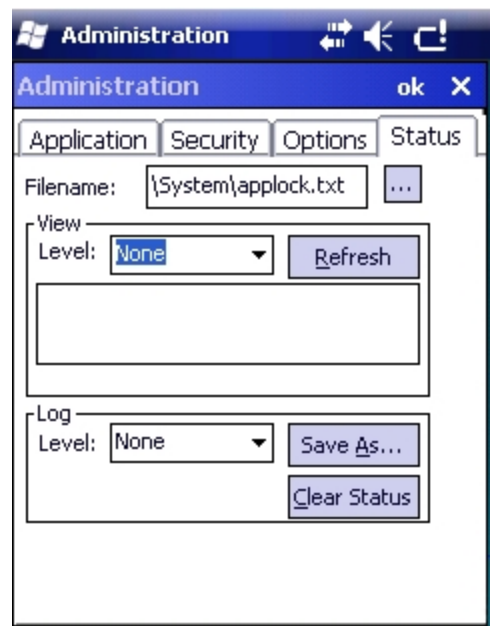
Replace timeout – the time to wait for an application to replace the current window with another one before timing out. Default value is 20000 milliseconds (20 seconds).

Restart timeout – the time to wait for an application to restart itself before timing out. Default value is 20000 milliseconds (20 seconds).

## Status Panel

Use the Status panel to view the log of previous AppLock operations and to configure which messages are to be recorded during AppLock operation.

Status information is stored in a specific location on the storage device and in a specific logfile specified by the Administrator. For this reason, the administrator can configure the type of status information that is logged, as well as clear the status information.



Move the cursor to the Filename text box and either type the logfile path or tap the Browse button (the ... button). The standard Windows OS Browse dialog is displayed. After selecting the logfile from the Browse dialog, tap OK.

## View

Error	Error status messages are logged when an error occurs and is intended to be used by the administrator to determine why the specified application cannot be locked.
Process	Processing status shows the flow control of AppLock components and is mainly intended for Customer Support when helping users troubleshoot problems with their AppLock program.
Extended	Extended status provides more detailed information than that logged by Process Logging.
All	All messages are displayed.

Tap the Refresh button after changing from one view level to another. The filtered records are displayed, all others are not displayed.

---

## Log

*Note: If a level higher than Error is selected, the status should be cleared frequently by the administrator.*

In addition to the three view levels the administrator can select that all status information be logged or turn off all status information logging completely. The system default is 'None'; however to reduce registry use, the administrator may want to select 'None' after verifying the configuration. Tap the Clear button to clear the status information from the registry.

- None
- Error
- Processing
- Extended
- All

## Save As

When the 'Save As'... button is selected, a standard 'Save As' dialog screen is displayed. Specify the path and filename. If the filename exists, the user is prompted whether the file should be overwritten. If the file does not exist, it is created.

[See Also: "AppLock Error Messages"](#)

---

## ***AppLock Help***

### **The mobile device won't switch from Administration mode to end-user mode.**

- If the configuration is valid for one application but not the other, the switch to end-user mode fails. AppLock stays in Administration mode and is stopped until the Administrator password is entered.
- If two copies of the same application are configured, but the application only allows one copy to run at a time, for example Microsoft Pocket Word and RFTerm, the switch to end-user fails. AppLock stays in Administration mode and is stopped until the Administrator password is entered.

### **The hotkey sequence needed is not allowed. What does this mean?**

When the Administrator is selecting a hotkey sequence to use when switching user modes, they are not allowed to enter key combinations that are reserved by installed software applications. Honeywell has validated RFTerm key combinations ONLY.

When RFTerm is installed on the mobile device and an RFTerm restricted key sequence is specified as a hotkey sequence by the Administrator, the following error message is displayed in a message box:

`Selected hotkey is not allowed. Please reenter.`

When RFTerm is not installed on the mobile device, the RFTerm keys are not restricted from use.

### **Can't locate the password that has been set by the administrator?**

Contact [technical assistance](#) for help.

[See Also: "AppLock Error Messages"](#)

## AppLock Error Messages

Any messages whose first word is an 'ing' word is output prior to the action described in the message. For example, "Switching to admin-hotkey press" is logged after the administrator has pressed the hotkey but prior to starting the switch process.

For all operations that can result in an error, an Error level message is displayed when a failure occurs. These messages contain the word "failure". These messages have a partner Extended level message that is logged which contains the word "OK" if the action completed successfully rather than with an error.

For processing level messages, "Enter..." is logged at the beginning of the function specified in the message and "Exit..." is logged at the end (just before the return) of the function specified in the message.

Message	Explanation and/or corrective action	Level
Error reading hotkey	The hotkey is read but not required by AppLock.	LOG_EX
Error reading hotkey; using default	A hotkey is required. If there is a failure reading the hotkey, the internal factory default is used.	LOG_ERROR
App Command Line= <Command line>	Command line of the application being locked	LOG_PROCESSING
App= <Application name>	Name of the application being locked	LOG_PROCESSING
dwProcessID= <#>	Device ID of the application being locked	LOG_EX
Encrypt exported key len <#>	Size of encrypt export key	LOG_EX
Encrypt password length= <#>	The length of the encrypted password.	LOG_EX
Encrypted data len <#>	Length of the encrypted password	LOG_EX
hProcess= <#>	Handle of the application being locked	LOG_EX
Key pressed = <#>	A key has been pressed and trapped by the hotkey processing.	LOG_EX
*****	The status information is being saved to a file and the file has been opened successfully.	LOG_EX
Address of keyboard hook procedure failure	AppLock found the kbdhook.dll, but was unable to get the address of the initialization procedure. For some reason the dll is corrupted. Look in the \Windows directory for kbdhook.dll. If it exists, delete it. Also delete AppLock.exe from the \Windows directory and reboot the unit. Deleting AppLock.exe triggers the AppLock system to reload.	LOG_ERROR
Address of keyboard hook procedure OK	AppLock successfully retrieved the address of the keyboard filter initialization procedure.	LOG_EX
Alt pressed	The Alt key has been pressed and trapped by the HotKey processing.	LOG_EX
Alt	Processing the hotkey and backdoor entry	LOG_EX
Application handle search failure	The application being locked did not complete initialization.	LOG_ERROR
Application handle search OK	The application initialized itself successfully	LOG_ERROR
Application load failure	The application could not be launched by AppLock; the application could not be found or is corrupted.	LOG_ERROR
Backdoor message received	The backdoor keys have been pressed. The backdoor hotkeys provide a method for customer service to get a user back into their system without editing the registry or reloading the device.	LOG_PROCESSING
Cannot find kbdhook.dll	The load of the keyboard filter failed. This occurs when the dll is missing or is corrupted. Look in the \Windows directory for kbdhook.dll. If it exists, delete it. Also delete AppLock.exe from the \Windows directory and reboot the unit. Deleting AppLock.exe triggers the AppLock system to reload.	LOG_ERROR
Converted Pwd	Converted password from wide to mbs.	LOG_EX

Message	Explanation and/or corrective action	Level
Could not create event EVT_HOTKEYCHG	The keyboard filter uses this event at the Administrator Control panel. The event could not be created.	LOG_ERROR
Could not hook keyboard	If the keyboard cannot be controlled, AppLock cannot process the hotkey. This failure prevents a mode switch into user mode.	LOG_ERROR
Could not start thread Hot-KeyMon	The keyboard filter must watch for hot key changes. The watch process could not be initiated.	LOG_ERROR
Ctrl after L or X	Processing the backdoor entry.	LOG_EX
Ctrl pressed	The Ctrl key has been pressed and trapped by the HotKey processing.	LOG_EX
Ctrl	Processing the hotkey and backdoor entry.	LOG_EX
Decrypt acquire context failure	Unable to decrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Decrypt acquired context OK	Decryption process ok.	LOG_EX
Decrypt create hash failure	Unable to decrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Decrypt created hash OK	Decryption process ok.	LOG_EX
Decrypt failure	Unable to decrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Decrypt import key failure	Unable to decrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Decrypt imported key OK	Decryption process ok.	LOG_EX
Encrypt acquire context failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt acquire encrypt context failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt acquired encrypt context OK	Encrypt password process successful.	LOG_EX
Encrypt create hash failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt create key failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt created encrypt hash OK	Encrypt password process successful.	LOG_EX
Encrypt export key failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt export key length failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt exported key OK	Encrypt password process successful.	LOG_EX
Encrypt failure	The password encryption failed.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt gen key failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt generate key failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt get user key failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt get user key ok	Encrypt password process successful.	LOG_EX
Encrypt hash data failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt hash data from pwd OK	Encrypt password process successful.	LOG_EX

Message	Explanation and/or corrective action	Level
Encrypt length failure	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypt out of memory for key	Unable to encrypt password.	LOG_ERROR
Encrypted data OK	The password has been successfully encrypted.	LOG_EX
Enter AppLock-EnumWindows	In order for AppLock to control the application being locked so it can prevent the application from exiting, AppLock launches the application and has to wait until it has created and initialized its main window. This message is logged when the function that waits for the application initialization is entered.	LOG_EX
Enter DecryptPwd	Entering the password decryption process.	LOG_PROCESSING
Enter EncryptPwd	Entering the password encryption processing.	LOG_PROCESSING
Enter FullScreenMode	Entering the function that switches the screen mode. In full screen mode, the taskbar is hidden and disabled.	LOG_PROCESSING
Enter GetAppInfo	Processing is at the beginning of the function that retrieves the application information from the registry.	LOG_PROCESSING
Enter password dialog	Entering the password dialog processing.	LOG_PROCESSING
Enter password timeout	Entering the password timeout processing.	LOG_PROCESSING
Enter restart app timer	Some application shut down before AppLock can stop it. In these cases, AppLock gets notification of the exit. When the notification is received, AppLock starts a timer to restart the application. This message logs that the timer has expired and the processing is at the beginning of the timer function.	LOG_PROCESSING
Enter TaskbarScreenMode	Entering the function that switches the screen to non-full screen mode and enable the taskbar.	LOG_PROCESSING
Enter ToAdmin	Entering the function that handles a mode switch into admin mode.	LOG_PROCESSING
Enter ToUser	Entering the function that handles the mode switch to user mode	LOG_PROCESSING
Enter verify password	Entering the password verification processing.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit AppLock-EnumWindows-Found	There are two exit paths from the enumeration function. This message denotes the enumeration function found the application.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit AppLock-EnumWindows-Not found	There are two exit paths from the enumeration function. This message denotes the enumeration function did not find the application.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit DecryptPwd	Exiting password decryption processing.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit EncryptPwd	Exiting password encryption processing.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit FullScreenMode	Exiting the function that switches the screen to full screen.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit GetAppInfo	Processing is at the end of the function that retrieved the application information from the registry.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit password dialog	Exiting password prompt processing.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit password dialog-cancel	Exiting password prompt w/cancel.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit password dialog-OK	Exiting password prompt successfully.	LOG_PROCESSING

Message	Explanation and/or corrective action	Level
Exit password timeout	Exiting password timeout processing.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit restart app timer	Processing is at the end of the timer function	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit TaskbarScreenMode	Exiting the function that switches the screen mode back to normal operation for the administrator.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit ToAdmin	Exiting the function that handles the mode switch into admin mode.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit ToUser	Exiting the user mode switch function.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit ToUser-Registry read failure	The AppName value does not exist in the registry so user mode cannot be entered.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit verify password-no pwd set	Exiting password verification.	LOG_PROCESSING
Exit verify password-response from dialog	Exiting password verification.	LOG_PROCESSING
Found taskbar	The handle to the taskbar has been found so that AppLock can disable it in user mode.	LOG_PROCESSING
Getting address of keyboard hook init procedure	AppLock is retrieving the address of the keyboard hook.	LOG_PROCESSING
Getting configuration from registry	The AppLock configuration is being read from the registry. This occurs at initialization and also at entry into user mode. The registry must be re-read at entry into user mode in case the administration changed the settings of the application being controlled.	LOG_PROCESSING
Getting encrypt pwd length	The length of the encrypted password is being calculated.	LOG_EX
Hook wndproc failure	AppLock is unable to lock the application. This could happen if the application being locked encountered an error after performing its initialization and shut itself down prior to being locked by AppLock.	LOG_ERROR
Hook wndproc of open app failure	The application is open, but AppLock cannot lock it.	LOG_ERROR
Hot key event creation failure	The Admin applet is unable to create the hotkey notification.	LOG_ERROR
Hot key pressed	Processing the hotkey and backdoor entry	LOG_EX
Hot key pressed	Processing the hotkey and backdoor entry	LOG_EX
Hot key set event failure	When the administrator changes the hotkey configuration the hotkey controller must be notified. This notification failed.	LOG_ERROR
Hotkey press message received	The user just pressed the configured hotkey.	LOG_PROCESSING
In app hook:WM_SIZE	In addition to preventing the locked application from exiting, AppLock must also prevent the application from enabling the taskbar and resizing the application's window. This message traps a change in the window size and corrects it.	LOG_EX
In app hook:WM_WINDOWPOSCHANGED	In addition to preventing the locked application from exiting, AppLock must also prevent the application from enabling the taskbar and resizing the application's window. This message traps a change in the window position and corrects it.	LOG_EX
Initializing keyboard hook procedure	AppLock is calling the keyboard hook initialization.	LOG_PROCESSING
Keyboard hook initialization failure	The keyboard filter initialization failed.	LOG_ERROR



Message	Explanation and/or corrective action	Level
Keyboard hook loaded OK	The keyboard hook dll exists and loaded successfully.	LOG_EX
L after Ctrl	Processing the backdoor entry.	LOG_EX
Loading keyboard hook	When AppLock first loads, it loads a dll that contains the keyboard hook processing. This message is logged prior to the load attempt.	LOG_PROCESSING
Open failure	The status information is being saved to a file and the file open has failed. This could occur if the file is write protected. If the file does not exist, it is created.	LOG_ERROR
Open registry failure	If the Administration registry key does not exist, the switch to user mode fails because the AppName value in the Administration key is not available.	LOG_ERROR
Opened status file	The status information is being saved to a file and the file has been opened successfully.	LOG_EX
Out of memory for encrypted pwd	Not enough memory to encrypt the password.	LOG_ERROR
pRealTaskbarWndProc already set	The taskbar control has already been installed.	LOG_EX
Pwd cancelled or invalid-remain in user mode	The password prompt was cancelled by the user or the maximum number of failed attempts to enter a password was exceeded.	LOG_EX
Read registry error-hot key	The hotkey registry entry is missing or empty. This is not considered an error. The keyboard hook uses an embedded default if the value is not set in the registry.	LOG_ERROR
Read registry failure-app name	AppName registry value does not exist or is empty. This constitutes a failure for switching into user mode.	LOG_ERROR
Read registry failure-Command Line	AppCommandLine registry entry is missing or empty. This is not considered an error since command line information is not necessary to launch and lock the application.	LOG_ERROR
Read registry failure-Internet	The Internet registry entry is missing or empty. This is not considered an error since the Internet value is not necessary to launch and lock the application.	LOG_ERROR
Registering Backdoor MSG	The AppLock system communicates with the keyboard hook via a user defined message. Both AppLock.exe and Kbdhook.dll register the message at initialization.	LOG_PROCESSING
Registering Hotkey MSG	The AppLock system communicates with the keyboard hook via a user defined message. Both Applock.exe and Kbdhook.dll register the message at initialization.	LOG_PROCESSING
Registry read failure at reenter user mode	The registry has to be read when entering user mode if the AppName is missing. This user mode entry is attempted at boot and after a hotkey switch when the administrator has closed the application being locked or has changed the application name or command line.	LOG_ERROR
Registry read failure at reenter user mode	The registry has to be read when switching into user mode. This is because the administrator can change the settings during administration mode. The read of the registry failed which means the Administration key was not found or the AppName value was missing or empty.	LOG_ERROR
Registry read failure	The registry read failed. The registry information read when this message is logged is the application information. If the Administration key cannot be opened or if the AppName value is missing or empty, this error is logged. The other application information is not required. If the AppName value is not available, AppLock cannot switch into user mode.	LOG_ERROR
Reset system work area failure	The system work area is adjusted when in user mode to cover the taskbar area. The system work area has to be adjusted to exclude the taskbar area in administration mode. AppLock was unable to adjust this area.	LOG_ERROR
Shift pressed	The Shift key has been pressed and trapped by the HotKey processing.	LOG_EX
Shift	Processing the hotkey and backdoor entry	LOG_EX
Show taskbar	The taskbar is now being made visible and enabled.	LOG_PROCESSING
Switching to admin-backdoor	The system is currently in user mode and is now switching to admin mode. The switch occurred because of the backdoor key presses were entered by the administrator.	LOG_PROCESSING
Switching to admin-hotkey press	The system is currently in user mode and is now switching to admin mode. The switch occurred because of a hotkey press by the administrator.	LOG_PROCESSING

Message	Explanation and/or corrective action	Level
Switching to admin-kbdhook.dll not found	The keyboard hook load failed, so AppLock switches to admin mode. If a password is specified, the password prompt is displayed and remains until a valid password is entered.	LOG_PROCESSING
Switching to admin-keyboard hook initialization failure	If the keyboard hook initialization fails, AppLock switches to admin mode. If a password is specified, the password prompt is displayed and remains until a valid password is entered.	LOG_PROCESSING
Switching to admin-registry read failure	See the explanation of the "Registry read failure" above. AppLock is switching into Admin mode. If a password has been configured, the prompt will be displayed and will not be dismissed until a valid password is entered.	LOG_PROCESSING
Switching to TaskbarScreenMode	In administration mode, the taskbar is visible and enabled.	LOG_EX
Switching to user mode	The registry was successfully read and AppLock is starting the process to switch to user mode.	LOG_PROCESSING
Switching to user-hotkey press	The system is currently in admin mode and is now switching to user mode. The switch occurred because of a hotkey press by the administrator.	LOG_PROCESSING
Taskbar hook failure	AppLock is unable to control the taskbar to prevent the locked application from re-enabling it.	LOG_ERROR
Taskbar hook OK	AppLock successfully installed control of the taskbar.	LOG_EX
Timeout looking for app window	After the application is launched, AppLock must wait until the application has initialized itself before proceeding. The application did not start successfully and AppLock has timed out.	LOG_ERROR
ToUser after admin, not at boot	The user mode switch is attempted when the device boots and after the administrator presses the hotkey. The mode switch is being attempted after a hotkey press.	LOG_EX
ToUser after admin-app still open	The switch to user mode is being made via a hotkey press and the administrator has left the application open and has not made any changes in the configuration.	LOG_EX
ToUser after admin-no app or cmd line change	If user mode is being entered via a hotkey press, the administrator may have left the configured application open. If so, AppLock does not launch the application again unless a new application or command line has been specified; otherwise, it just locks it.	LOG_EX
Unable to move desktop	The desktop is moved when switching into user mode. This prevents them from being visible if the application is exited and restarted by the timer. This error does not affect the screen mode switch; processing continues.	LOG_ERROR
Unable to move taskbar	The taskbar is moved when switching into user mode. This prevents them from being visible if the application is exited and restarted by the timer. This error does not affect the screen mode switch; processing continues.	LOG_ERROR
Unhook taskbar wndproc failure	AppLock could not remove its control of the taskbar. This error does not affect AppLock processing	LOG_ERROR
Unhook wndproc failure	AppLock could not remove the hook that allows monitoring of the application.	LOG_ERROR
Unhooking taskbar	In administration mode, the taskbar should return to normal operation, so AppLock's control of the taskbar should be removed.	LOG_EX
Unhooking wndproc	When the administrator leaves user mode, the device is fully operational; therefore, AppLock must stop monitoring the locked application.	LOG_EX
WM_SIZE adjusted	This message denotes that AppLock has readjusted the window size.	LOG_EX
X after Ctrl+L	Processing the backdoor entry.	LOG_EX
Ret from password <#>	Return value from password dialog.	LOG_EX
Decrypt data len <#>	Length of decrypted password.	LOG_EX
Window handle to enum-windows=%x	The window handle that is passed to the enumeration function. This message can be used by engineering with other development tools to trouble shoot application lock failures.	LOG_EX
WM_WINDOWPOSCHG adjusted=%x	Output the window size after it has been adjusted by AppLock	LOG_EX

---

## Backlight

### Start > Settings > System > Backlight

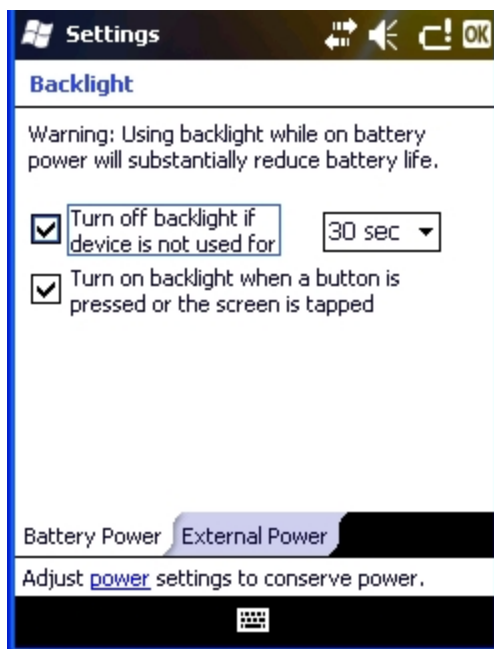
Set the power management timers for the display and keyboard backlights. Set the display brightness for battery and external power.

**IMPORTANT** – When the backlight timer expires, the display backlight and the display are OFF, as is the keypad backlight. This is the System Idle state, there are no other Idle states.

## Battery Power

### Factory Default Settings

Turn off backlight if device not used for	Enabled
Timer	30 sec- onds
Turn on backlight when a button is pressed or the screen is tapped	Enabled



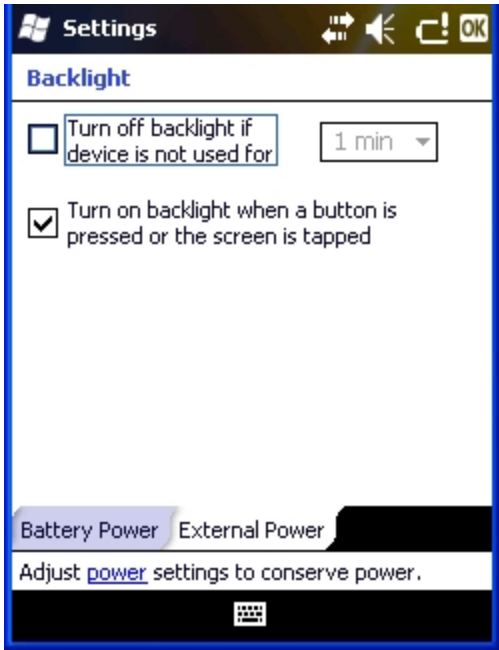
**Note:** **Turn on backlight when a button is pressed or the screen is tapped:** This affects wake-up from Suspend only. With this unchecked, the device does not wake-up from Suspend on touch or key press. It will wake-up on other events or Power key press.

When the MX9 is on battery power and the backlight timer expires, the display and the backlights for the display and keypad are turned off. Default value is 30 seconds and both the check boxes are enabled. Adjust the settings and tap OK to save the changes. The changes take effect immediately.

# External Power

## Factory Default Settings

Turn off backlight if device is not used for	Enabled
Timer	1 min
Turn on backlight when a button is pressed or the screen is tapped	Enabled <i>This option is always Enabled, unchecking this option has no effect.</i>



When the MX9 is on external power and the backlight timer expires, the display and the backlights for the display and keypad are turned off. Default value is 1 minute and both the check boxes are enabled. Adjust the settings and tap ok to save the changes. The changes take effect immediately.



**Note:** Tap Start > Help for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the X icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.

---

## Bluetooth

### Start > Settings > System > Bluetooth

*Note:* Contact [technical assistance](#) for upgrade availability if your Bluetooth panels are not the same as the panels presented in this section.

Discover and manage pairing with nearby Bluetooth devices.

#### Factory Default Settings

Discovered Devices	None
<b>Settings</b>	
<a href="#">Turn On Bluetooth</a>	Disabled / default is Off
<a href="#">Computer is connectable</a>	Enabled
<a href="#">Computer is discoverable</a>	Disabled
<a href="#">Prompt if devices request to pair</a>	Enabled
<a href="#">Continuous search</a>	Disabled
<a href="#">Filtered Mode</a>	Enabled
<a href="#">Printer Port on COM9:</a>	Disabled (unchecked) by default in both Filtered and Non Filtered Modes. The option is dimmed in Non Filtered Mode.
<a href="#">Logging</a>	Disabled
<a href="#">Computer Friendly Name</a>	[ <i>System Name</i> ]
<b>Reconnect</b>	
<a href="#">Report lost connection</a>	Enabled
<a href="#">Report when reconnected</a>	Disabled
<a href="#">Report failure to reconnect</a>	Enabled
<a href="#">Clear Pairing Table on boot</a>	Disabled
<a href="#">Auto Reconnect on Boot</a>	Enabled
<a href="#">Auto Reconnect</a>	Enabled

---

Bluetooth icon (at the bottom of the Today panel) state and Bluetooth device icon states change as Bluetooth devices are discovered, paired, connected and disconnected. There may be audible or visual signals as paired devices re-connect with the MX9.

- The default Bluetooth setting is Off.
- The MX9 cannot be discovered by other Bluetooth devices when the **Computer is discoverable** option is disabled (unchecked) on the Settings panel.
- Other Bluetooth devices cannot be discovered if they have been set up to be Non-Discoverable or Invisible.
- When **Filtered Mode** is enabled, the MX9 can pair with one Bluetooth scanner and one Bluetooth printer.
- When **Filtered Mode** is disabled, the MX9 can pair with up to four Bluetooth devices, with a limit of one scanner, one printer, two **HID**<sup>1</sup> devices (one Mouse, one Keyboard), one **PAN**<sup>2</sup> device, and one **DUN**<sup>3</sup> device connected at the same time.
- It is not necessary to disconnect a paired scanner and printer before a different scanner or printer is paired with the MX9.
- The target Bluetooth device should be as close as possible (up to 32.8 ft (10 meters) Line of Sight) to the MX9 during the pairing process.

Assumption: The System Administrator has Discovered and Paired targeted Bluetooth devices for the MX9. The MX9 operating system has been upgraded to the revision level required for Bluetooth client operation. An application (or API) is available that will accept data from serial Bluetooth devices.

---

<sup>1</sup>Human Interface Device profiles used by Bluetooth keyboards, mice, pointing devices and remote monitoring devices.

<sup>2</sup>Personal Area Networking profile. Un-modified Ethernet payloads (using BNEP) can exchange packets between Bluetooth devices. PANU is a PAN User service that uses either the NAP or the GN service.

<sup>3</sup>Dial-Up Networking provides access to the Internet and other dial-up services using Bluetooth technology.

---

## Initial Configuration

1. Select **Start > Settings > System > Bluetooth** or tap the **Bluetooth icon** at the bottom of the Today panel.
2. Tap the **Settings** Tab.
3. Change the **Computer Friendly Name** at the bottom of the [Settings](#) panel. The Bluetooth MX9 default name is determined by the factory installed software version. Honeywell strongly urges assigning every MX9 a unique name (up to 32 characters) before Bluetooth Discovery is initiated.
4. Check or uncheck the MX9 Bluetooth options on the **Settings** tab and the **Reconnect** tab.
5. Tap the **OK** button to save your changes.

## Subsequent Use

*Note: Today panel icon and Bluetooth device Icon states change as Bluetooth devices are discovered, paired, connected and disconnected. A Today panel Bluetooth icon with a red background indicates Bluetooth is active and not paired with any device. A device icon with a red background indicates a disconnected paired device.*

1. Tap the **Bluetooth icon** at the bottom of the Today panel to open the Bluetooth LXEZ Pairing application.
2. Tap the **Bluetooth Devices** tab.
3. Tap the **Discover** button. When the Bluetooth module begins searching for in-range Bluetooth devices, the button name changes to Stop. Tap the Stop button to cancel the Discover function at any time.
4. The discovered devices are listed in the Bluetooth Devices window.
5. **Highlight** a Bluetooth device in the Discovered window and double-tap to open the device properties menu.
6. Tap **Pair as Scanner** to set up the MX9 to receive scanner data.
7. Tap **Pair as Printer** to set up the MX9 to send data to the printer.
8. Tap **Serial Device** (when Filtered mode is disabled) to set up the MX9 to communicate with a Bluetooth serial device.
9. Tap **HID Device** to pair a HID device.
10. Tap **PAN Device** to pair a PAN device.
11. Tap **DUN Device** to pair a DUN device.
12. Tap **Disconnect** to stop pairing with the device. Once disconnected, tap **Clear** to remove the device name and data from the MX9 Bluetooth Devices list. Select **Yes** at the "Delete all disconnected devices? Yes / No" dialog box.

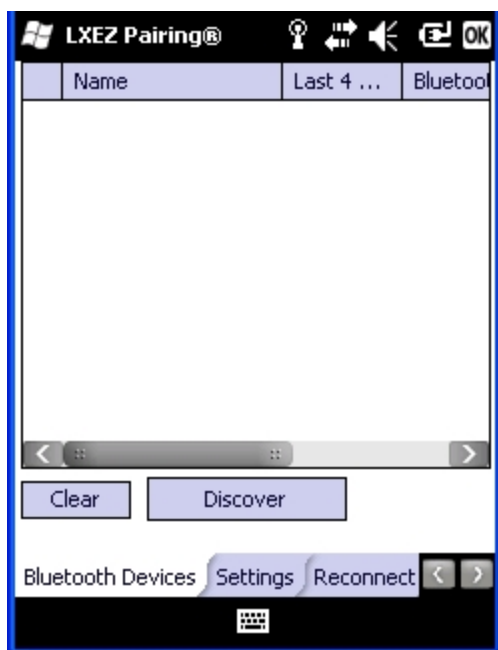
Upon successful pairing, the selected device may react to indicate a successful connection. The reaction may be an audio signal from the device, flashing LED on the device, or a dialog box is placed on the MX9 display.

Whenever the MX9 is turned On, all previously paired, live, Bluetooth devices in the vicinity are paired, one at a time, with the MX9. If the devices cannot connect to the MX9 before the re-connect timeout time period expires (default is approximately 20 seconds for each paired device) there is no indication of the continuing disconnect state if [Report Failure to Reconnect](#) is disabled.

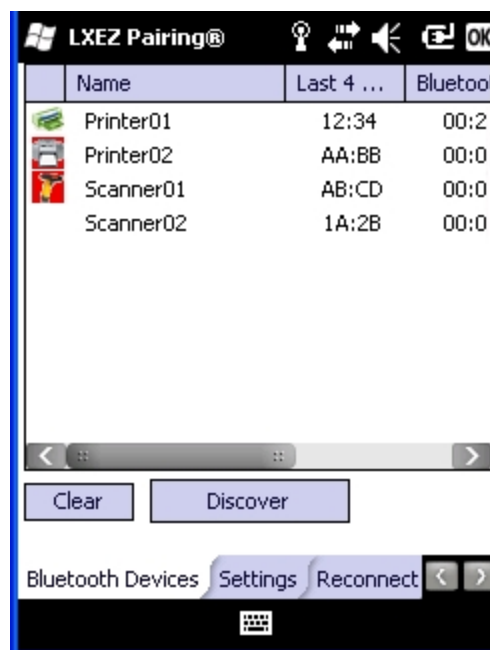
---

## Bluetooth Devices

The Bluetooth Devices tab displays any device previously discovered and paired with the MX9.



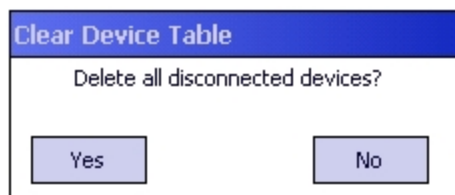
Before Discover (or initial setup)



After Discover

### Clear Button

Deletes all devices from the Device table that are not currently paired. A dialog box is presented.



Tap the Yes button to remove disconnected or deleted devices from the device table. The devices are removed from the Device table after any reboot sequence and when LXEZ Pairing is re-launched without rebooting. Tap the No button to make no changes.

[See Also: "Clear Pairing Table on Boot"](#)



---

## Discover Button

When tapped, the Bluetooth client discovers and displays all Bluetooth devices in the vicinity. Bluetooth managed devices should be [as close as possible](#)<sup>1</sup>, in direct line of sight, with the MX9 during the Discover process.

At the end of the Discover process, and when [Filtered Mode](#) is disabled/unchecked, serial Bluetooth devices as well as Bluetooth scanners and printers are displayed in the Device table. When Filtered Mode is enabled/checked, only Bluetooth scanners and printers are displayed in the Device table.

## Discover

Tap the Discover button to locate all discoverable Bluetooth devices in the vicinity. The Discovery process also queries for the unique identifier of each device discovered.



Tap Stop at any time to end the Discover and Query for Unique Identifier functions.

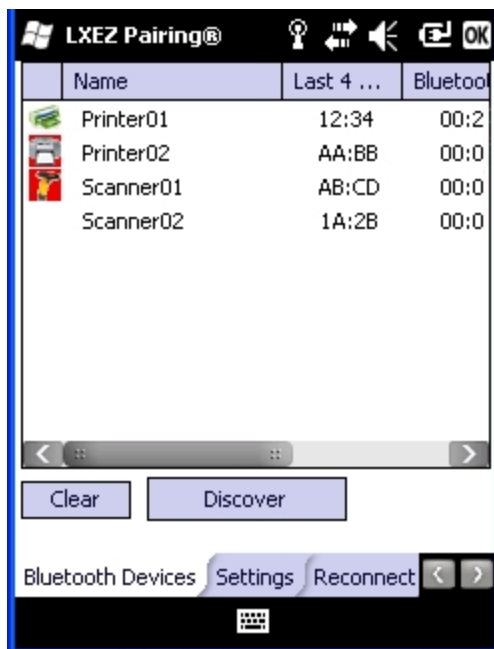
*Note: When an active paired device enters Suspend Mode, is turned Off or leaves the MX9 Bluetooth scanning range, the Bluetooth connection between the paired device and the MX9 is lost. There may be audible or visual signals as paired devices disconnect from the MX9.*

---

<sup>1</sup>No more than 32.80 feet (10 meters) line of sight in a quiet environment.

---

## Bluetooth Device List



The discovered paired devices may or may not be identified with an icon.

Discovered devices without an icon can be paired as a Serial device, a Bluetooth scanner, and a Bluetooth printer. The Bluetooth panel assigns an icon to the device name.

An icon with a red background indicates the device's Bluetooth connection is inactive.

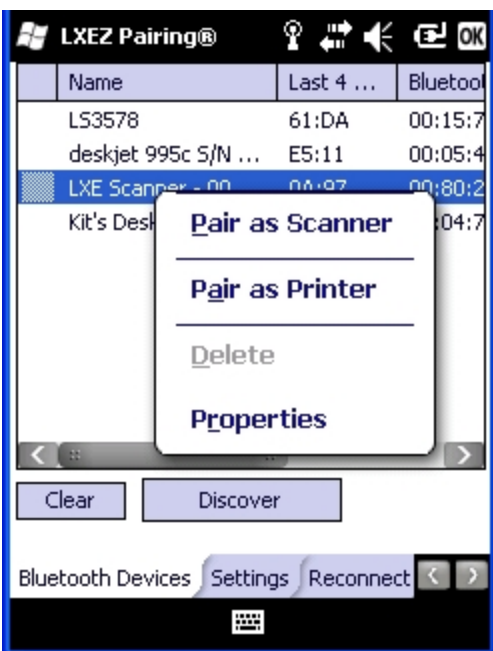
An icon with a white background indicates the device is connected to the MX9 and the device's Bluetooth connection is active.

Double-click a device in the list to open the device properties menu. The target device does not need to be active.

## Bluetooth Device Menu

**Prerequisite:** The Discover button has been clicked and there are Bluetooth devices listed.

Click on a device in the list to highlight it. Double-click the highlighted device to display the Bluetooth Device right click menu. The Bluetooth device does not need to be active.



Filtered Mode On



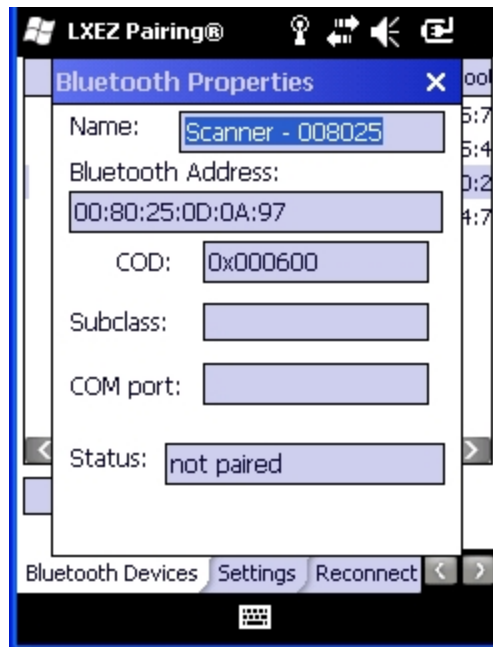
Filtered Mode Off

## Right Click Menu Options

Pair as Scanner	Receive data from the highlighted Bluetooth scanner or Bluetooth imager.
Pair as Printer	Send data to the highlighted Bluetooth printer.
Pair as Serial Device	Communicate with the highlighted serial Bluetooth device. This option is available when Filtered Mode is disabled/unchecked.
Pair as HID device	Communicate with the highlighted HID (Human Interface Device). This option is available when Filtered Mode is disabled/unchecked.
Pair as PAN Device (PANU to NAP)	Communicate with the highlighted PAN (Personal Area Networking) device. This option is available when Filtered Mode is disabled/unchecked.
Pair as DUN Device	Communicate with the highlighted DUN (Dial-Up Networking) device. This option is available when Filtered Mode is disabled/unchecked.
Disconnect	Stop the connection between the MX9 and the highlighted paired Bluetooth device.
Delete	Remove an unpaired device from the Bluetooth device list. The highlighted device name and identifier is removed from the MX9 Bluetooth Devices panel when the user taps the Clear button.
Properties	More information on the highlighted Bluetooth device.

---

## Bluetooth Properties

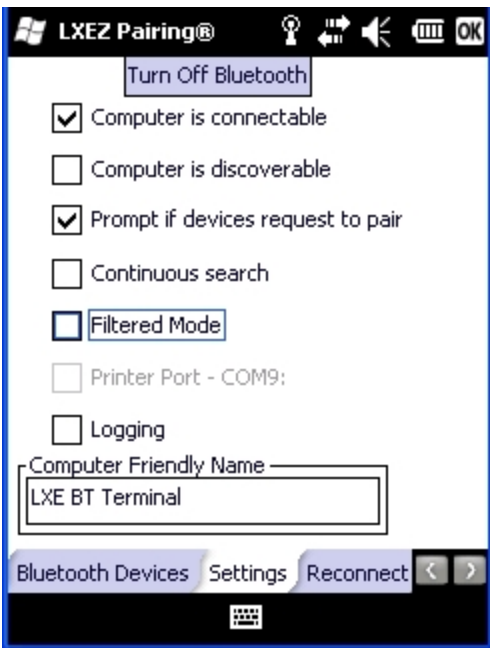


Data on the Bluetooth Properties panel cannot be changed by the user. The data displayed is the result of the device Query performed during the Discovery process.

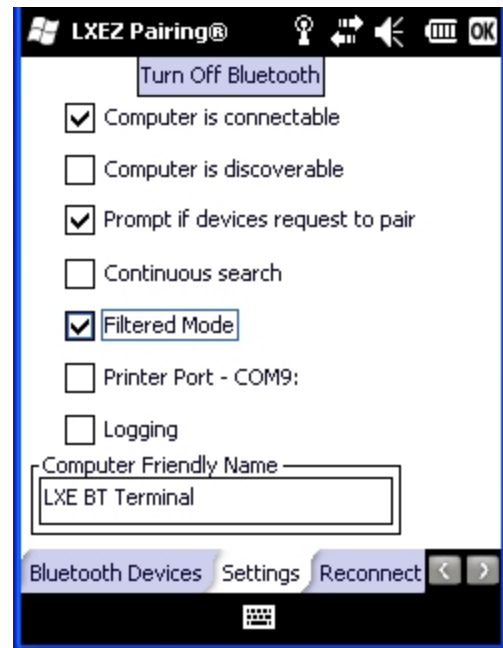
The Status dialog box reflects the current state of the highlighted device.

---

## Settings



Filtered Mode Off



Filtered Mode On

*Note: These options can still be checked or unchecked whether Bluetooth connection is enabled or disabled.*

## Turn On Bluetooth

Tap the button to toggle the Bluetooth client On. The button title changes from *Turn On Bluetooth* to *Turn Off Bluetooth*.

### Default

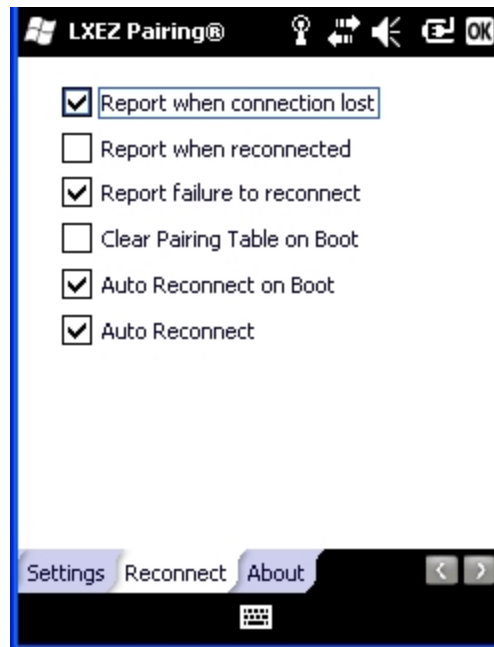
The default value is Disabled (Bluetooth client is Off).

## Options

Option	Information
Computer is connectable	This option is Enabled (checked) by default. Disable this option to inhibit MX9 connection initiated by a Bluetooth scanner.
Computer is discoverable	This option is Disabled (unchecked) by default. Enable this option to ensure other devices can discover the MX9.
Prompt if devices request to pair	This option is Enabled (checked) by default. A dialog box appears on the MX9 screen notifying the user a Bluetooth device requests to pair with the MX9. The requesting Bluetooth device does not need to have been Discovered by the MX9 before the pairing request is received. Tap the Accept button or the Decline button to remove the dialog box from the screen. In some cases, if a Bluetooth device is already paired this setting cannot be changed. If this is the case, an error message is displayed and the option is not changed. The Bluetooth device must be disconnected before changing this setting.
Continuous Search	This option is Disabled (unchecked) by default. When enabled, the Bluetooth connection never stops searching for a device it has paired with when the connection is broken (such as the paired device entering Suspend mode, going out of range or being turned off). When disabled, after being enabled, the MX9 stops searching after 30 minutes. This option draws power from the Main Battery.
Filtered Mode	This option is Enabled (checked) by default. Determines whether the Bluetooth client discovers and displays all serial Bluetooth devices in the vicinity (Filtered Mode is disabled/unchecked) or the discovery result displays Bluetooth scanners and printers only (Filtered Mode is enabled/checked). When Filtered Mode is disabled, the MX9 can pair with up to four Bluetooth devices, with a limit of one Bluetooth scanner, one Bluetooth printer, one PAN, and one DUN connected at the same time. More than one HID device can be connected but only one Bluetooth mouse and one Bluetooth keyboard. A Registry/Restart is required every time Filtered Mode is toggled on and off.
Printer Port - COM9	This option is Disabled (unchecked) by default. This option assigns Bluetooth printer connection to COM9 instead of COM19. To enable this option, Filtered Mode must be enabled/checked.
Logging	This option is Disabled (unchecked) by default. When logging is enabled, the MX9 creates <i>bt_log.txt</i> and stores it in the /System folder. Bluetooth activity logging is added to the text file as activity progresses. A <i>bt_log_bak.txt</i> file contains the data stored by <i>bt_log.txt</i> prior to reboot. During a reboot process, the MX9 renames <i>bt_log.txt</i> to <i>bt_log_bak.txt</i> . If a file already exists with that name, the existing file is deleted, the new <i>bt_log_bak.txt</i> file is added and a new <i>bt_log.txt</i> is created.
Computer Friendly Name	This option is pre-loaded with the [System Name]. The name, or identifier, entered in this space by the System Administrator is used exclusively by Bluetooth devices and during Bluetooth communication.

---

## Reconnect



*Note: These options can still be checked or unchecked whether Bluetooth connection is enabled or disabled.*

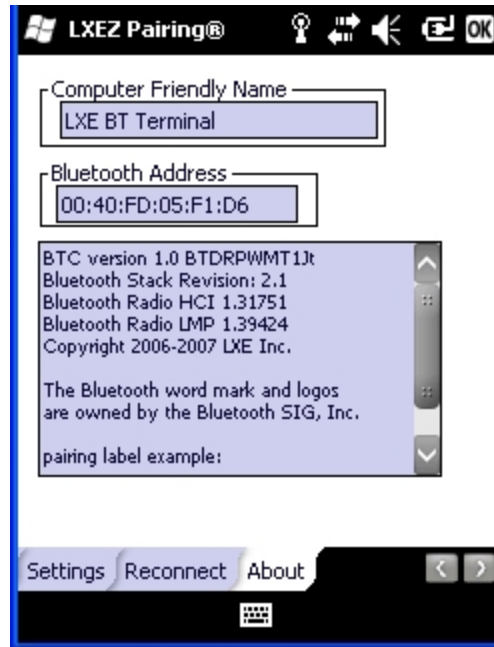
## Options

Option	Information
Report when connection lost	<p>This option is Enabled by default.</p> <p>There may be an audio or visual signal when a connection between a paired, active device is lost.</p> <p>A visual signal may be a dialog box placed on the display notifying the user the connection between one (or all) of the paired Bluetooth devices has stopped. Tap the ok button to remove the dialog box from the screen.</p>
Report when reconnected	<p>This option is Disabled by default.</p> <p>There may be an audio or visual signal when a connection between a paired, active device is made.</p> <p>A visual signal may be a dialog box placed on the display notifying the user the connection between one (or all) of the paired Bluetooth devices has resumed. Tap the ok button to remove the dialog box from the screen.</p>
Report failure to reconnect	<p>This option is Enabled by default.</p> <p>The default time delay is 30 minutes. This value cannot be changed by the user.</p> <p>There may be an audio or visual signal when a connection between a paired, active device fails to re-connect. A visual signal may be a dialog box placed on the display notifying the user the connection between one (or all) of the previously paired Bluetooth devices has failed.</p> <p>Tap the X button or ok button to close the dialog box.</p> <p>Possible reasons for failure to reconnect: Timeout expired without reconnecting; attempted to pair with a device that is currently paired with another device; attempted to pair with a known device that moved out of range or was turned off; attempted to pair with a known device but the reason why reconnect failed is unknown.</p>
Clear Pairing Table on Boot	<p>This option is Disabled by default.</p> <p>When enabled (checked), all previous paired information is deleted upon any reboot sequence and no devices are reconnected.</p> <p>When enabled (checked) "Auto Reconnect on Boot" is automatically disabled (dimmed).</p>
Auto Reconnect on Boot	<p>This option is Enabled by default. All previously paired devices are reconnected upon any reboot sequence.</p> <p>When disabled (unchecked), no devices are reconnected upon any reboot sequence.</p>
Auto Reconnect	<p>This option is Enabled (checked) by default. This option controls the overall mobile Bluetooth device reconnect behavior.</p> <p>When Auto Reconnect is disabled (unchecked), <i>Auto Reconnect on Boot</i> is automatically disabled and dimmed.</p> <p>When Auto Reconnect is disabled (unchecked), no devices are reconnected in any situation. The status of <i>Auto Reconnect on Boot</i> is ignored and no devices are reconnected on boot. The status of <i>Clear Pairing Table on Boot</i> controls whether the pairing table is populated on boot.</p> <p>When Auto Reconnect is enabled (checked) and <i>Auto Reconnect on Boot</i> is disabled (unchecked), devices are not reconnected on boot, but are reconnected in other situations (example: return from out-of-range).</p> <p>When Auto Reconnect is enabled (checked) and <i>Clear Pairing Table on Boot</i> is enabled (checked), devices are not reconnected on boot, but are reconnected in other situations (example: return from out-of-range). The pairing table is cleared on boot. The status of <i>Auto Reconnect on Boot</i> is ignored and the option is automatically disabled (unchecked) and dimmed.</p>



---

## About



This panel lists the assigned Computer Friendly Name (that other devices may discover during their Discovery and Query process), the Bluetooth MAC address, and software version levels. The data cannot be edited by the user.

## Easy Pairing and Auto-Reconnect

The Bluetooth module can establish relationships with new devices after the user taps the Discover button. It can auto-reconnect to devices previously known but which have gone out of range and then returned within range.

*Note: Configuration elements are persistent and stored in the registry.*

Setup the Bluetooth module to establish how the user is notified by easy pairing and auto-reconnect events.



AppLock, if installed, does not stop the end-user from using the Bluetooth application, nor does it stop other Bluetooth-enabled devices from pairing with the MX9 while AppLock is in control.

---

## Bluetooth Indicators

The Bluetooth icon state and Bluetooth LED state change as Bluetooth devices are discovered, paired, connected and disconnected.

There may be audible or visual signals as paired devices re-connect with the MX9.

Taskbar Icon	Legend
	MX9 is connected to one or more of the targeted Bluetooth device(s).
	MX9 is not connected to any Bluetooth device. MX9 is ready to connect with any Bluetooth device. MX9 is out of range of all paired Bluetooth device(s). Connection is inactive.

*Note: When an active paired device enters Suspend Mode, is turned Off or leaves the MX9 Bluetooth scan range, the Bluetooth connection between the paired device and the MX9 is lost. There may be audible or visual signals as paired devices disconnect from the MX9.*

Bluetooth LED	Legend
Blue, blinking slowly	Bluetooth is active but not connected to a device.
Blue, blinking medium	Bluetooth is paired and connected to a device.
Blue, blinking fast	Bluetooth is discovering other Bluetooth devices.
Off	Bluetooth hardware has been turned off or does not exist in the MX9.

AppLock, if installed, does not stop the end-user from using Bluetooth applications, nor does it stop authorized Bluetooth-enabled devices from pairing with the MX9 while AppLock is in control.

---

## Bluetooth Bar Code Reader Setup

Please refer to the Bluetooth scanner manufacturer's User Guide; it may be available on the manufacturer's web site. Contact [technical assistance](#) for Bluetooth product assistance.

### Introduction

Honeywell supports several different types of bar code readers. This section describes the interaction and setup for a mobile Bluetooth laser scanner or laser imager connected to the MX9 using Bluetooth functions.

### Prerequisites

- The MX9 must have the Bluetooth hardware and software installed. An operating system upgrade may be required. Contact [technical assistance](#) for details.
- If the MX9 has a Bluetooth address identifier bar code label affixed, then Bluetooth hardware and software are installed.
- The mobile Bluetooth laser scanner / laser imager battery is fully charged.
- The MX9 main battery is fully charged. Alternatively, the MX9 may be cabled to AC/DC power.
- **Important:** *The bar code numbering examples in this segment are not real and should not be created or scanned with a Bluetooth scanner.*
- To open the LXEZ Pairing program, tap **Start > Settings > System > Bluetooth** or tap the Bluetooth icon at the bottom of the Today panel.



Locate the bar code label, similar to the sample shown above, attached to the MX9. The label is the Bluetooth address identifier for the MX9.

The mobile Bluetooth scanner / imager requires this information before discovering, pairing, connecting or disconnecting can occur.

**Note:** *The MX9 Bluetooth address identifier label should be protected from damage (rips, tears, spills, soiling, erasure, etc.) at all times. It may be required when pairing, connecting, and disconnecting new Bluetooth bar code readers.*

---

## **MX9 with Label**

If the MX9 has a [Bluetooth address bar code label](#) attached, follow these steps:

1. Scan the Bluetooth address bar code label, attached to the MX9, with the Bluetooth mobile scanner.
2. If this is the first time the Bluetooth scanner has scanned the MX9 Bluetooth label, the devices are paired. See section titled "[Bluetooth Beep and LED Indications](#)". If the devices do not pair successfully, go to the next step.
3. Open the LXEZ Pairing panel (Start > Settings > System > Bluetooth).
4. Tap Discover. Locate the Bluetooth scanner in the Discovery panel.
5. Double-tap the stylus on the Bluetooth scanner. The right-mouse-click menu appears.
6. Select Pair as Scanner to pair the MX9 with the Bluetooth mobile scanner.

The devices are paired. The Bluetooth bar code reader responds with a series of beeps and an LED flashes.

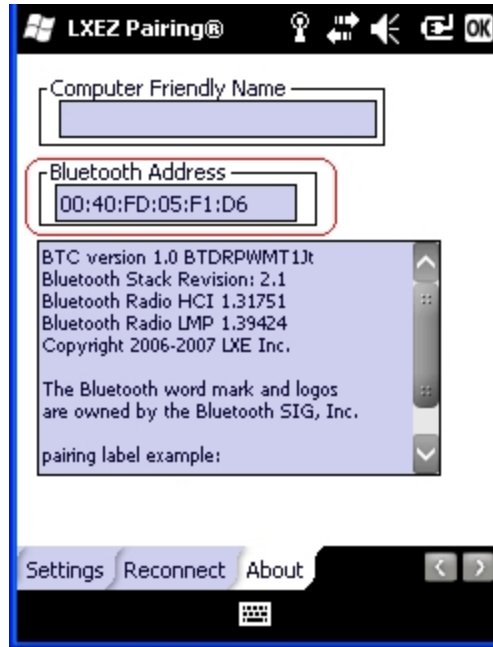
*Note: After scanning the MX9 Bluetooth label, if there is no beep and no LED flash from the Bluetooth device, the devices are currently paired.*

---

## MX9 without Label

If the MX9 [Bluetooth address bar code label](#) does not exist, follow these steps to create a unique Bluetooth address bar code for the MX9:

First, locate the MX9 Bluetooth address by tapping Start > Settings > System > Bluetooth > About tab.



Next, [create](#)<sup>1</sup> a Bluetooth address bar code label for the MX9.

The format for the bar code label is as follows:

- Bar code type must be Code 128.
- FNC3 character followed by string Uppercase L, lowercase n, lowercase k, uppercase B and then the Bluetooth address (12 hex digits, no colons). For example, LnkB0400fd002031.

Create and print the label.

Scan the MX9 Bluetooth address bar code label with the Bluetooth bar code reader.

The devices are paired. The Bluetooth bar code reader responds with a series of beeps and LED flashes.

*Note: After scanning the MX9 Bluetooth label, if there is no beep and no LED flash from the Bluetooth device, the devices are currently paired.*

---

<sup>1</sup>Free bar code creation software is available for download on the World Wide Web. Search using the keywords *bar code create*.

---

## Bluetooth Reader Beep and LED Indications

Beep Type from Bluetooth Device	Behavior
Acknowledge label	1 beep
Label rejected	2 beeps at low frequency
Transmission error	Beep will sound high-low-high-low
Link successful	Beep will sound low-medium-high
Link unsuccessful	Beep will sound high-low-high-low

LED on Bluetooth Device	Behavior
Yellow LED blinks at 2 Hz	Linking in progress
Off	Disconnected or unlinked
Yellow LED blinks at 50 Hz	Bluetooth transmission in progress
Yellow LED blinks at the same rate as the paging beep (1 Hz)	Paging
Green LED blinks once a second	Disabled indication

Upon startup, if the remote scanner sounds a long tone, this means the scanner has not passed its automatic Selftest and has entered isolation mode. If the scanner is reset, the sequence is repeated. Contact [technical assistance](#) for help.

## Bluetooth Printer Setup

The Bluetooth managed device should be [as close as possible](#)<sup>1</sup>, in direct line of sight, with the MX9 during the pairing process.

1. Open the LXEZ Pairing Panel (Start > Settings > System > Bluetooth).
2. Tap Discover. Locate the Bluetooth printer in the discovery panel.
3. Tap and hold the stylus (or double-tap) on the Bluetooth printer until the right-mouse-click menu appears.
4. Select Pair as Printer to pair the MX9 with the Bluetooth managed printer.

The devices are paired. The Bluetooth managed printer may respond with a series of beeps or LED flashes.

Please refer to the Bluetooth managed printer manufacturer's User Guide; it may be available on the manufacturer's web site. Contact [technical assistance](#) for Bluetooth product help.

*Note: If there is no beep or no LED flash from the Bluetooth managed printer, the MX9 and the printer are currently paired.*

---

<sup>1</sup>No more than 32.80 feet (10 meters) line of sight in a quiet environment.

---

## Certificates

### Start > Settings > System > Certificates

Manage digital certificates used for secure communication.

**View** – displays details of the certificate. Personal certificates may be extended from the view screen.

**Delete** – removes the certificate from the device. Delete is not available if the certificate was installed by a device administrator.

Certificates are divided into three types: Personal, Intermediate and Root.

See [Certificates](#) in the Wireless Network Configuration section for detailed instruction on generating certificates.

### *Personal*



This panel lists any installed Personal certificates. Personal certificates are used to identify the user of the device.

To install a User certificate:

1. Copy the .pfx or .p12 file to a folder on the MX9.
2. Use File Explorer to browse to the location of the file and open the file by tapping the file name.
3. Type in the password to unlock the certificate and tap Done.

The new certificate is copied to the Personal certificate store on the MX9.

---

## Intermediate



This panel lists any installed Intermediate certificates. Intermediate certificates are used to help authenticate certificates received from other hosts.

To install an Intermediate certificate:

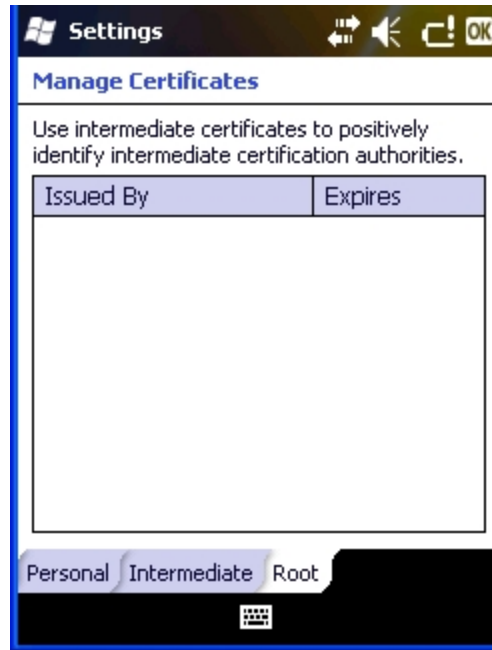
1. Copy a DER-encoded .cer file, a base64-encoded .cer file or a .pfx file to a folder on the MX9.
2. Use File Explorer to browse to the location of the file and open the file by tapping the file name.

The new certificate is copied to Intermediate certificate store on the MX9.



---

## Root



This panel lists any installed Root certificates. Root certificates are used to authenticate certificates received from other hosts. To install a Root certificate:

1. Copy a DER-encoded .cer file, a base64-encoded .cer file or a .pfx file to a folder on the MX9.
2. Use File Explorer to browse to the location of the file and open the file by tapping the file name.

The new certificate is copied to Root certificate store on the MX9.



*Note: Tap Start > Help for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the X icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.*

---

## Encryption

### Start > Settings > System > Encryption

This panel enables or disables encryption of data files on removable storage cards. The default is Disabled. There may be a delay while files on removable storage cards are encrypted.



**Note:** Tap Start > Help for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the X icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.

---

## External GPS

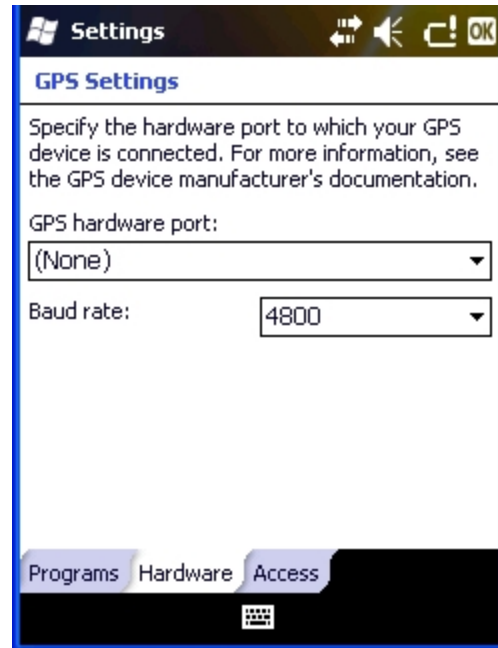
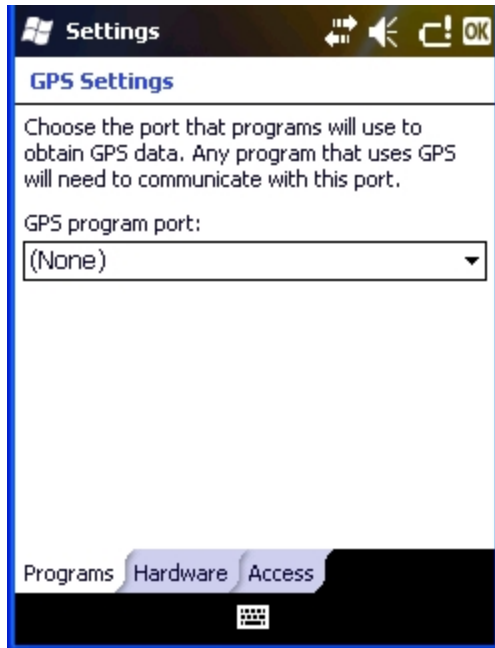
Start > Settings > System > External GPS

### Factory Default Settings

GPS Program Port	None
GPS Hardware Port	None
Baud Rate	4800
Access	Automatic

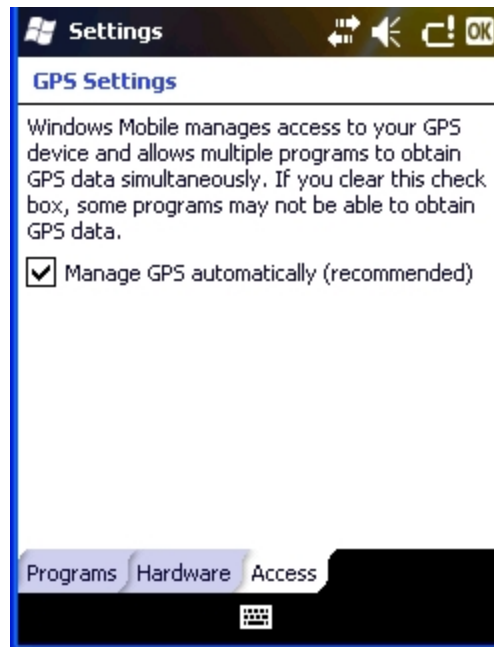
This panel configures serial GPS access over hardware serial ports using the Microsoft GPS manager. The port used, baud rate and port sharing must be specified.

In order to use the configuration items on these panels, applications must use the Microsoft GPS API interface rather than reading the serial port directly. If the application reads the serial port directly, these settings are not necessary.



---

## Access



**Note:** Tap *Start > Help* for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the *X* icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.

---

## License Manager

### Start > Settings > System > License Manager

Use this option to view software license registration details, and service contract length for purchased software installed on the MX9.

*Note:* Following image is a sample screen.

Your License Manager panel may show more tabs, e.g., RFTerm, depending on the number of software applications running on the MX9 that require a license. Contact [technical assistance](#) for software updates and releases as they become available.



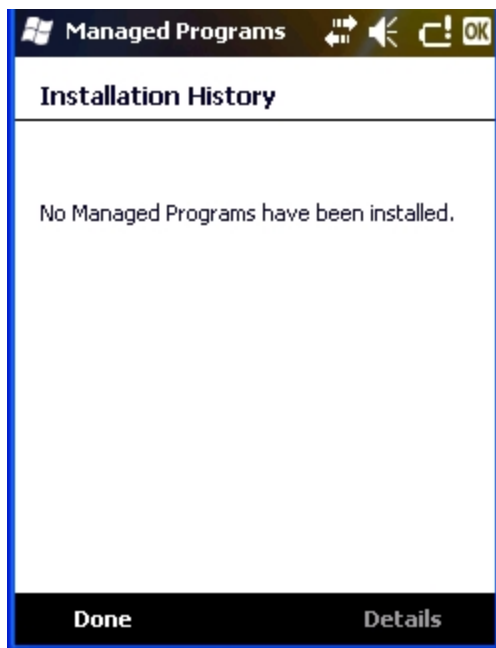
Information on this panel cannot be edited by the user.

---

## Managed Programs

**Start > Settings > System > Managed Programs**

This panel displays the install history for .NET managed programs. The list is read only.



See Also: ["Remove Programs"](#)



**Note:** Tap *Start > Help* for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the *X* icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.

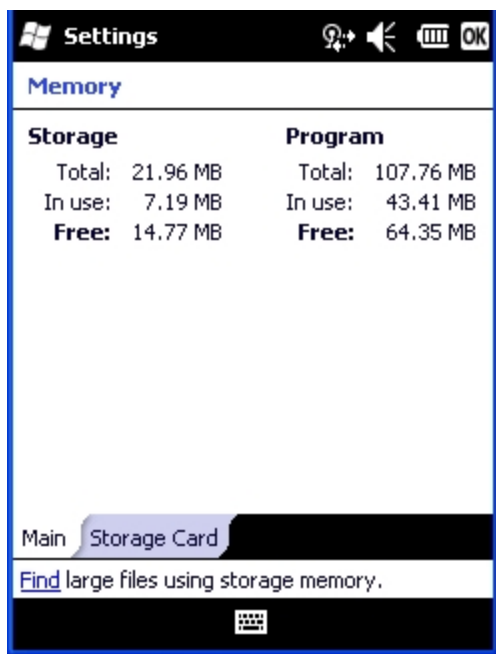
---

## Memory

Start > Settings > System > Memory

These panels report the current state of virtual memory.

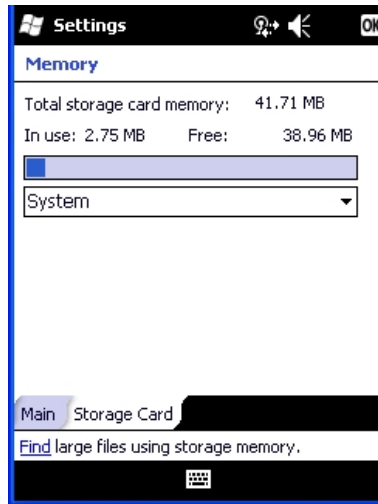
### Main



The split between Storage memory and Program memory is not adjustable.

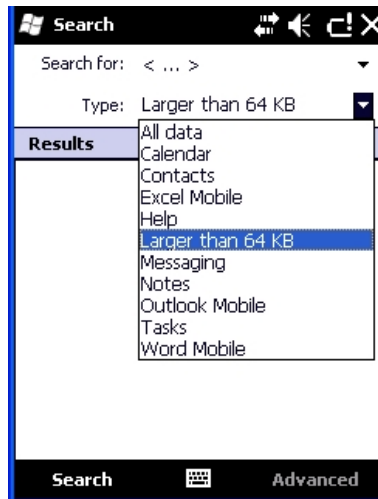
---

## Storage Card



The pop-up list shows all mounted storage, both fixed and removable.

The Find prompt at the bottom of the screen launches the Search utility.



**Note:** Tap Start > Help for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the X icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.



## Mixer

### Start > Settings > System > Mixer

The MX9 has a speaker located above the scan button. It is active when a headset is not connected to the device.

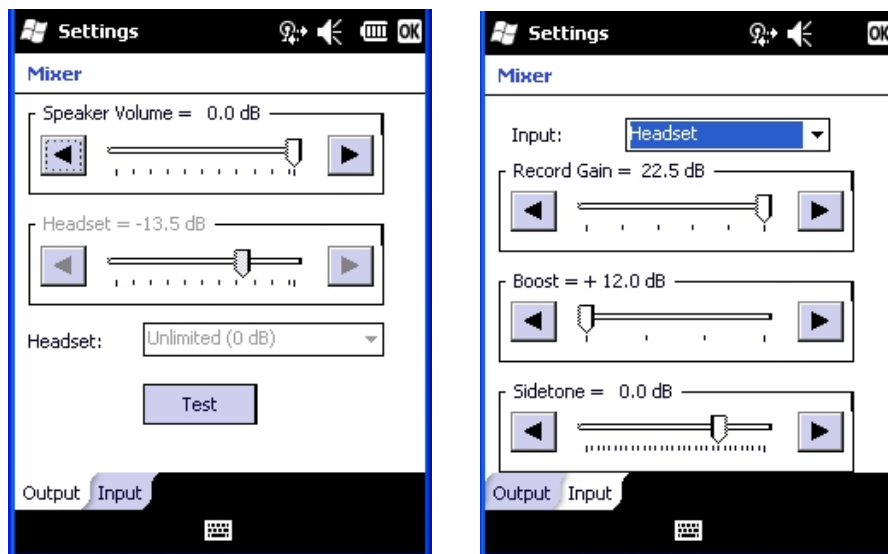
Use the settings on these panels to adjust the volume, record gain and sidetone for microphone input, speaker and speaker output.

Headsets can be enabled, disabled and selected using these panels.

### Factory Default Settings

Output	
Speaker Volume	0.0 dB
Headset Volume	13.5 dB
Headset	Unlimited (0 dB)
Input	
Input	Headset
Record Gain	22.5 dB
Boost	+ 12.0 dB
Sidetone	0.0 dB

### Mixer Panels



Tap and hold the sliders and move them either left or right, or tap the left and right arrows, to adjust decibel levels.

Tap the **Test** button on the Output panel to hear a changed setting.

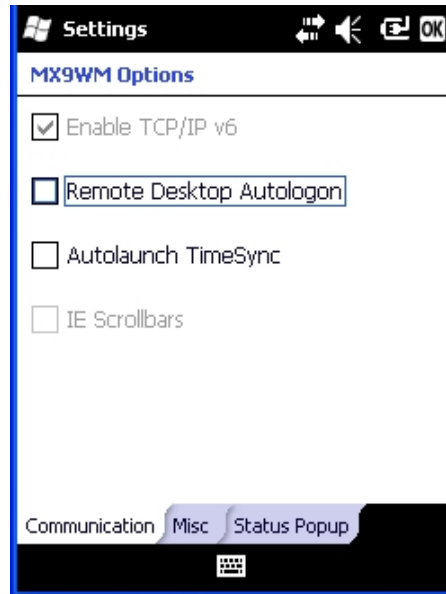
---

## MX9WM Options

### Start > Settings > System > MX9WM Options

Set MX9 specific device options. Options that cannot be edited by the user are dimmed. Contact [technical assistance](#) for enhancements and updates as they become available.

### *Communication*



By default, **TCP/IP version 6** is enabled and dimmed on the MX9.

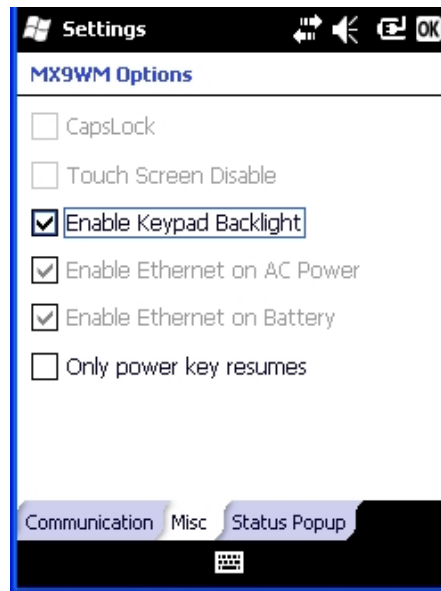
By default, the **Remote Desktop Autologin** is disabled. Check this checkbox to enable Remote Desktop Autologon.

**Autolaunch TimeSync** enables time synchronization when the MX9 boots. Check this checkbox to enable TimeSync to autolaunch.

**IE Scrollbars** is disabled and dimmed.

---

## Misc.



**CapsLock** and **Touch Screen Disable** are disabled and dimmed.

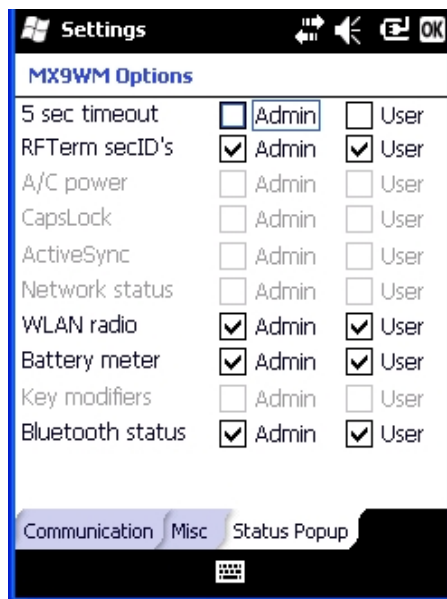
**Enable Keypad Backlight** is enabled by default. Uncheck this checkbox to disable the keypad backlight.

**Enable Ethernet on AC Power** and **Battery** are enabled and dimmed.

**Only power key resumes** is disabled by default. Check this checkbox to make the power key the only event to wake up from Suspend (wake on touch or key press are disabled).

---

## Status Popup



When the Status popup window is enabled, and displayed, it is placed on top of the window in focus and hides any data beneath it.

The Status Popup window is closed by pressing the assigned Status User or Status Admin key sequence.

*Note: Use a Diamond key for the assigned key sequence to use when opening and closing the popup. If a Function key is used, that Function key is not available to applications that generally use Function keys such as RFTerm.*

Using the Buttons settings panel ([Start > Settings > Personal > Buttons > Program Buttons](#)), the System Administrator must first assign a Status User key for the end-user when they want to toggle the Status Popup Window on or off. Select the desired key and assign that key to StatPopup.

Similarly the System Administrator must also assign a Status Admin key to perform the same function for the Admin popup. Select the desired key and assign that key to Admin StatPop.

Status popup window display options (taskbar icons) are assigned on the Status Popup tab. E.g., WLAN radio, Battery meter, Bluetooth status, RFTerm [secID](#)<sup>1</sup>'s, etc.

The **default** is for the User and Admin status popup windows to show all status information. The 5-second timeout to remove the status popup from the display is disabled by default for the User and Admin status popup windows.

---

<sup>1</sup>Secondary ID

---

## Peripherals

### Start > Settings > System > Peripherals

This panel is used to enable and disable the touch screen heater and scan window heater, flashlight time delay to Off, and GPS On/Off.

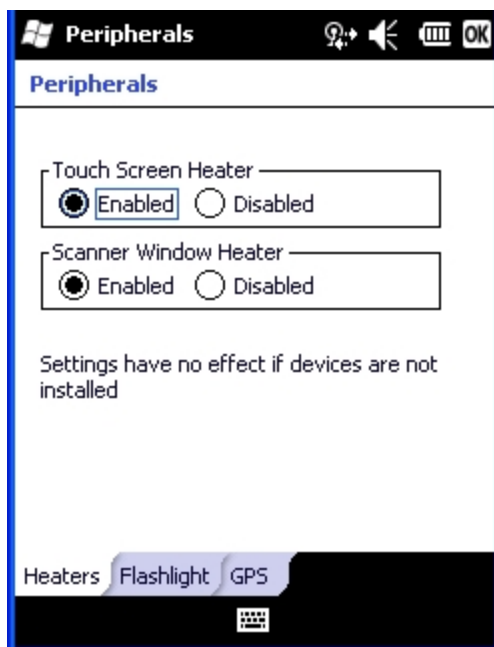
Settings have no effect if module is not installed.

#### Factory Default Settings

Heaters	
Touch screen heater	Enabled
Scan window heater	Enabled
Flashlight	
Turn flashlight off after	1 minute
GPS	
GPS Power	On when installed / Off when not installed

### Heaters

*Note: Settings have no effect if the touch screen / scan window heaters are not installed.*

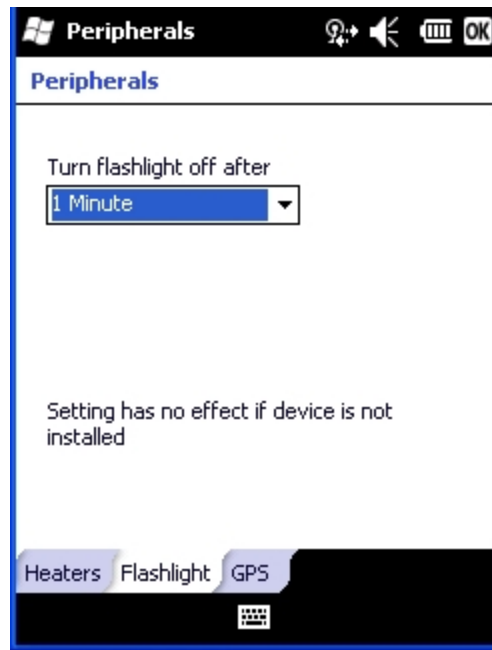


Click the radio button to enable or disable the heaters.

---

## Flashlight

*Note: Setting has no effect if the flashlight is not installed.*



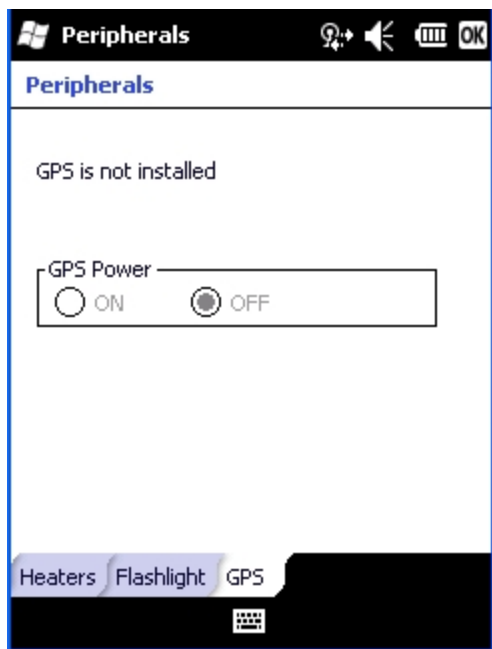
Select an option to set the timeout for the flashlight. Options are:

- 1 minute
- 2 minutes
- 3 minutes

---

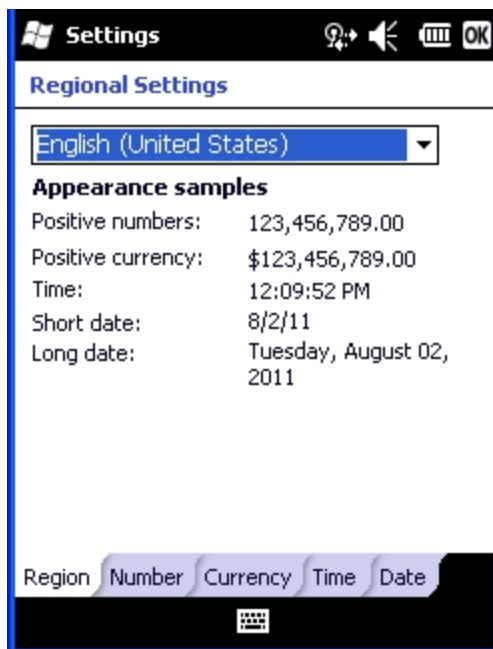
## GPS

GPS presence is displayed on the GPS panel. Power can be toggled on or off only when a GPS is installed. The default setting is Off.



## Regional Settings

Start > Settings > System > Regional Settings



Settings

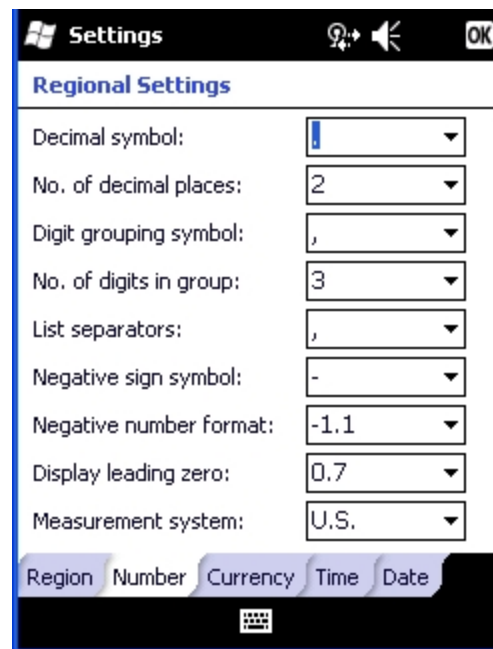
Regional Settings

English (United States)

**Appearance samples**

Positive numbers: 123,456,789.00  
Positive currency: \$123,456,789.00  
Time: 12:09:52 PM  
Short date: 8/2/11  
Long date: Tuesday, August 02, 2011

Region Number Currency Time Date

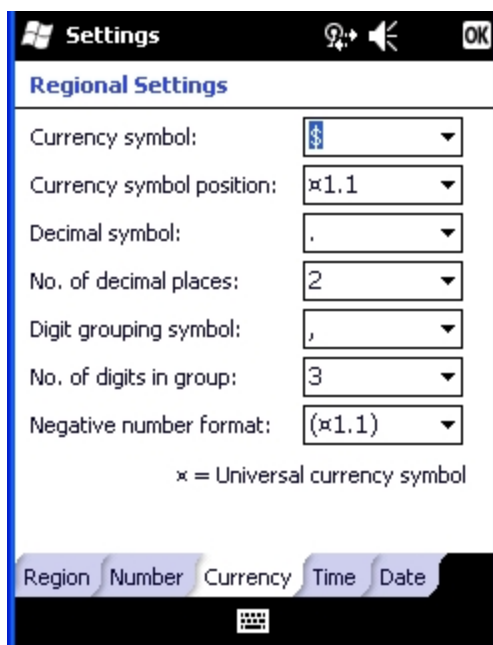


Settings

Regional Settings

Decimal symbol: .  
No. of decimal places: 2  
Digit grouping symbol: ,  
No. of digits in group: 3  
List separators: ,  
Negative sign symbol: -  
Negative number format: -1.1  
Display leading zero: 0.7  
Measurement system: U.S.

Region Number Currency Time Date

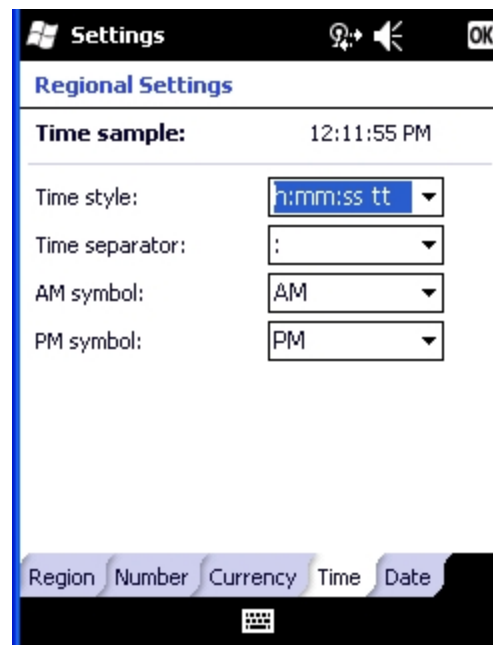


Settings

Regional Settings

Currency symbol: \$  
Currency symbol position: ¤1.1  
Decimal symbol: .  
No. of decimal places: 2  
Digit grouping symbol: ,  
No. of digits in group: 3  
Negative number format: (¤1.1)  
¤ = Universal currency symbol

Region Number Currency Time Date



Settings

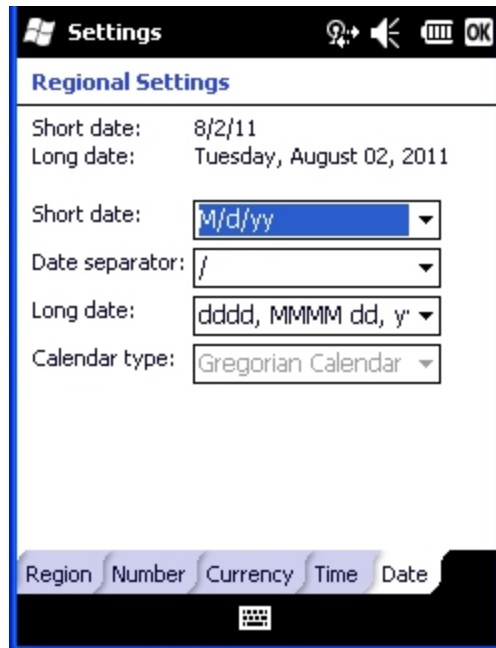
Regional Settings

**Time sample:** 12:11:55 PM

Time style: h:mm:ss tt  
Time separator: :  
AM symbol: AM  
PM symbol: PM

Region Number Currency Time Date





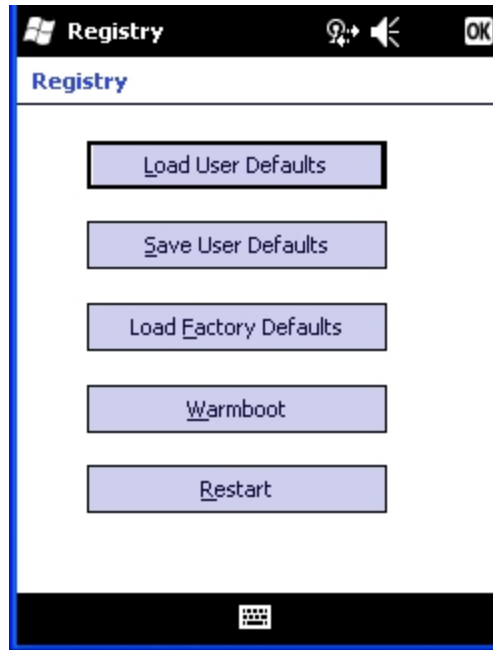
**Note:** Tap *Start > Help* for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the *X* icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.

---

## Registry

Start > Settings > System > Registry

Choose an MX9 software reload scheme.



Tab	Contents
Load User Defaults	When clicked, a standard load file dialog is opened, to allow the user to pick a Registry Save (.RSG) file. The applet then copies the specified User registry file to the Active registry. The user is asked to verify a reboot, and then the applet does a warmboot to activate the new registry. Load User Defaults takes 20 seconds from SD card, or 10 seconds from internal flash.
Save User Defaults	When clicked, a standard Save File dialog is opened, to allow the user to name the Registry Save (.RSG) file. The applet then copies the Active registry to the specified User registry file. Save User Defaults takes 30 seconds to save to SD card, or 10 seconds to save to internal flash.
Load Factory Defaults	The applet copies the Factory Default registry from the OS to the Active registry (by deleting the current registry). The user is asked to verify a reboot, and then the applet does a restart to activate the factory default registry. If a user password has been set, the applet warns the user that the password will be erased, and asks them to enter it before the reboot is allowed.
Warmboot	When clicked, the OS does a registry flush (Active registry saved to Flash registry hive), and then a warmboot.
Restart	When clicked, the OS does a registry flush, and then a restart.

---

## Remove Programs

### Start > Settings > System > Remove Programs

This panel is used to uninstall programs. The Remove Program listing is for all programs installed via ActiveSync or via a CAB file.



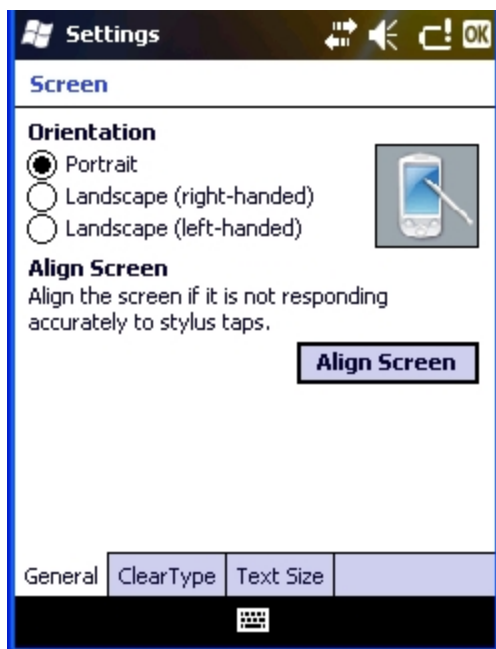
**Note:** Tap Start > Help for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the X icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.

---

## Screen

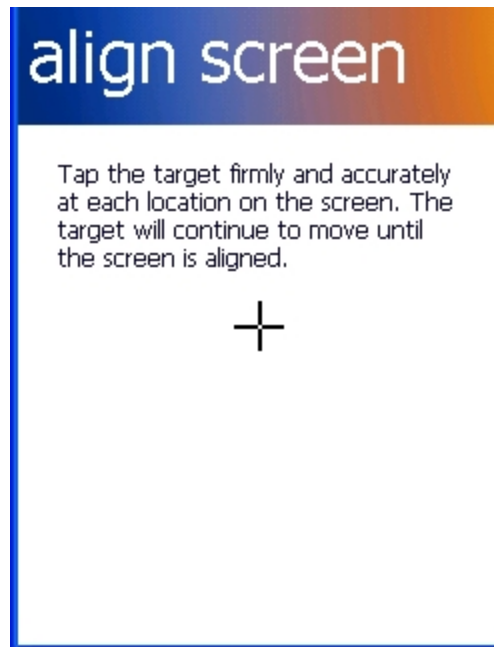
Start > Settings > System > Screen

### General



---

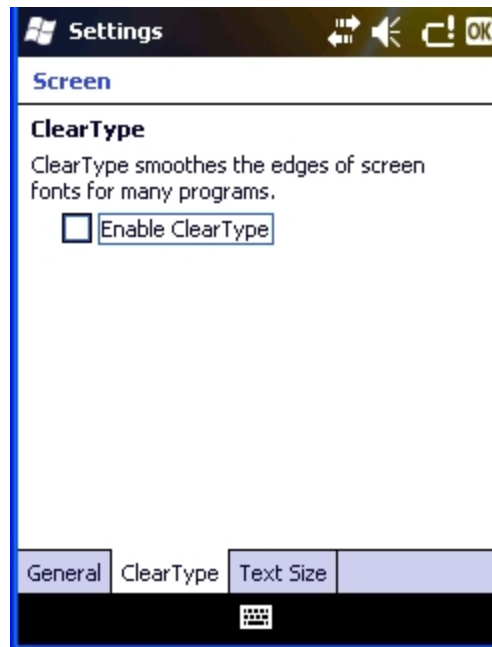
## ***Align Screen***



Tap the Align Screen button. The align screen opens and displays a large cross-hair in the middle of the screen. Tap the middle of the cross-hair as it moves around the screen. When the process is complete, the General screen is displayed. Tap ok and the changes are saved. The new alignment is in effect immediately.

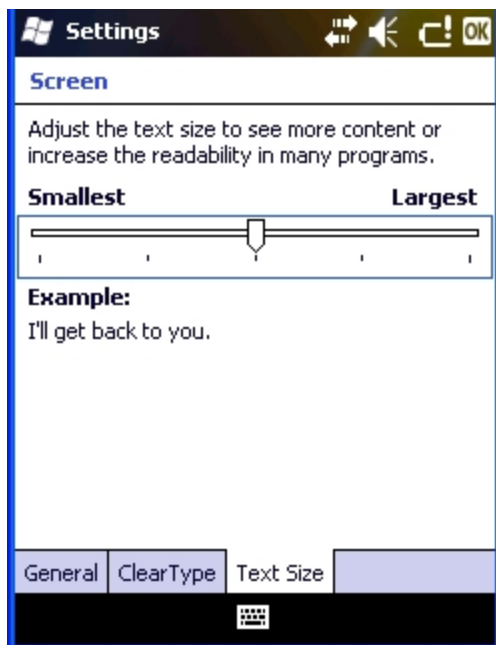
---

## Clear Type



---

## Text Size



Tap the marker and slide it across the bar. As the marker moves, the example text increases or decreases. Tap ok and the change is saved. The new text size is in effect immediately.



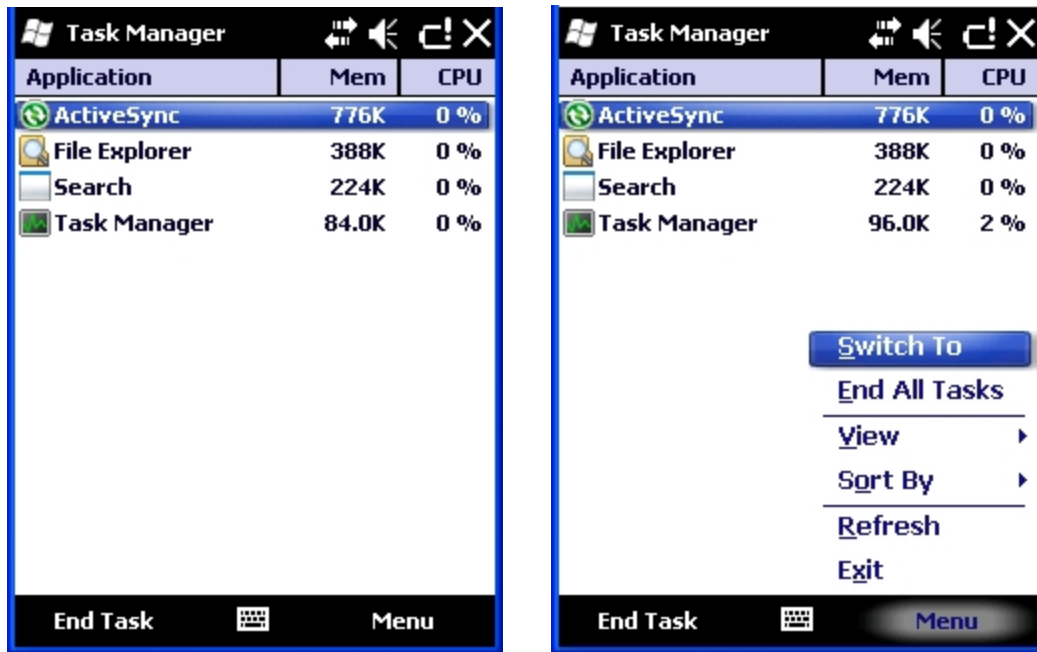
**Note:** Tap Start > Help for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the X icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.

---

## Task Manager

**Start > Settings > System > Task Manager**

This panel displays all running tasks as well as the memory and CPU bandwidth being used by each task.



Tapping on the column headings at the top of the screen sorts the tasks by the contents of that column. Tapping the same heading a second time reverses the sort order of that column.

Highlight an application then tap End Task. More options are available in the Task Manager Menu.

Highlighting then right-clicking on an application displays a popup menu with the following choices:

- Switch To – Switch to the highlighted task. Double-clicking on the task name also performs this function.
- End Task – End the selected task only.
- End All Tasks – End all tasks.

The list is reset by cold boot (or restart).

*Note: Any Windows Mobile program that has been run, even if the program has been exited, remains in memory ready to run again. If memory runs out, the programs are released from memory. However, to avoid out of memory operational problems, it is best to manually terminate unwanted tasks using this option.*



*Note: Tap Start > Help for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the X icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.*



---

## Wi-Fi

### Start > Settings > System > Wi-Fi

Use this option to set parameters and manage profiles for the wireless client in your MX9.

See [Summit Client Utility](#) (SCU) for more information.

## WAN

### Start > Settings > System > WAN

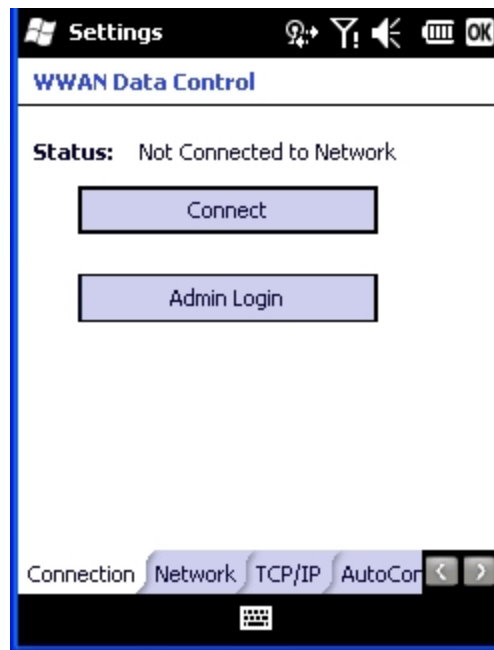
These panels can be used to set the parameters for the wireless Wide Area Network (WAN) on the MX9. The WAN is a form of wireless network that utilizes a cellular network instead of the spread spectrum network most used by wireless Local Area Networks (LAN).

#### Factory Default Settings

Connection tab	
Status	Not Connected
Connect button	Dimmed
Admin Login button	Enabled
Network tab	
Phone, Username, Password, APN	Blank
TCP/IP tab	
DHCP	Enabled, dimmed
DNS	Enabled, dimmed
Addresses	Pre-populated, dimmed
Autoconnect tab	
Automatically connect - turned On	Disabled, dimmed
Automatically reconnect	Enabled, dimmed
Admin tab	
Admin Factory Default Password	LXEWWAN
Enable Radio button	Dimmed
PIN (Personal Identification Number)	Enabled, Blank
PUK (Personal Unblocking Key)	Disabled, Dimmed

---

## Initial Setup

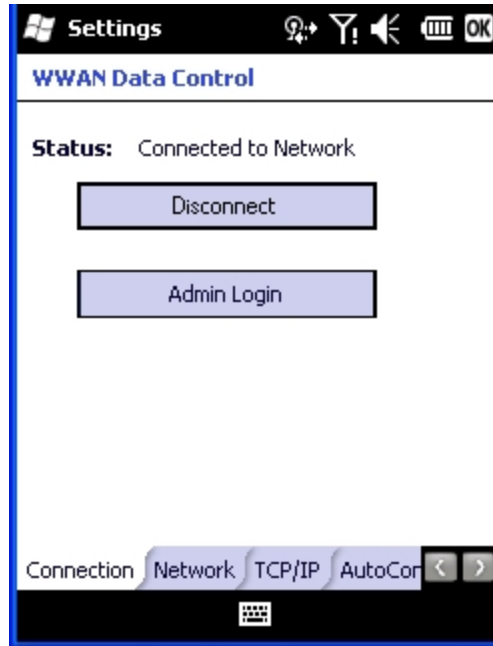


1. Enable the radio by clicking the **Admin Login** button on the **Connection** panel (the Connect button is dimmed).
2. Enter the password in the **Admin Password Entry** popup text box. The default case-sensitive password is LXEWAN. The Connect button is enabled.
3. Click the **Connect** button to begin a connection with a WWAN.
4. Fill in the appropriate fields displayed on the remaining tab panels of the WWAN control panel.

---

## Connection

The Connect button controls Connect/Disconnect operation and the caption of the button changes based on the connection status. The Connect button is dimmed when the radio is disabled or absent.



Click the Connect button to begin a connection with a WWAN. The button caption changes to Disconnect.

Clicking the **Admin Login** button displays the Admin Password Entry popup text box. After password entry is successful, the button caption changes to Admin Logout.

Entering an incorrect password causes an error message to be displayed. Enter the password in the popup text box and click the OK button.

**Admin Login** causes all dimmed buttons and configurable fields on Network, TCP/IP, Autoconnect, and Admin tabs to be enabled.

---

## Network

The screenshot shows a mobile device's settings interface. The title bar at the top says 'Settings' and includes icons for search, volume, and power. Below this is a blue header with the text 'WWAN Data Control'. The main content area is white and contains four text input fields, each preceded by a label: 'Phone', 'Username:', 'Password:', and 'APN:'. At the bottom of the screen is a dark blue bar with four tabs: 'Connection', 'Network', 'TCP/IP', and 'AutoCor'. The 'Network' tab is currently selected. To the right of the tabs are left and right arrow icons. A small keyboard icon is visible in the bottom right corner of the screen.

Enter the following information for the MX9:

- Phone (data access number)
- Username
- Password
- APN (Access Point Name)

*Note: Some fields may not require an entry. Contact your system administrator for the information needed.*

---

## TCP/IP

The TCP/IP tab contains a checkbox for indicating that TCP/IP parameters are to be obtained from the network DHCP server. This tab also contains fields for entering a static IP address and the addresses of the primary and secondary DNS servers, if DHCP and DNS are not used.

The screenshot shows the 'Settings' application with the 'WWAN Data Control' section. Under the 'TCP/IP' tab, there are two checkboxes: 'Use DHCP' and 'Use DNS', both of which are checked. Below these checkboxes are three input fields for IP addresses: 'IP Address' (showing 10.0.0.0), 'Primary DNS' (showing 0.0.0.0), and 'Secondary DNS' (showing 0.0.0.0). At the bottom of the screen, there are four tabs: 'Connection', 'Network', 'TCP/IP' (which is selected), and 'AutoCor'. There are also left and right arrow buttons next to the 'AutoCor' tab.

Click the checkbox to enable or disable DHCP and/or DNS. When the **Use DHCP** checkbox is enabled, the static IP address is disabled. When the **Use DNS** checkbox is enabled, the DNS address fields are disabled.

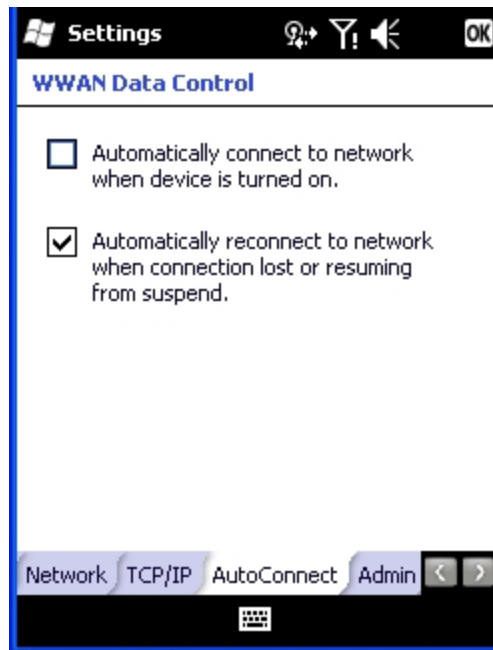
If DHCP and DNS are not used, enter the addresses for:

- Static IP Address
- Primary DNS server
- Secondary DNS server

---

## Autoconnect

The Autoconnect tab contains two checkboxes.



*Automatically connect to network when device is turned on.* When this checkbox is enabled (checked) the radio automatically connects to the network when the device is turned on (power button is pressed).

*Automatically reconnect to network when connection lost or resuming from suspend.* When this checkbox is enabled, the radio automatically attempts to reconnect to the network when it is resumed after being in the suspend state. Automatic reconnection applies whether Autoconnect is on or off.

---

## Admin

The Admin tab provides the ability to change the configuration password (see the [Connection panel](#)), enter Identification numbers for the SIM card, and provides a button to disable/enable the radio.

### Password

Enter a new password, then re-enter the same password. Click Submit to save the new password.

Click the Enable Radio button to turn the radio On or Off. When the radio is Off, the Admin password will need to be entered before the radio can be set to On.

### PIN (Personal Identification Number)

The PIN is a unique sequence of numbers stored on the SIM card.

If the radio is enabled and the SIM card requires a PIN, a connection will not occur until the PIN is entered successfully. After entering the PIN code, tap the Submit button. A message is displayed with either Success or the number of retries allowed before the SIM card PIN number entry is locked from further use.

If the radio is disabled, entering and submitting the PIN saves the PIN value on the MX9. The next time the radio is enabled and requires a PIN, the saved PIN will be sent and a PIN will not need to be entered again.

### PUK (Personal Unblocking Key)

The PUK is a unique sequence of alpha characters displayed on the SIM card. A default PUK code is not available. After entering the PUK code, tap the Submit button. A message is displayed with either Success or the number of retries allowed before the SIM card PUK entry is locked from further use.

### Enable/Disable Radio button

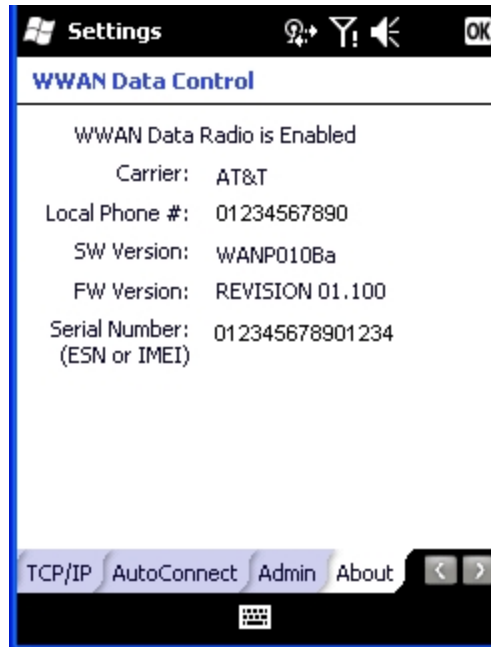
Click the Enable Radio button to turn the radio On or Off. If the radio is currently enabled, the button is labeled Disable Radio. If the radio is currently disabled, the button is labeled Enable Radio.

---

## About

The About tab displays information about the WWAN radio and the current network connection. The About tab displays the SW Version, FW Version and Serial Number of the radio if there is a WAN radio installed in the device. the Local Phone Number shows the subscriber's own number from the SIM card. The current radio enable/disable status is displayed.

The Carrier entry displays the carrier configuration of the SIM card. In addition to the data shown in the dialog box below, the SW Version is displayed as well. The version matches the corresponding version in the **Start > Settings > About Info > Versions** dialog box. All fields in the About dialog box are read-only. This information is available to all users without requiring the configuration password.



Some of the information shown on this panel can be edited, after logging in, on previous panels:

- [Enable Radio](#)
- [Carrier Name](#)
- [Local Phone Number](#)



---

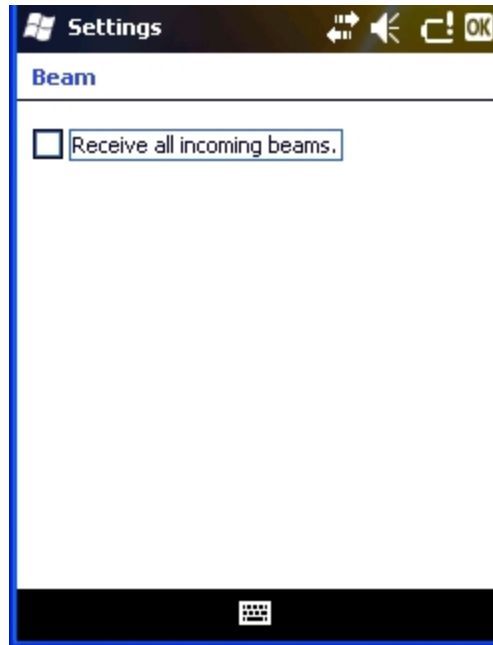
## Connections Panel

### Beam

Start > Settings > Connections > Beam

Enable or disable receiving [OBEX<sup>1</sup>](#) data beams, either by [IrDA<sup>2</sup>](#) or Bluetooth.

*Note:* The MX9 does not support beaming.



The default setting for Beam Settings is Disabled as the MX9 does not support beaming.

---

<sup>1</sup>oBject EXchange - a communications protocol used to exchange information between mobile devices. The device must support infrared communication.

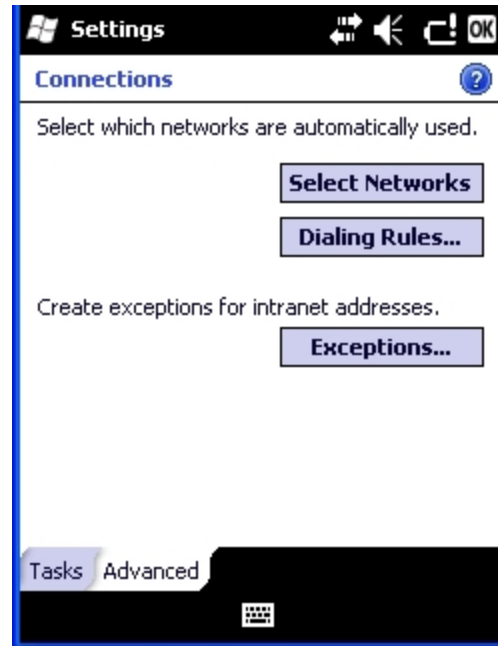
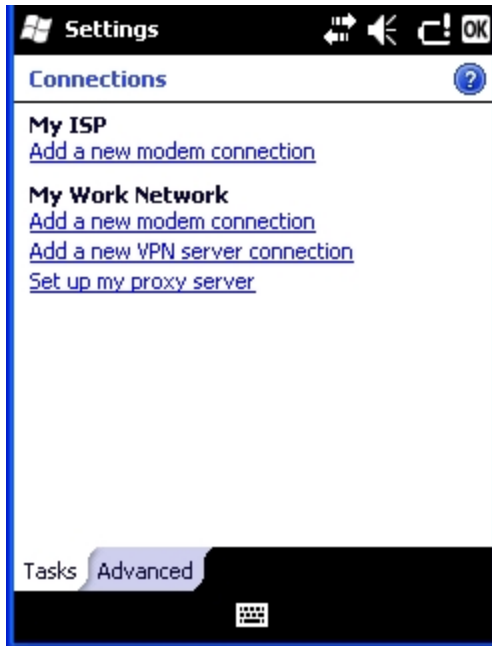
<sup>2</sup>Infrared Data Association. Also used as an abbreviation for the Infrared (IR) port on a mobile device.

---

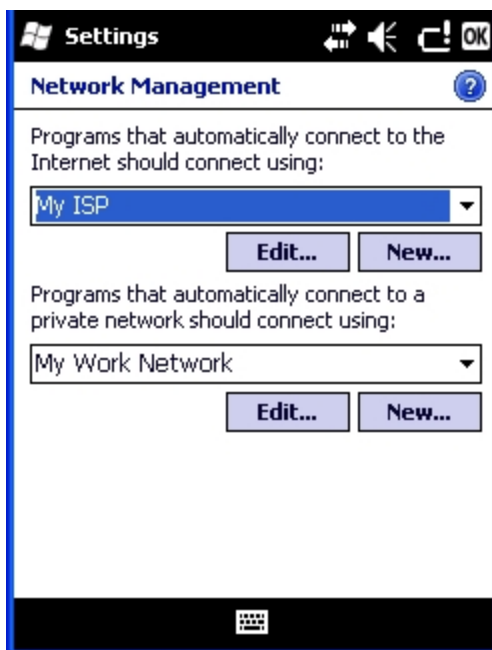
## Connections

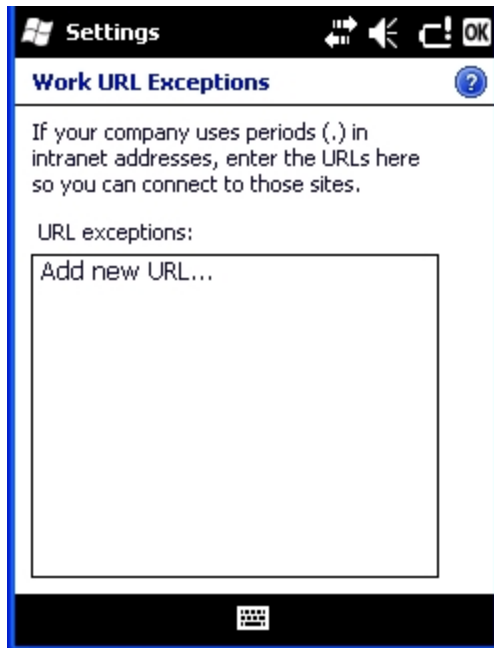
Start > Settings > Connections > Connections

Configure connections to a host PC.



## Advanced Panel Options





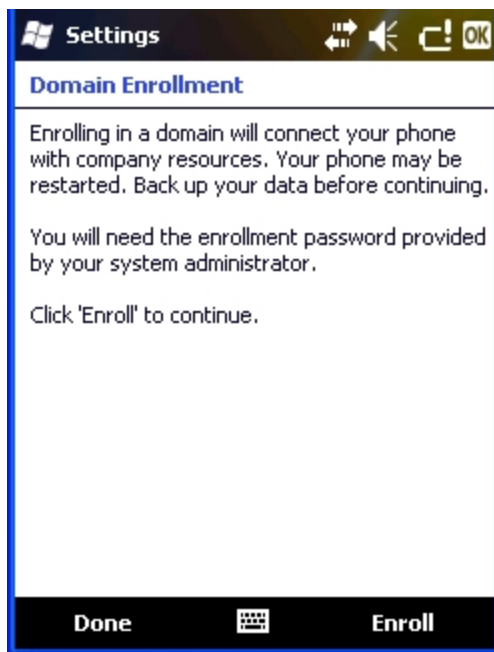
**Note:** Tap *Start > Help* for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the *X* icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.

---

## Domain Enroll

**Start > Settings > Connections > Domain Enroll**

Enroll in Active Directory.



To begin enrollment, tap Enroll in the Status bar. Please contact your system administrator for the applicable information to complete the screens.



**Note:** Tap Start > Help for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the X icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.

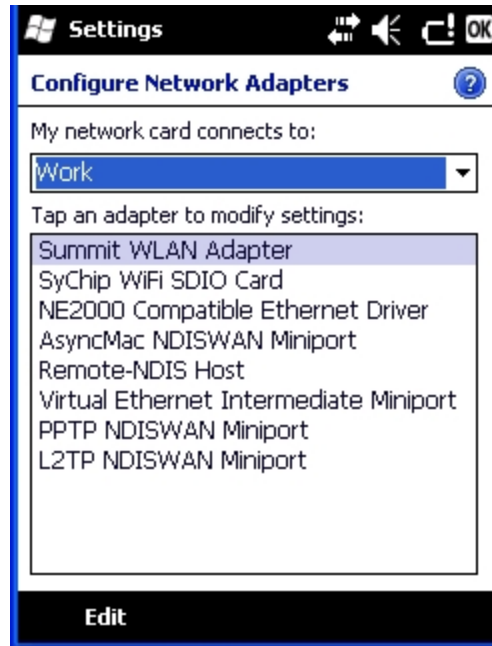
---

## Network Cards

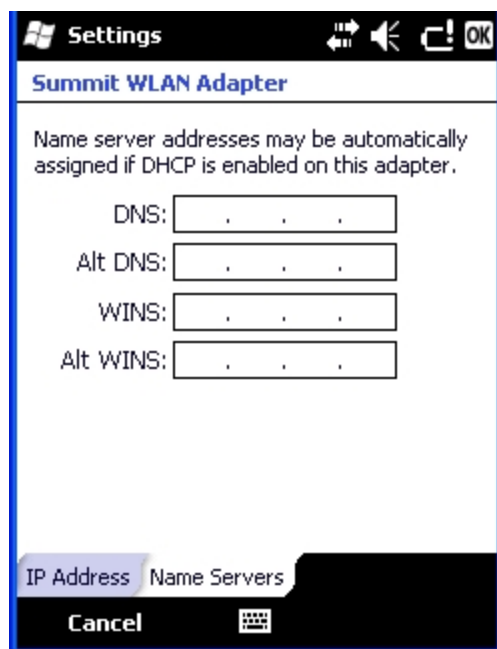
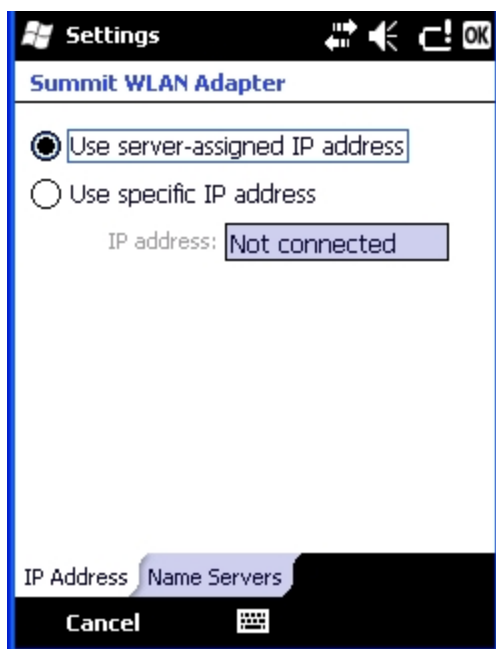
### Start > Settings > Connections > Network Cards

This panel displays a listing of network adapters. The list is based on drivers installed in the registry whether the adapter is actually supported by the hardware or not.

The Network Cards may not always be displayed. If this icon is not displayed, access Network Cards by selecting Start > Settings > Connections > [Wi-Fi](#) > Network Cards tab.



To configure a network card, tap on the adapter name and enter the IP address (or select Use server assigned IP address) and the name server addresses.



**Note:** Tap Start > Help for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the X icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.

# Wireless Manager

Start > Settings > Connections > Wireless Manager

Provides information on the currently connected wireless network(s). The following image is an *example* only.



If more than one wireless device is being managed, the All bar is displayed. Tap the All bar to disable/enable all wireless devices at once.

If a **Wi-Fi** (802.11) radio is present, the Wi-Fi bar indicates the status of the Wi-Fi connection, such as:

Off	The Wi-Fi radio is off
On	The Wi-Fi radio is on
Unavailable	No Wi-Fi networks are available
Available	Wi-Fi networks are available but not connected
Connecting	The radio is connecting to a Wi-Fi network
SSID	The SSID of the connected Wi-Fi network when managed by Wireless Manager
Network Card	When the radio is connected and managed by the Summit Client Utility

If the Wi-Fi radio is Off, tapping the Wi-Fi bar turns the radio On. Once the radio is On, the status may cycle through other states such as Available and Connecting before reporting a connection status such as the SSID.

If the Wi-Fi radio is in any other state than Off, tapping the Wi-Fi bar turns the radio Off.

---

If **Bluetooth** is present, the Bluetooth bar indicates the status of the connections, such as:

Off	The Bluetooth radio is off
On	The Bluetooth radio is on
Visible	The MX9 is discoverable

If the Bluetooth radio is Off, tapping the Bluetooth bar turns the radio On. Once the radio is On, it may cycle to Visible if the MX9 is discoverable.

If the Bluetooth radio is in any other state than Off, tapping the Bluetooth bar turns the Bluetooth radio Off.

If **WAN** is On, it is also shown on this panel. When clicked however, WWAN is disabled and the WAN button is removed from this panel. To enable WAN again, select [Start > Settings > System > WAN](#).



*Note: Tap Start > Help for context sensitive Windows Mobile Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the X icon in the top right corner to close Windows Mobile Help.*

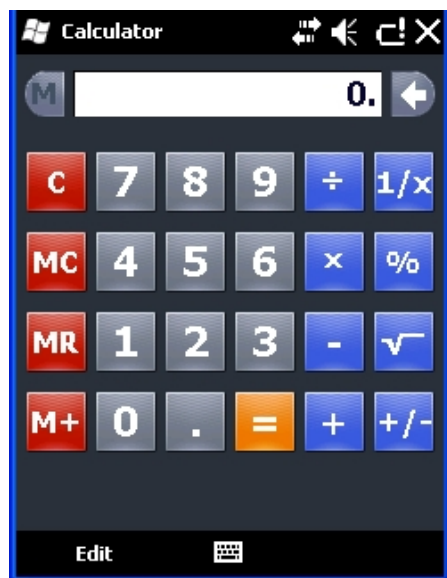


---

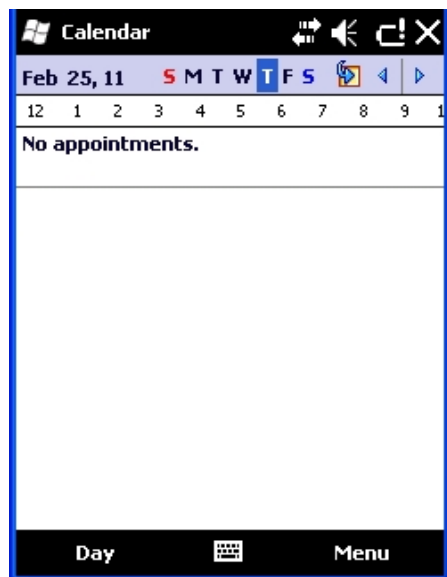
## Miscellaneous Start Panels

### Standard Microsoft Applications

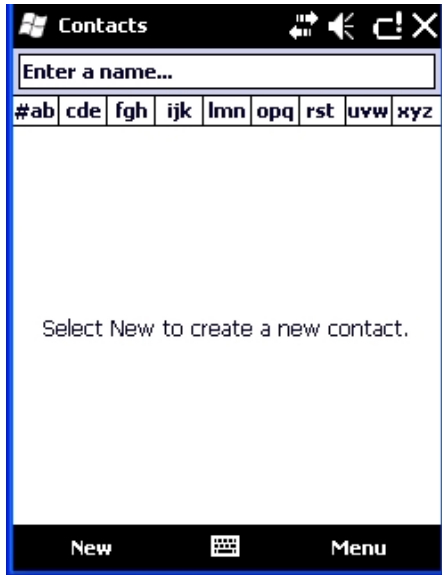
*Note: The intent of this segment is to document standard Microsoft applications loaded on the MX9. Documentation only consists of a panel and minimal explanation. These are standard Microsoft small form applications for which help is available on the MX9 and the Internet.*



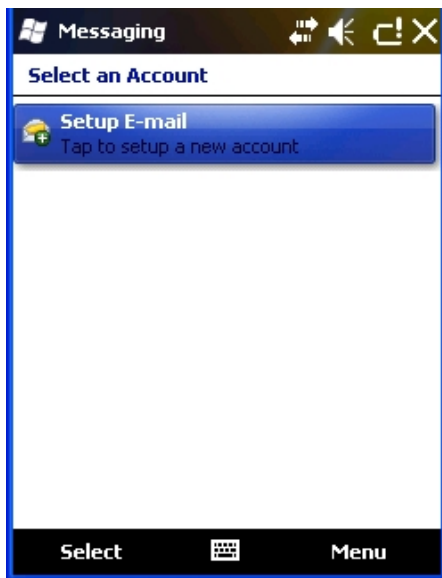
Mathematical calculator application. Use Copy (Ctrl+C) and Paste (Ctrl+V) to move results between applications.



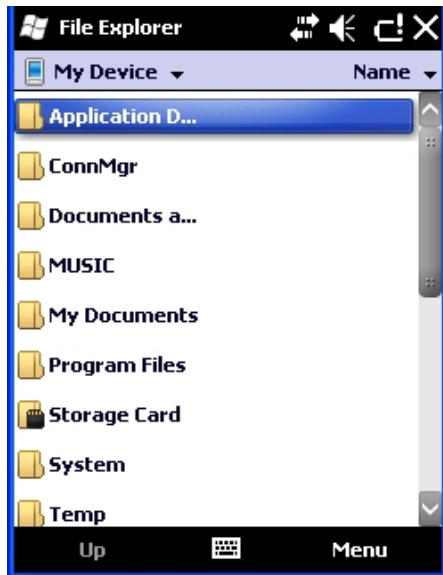
Calendar/date book application. Can be synchronized with PC Outlook calendar using ActiveSync.



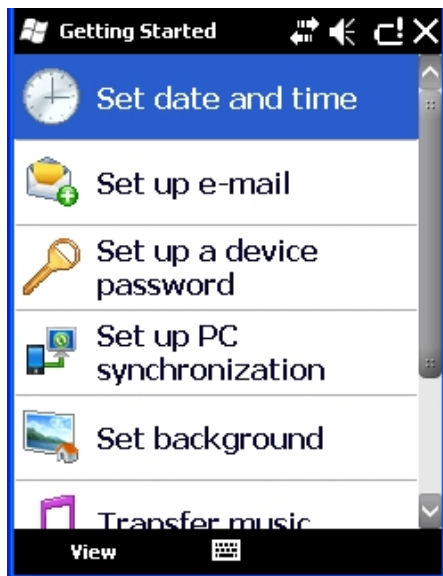
Address book application. Can be synchronized with PC Outlook address book using ActiveSync.



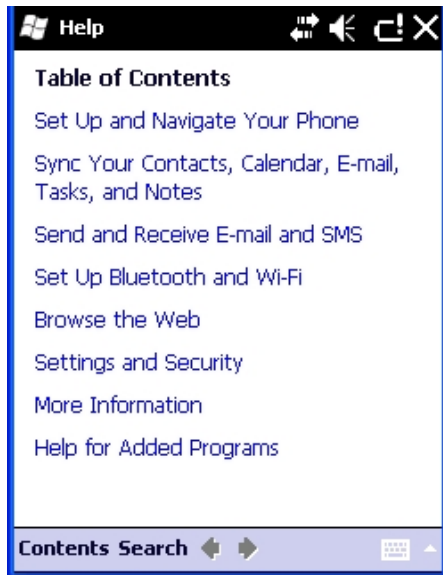
Email application. Can be synchronized with PC Outlook email using ActiveSync or it can synchronize with an Exchange server.



Displays a structured picture of files on the system.



This application provides several wizards to walk a user through device configuration.



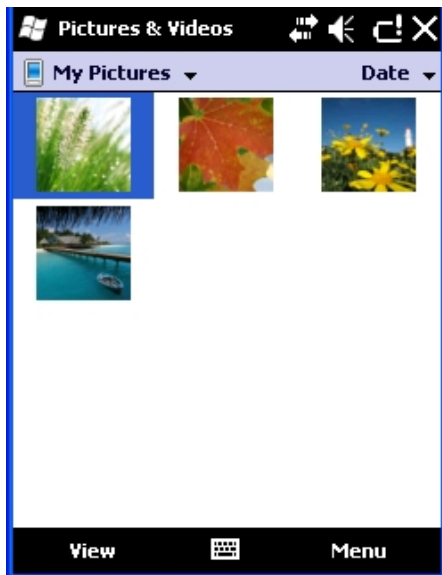
Access Windows Mobile help system on the MX9. Options to search using Windows Live Search are available.



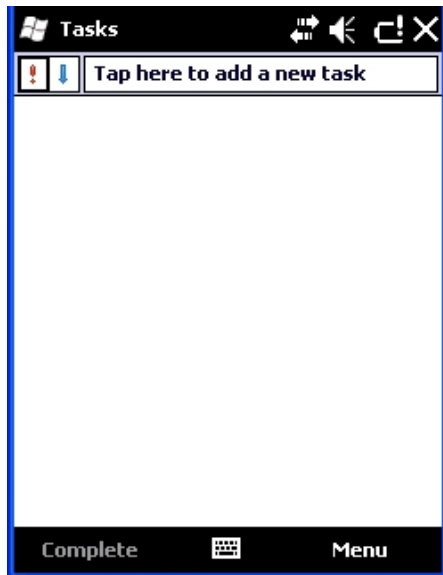
Windows Live Messenger. Instant Messaging service. Internet access required. Not supported on the MX9.



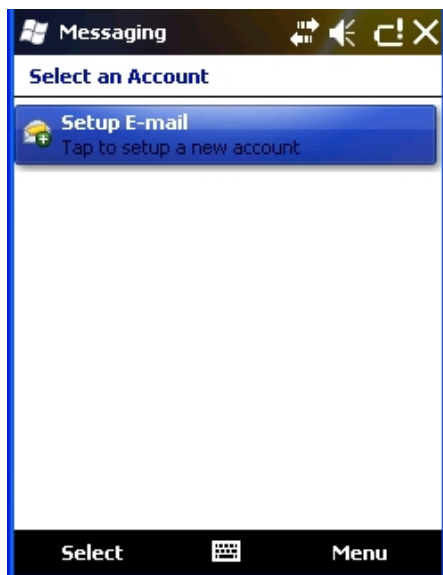
Notes. Notebook application. Select Menu > View Recording Toolbar to create an audio note. Can be synchronized with PC Outlook notes using ActiveSync.



Pictures and Video. Picture/video viewer application. Can be synchronized with PC My Documents folder using ActiveSync.



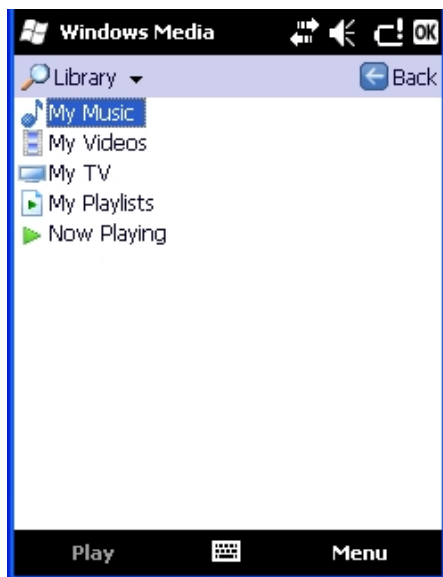
Tasks. Task list application. Can be synchronized with PC Outlook task list using ActiveSync.



Text Messaging application. Can be synchronized with PC Outlook email using ActiveSync or it can synchronize with an Exchange server.



Windows Live. Sign in to Microsoft Windows Live online service. Internet access required.



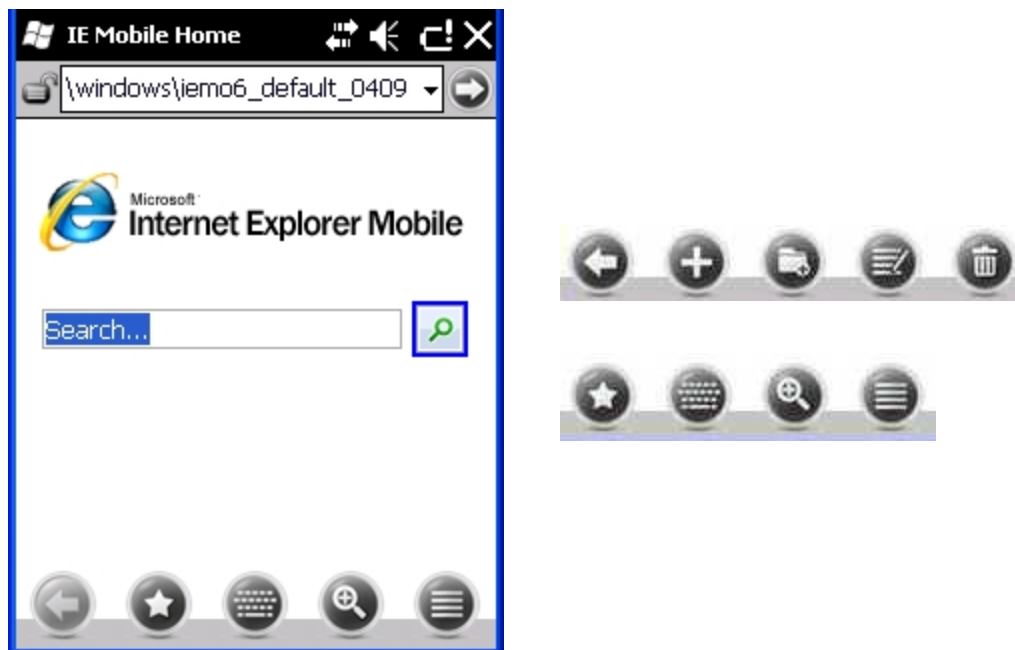
Windows Media. Audio visual management program. Not supported on the MX9.









---

## Internet Explorer Mobile

### Start > Internet Explorer

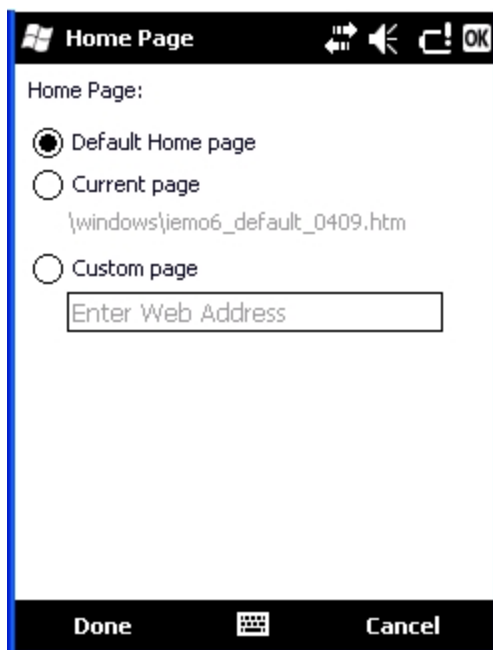
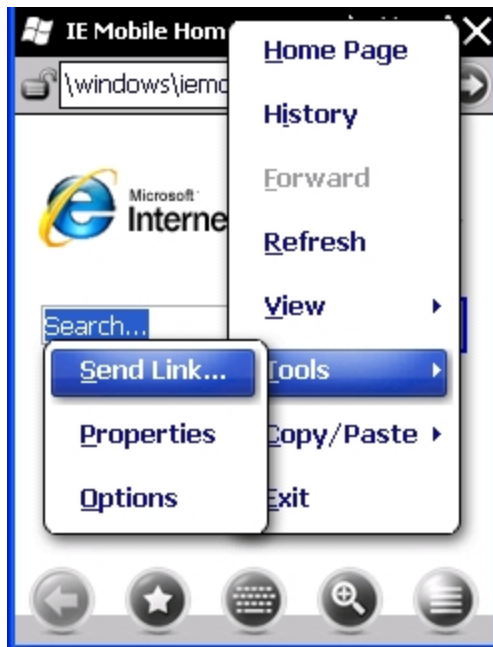
Set options for Internet connectivity. The navigation icons change state based on the web page contents.

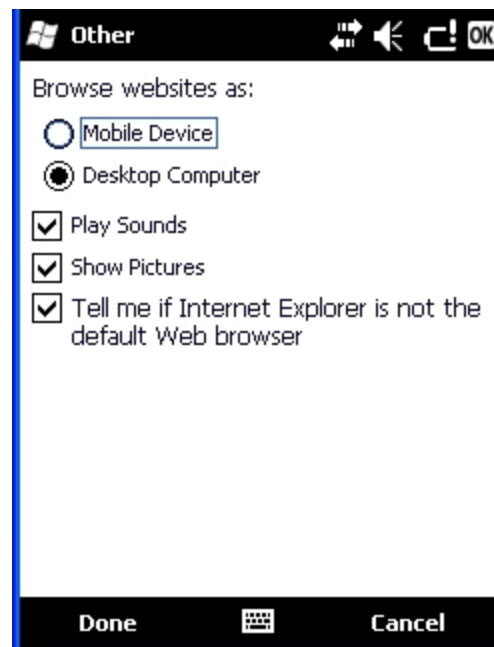
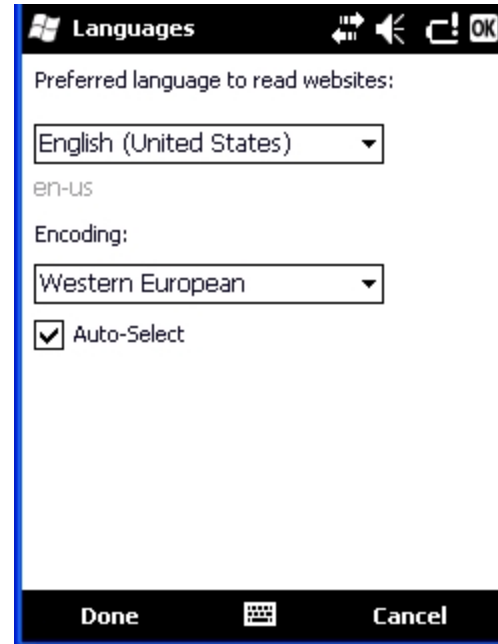
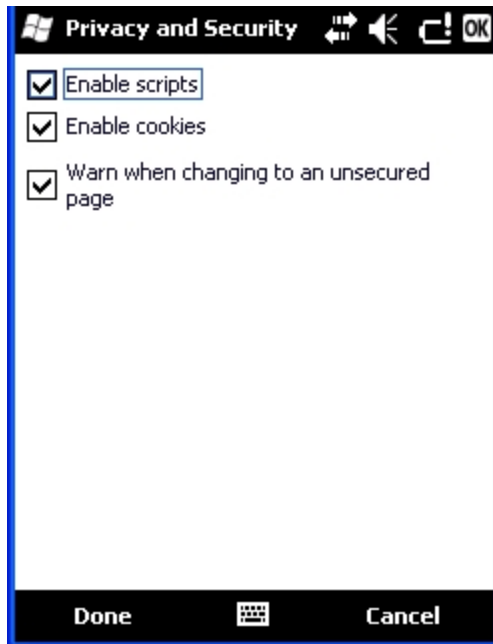


Navigation Icon	Action	Navigation Icon	Action
	Add folder		Favorites
	Add to Favorites		Options
	Go Back		Soft Input Panel
	Delete Favorite		Zoom In / Zoom Out



## Options





---

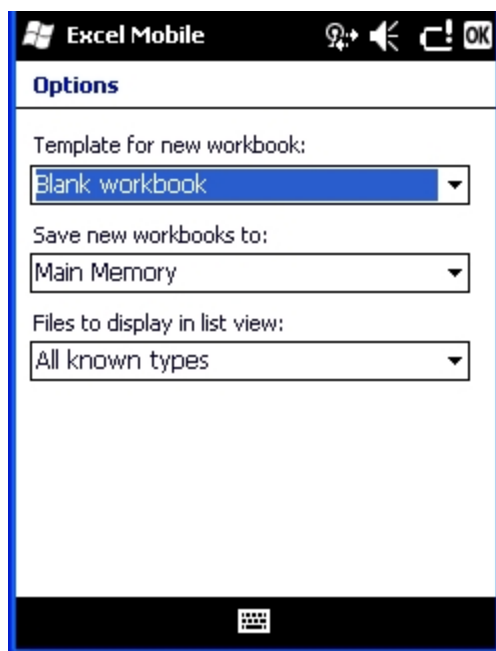
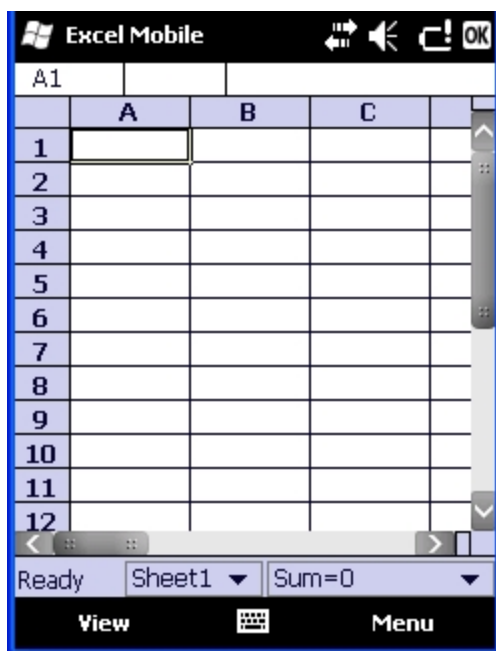
## Office Mobile

A suite of business related applications. Files can be created, opened, viewed, saved in different formats, etc.

*Note: For Microsoft Office Mobile instruction for Word, PowerPoint, Excel and OneNote, please refer to commercially available Microsoft Office Mobile user guides.*

## Excel Mobile

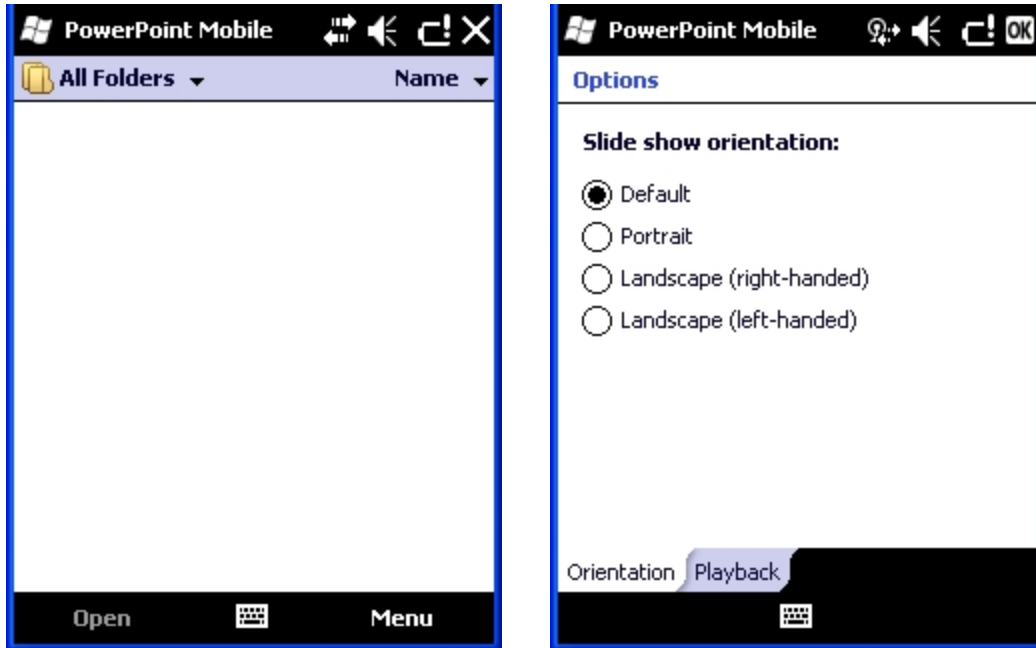
Spreadsheets can be edited, data can be sorted, formatting and changes are preserved. Select Menu > Options to change default settings.



---

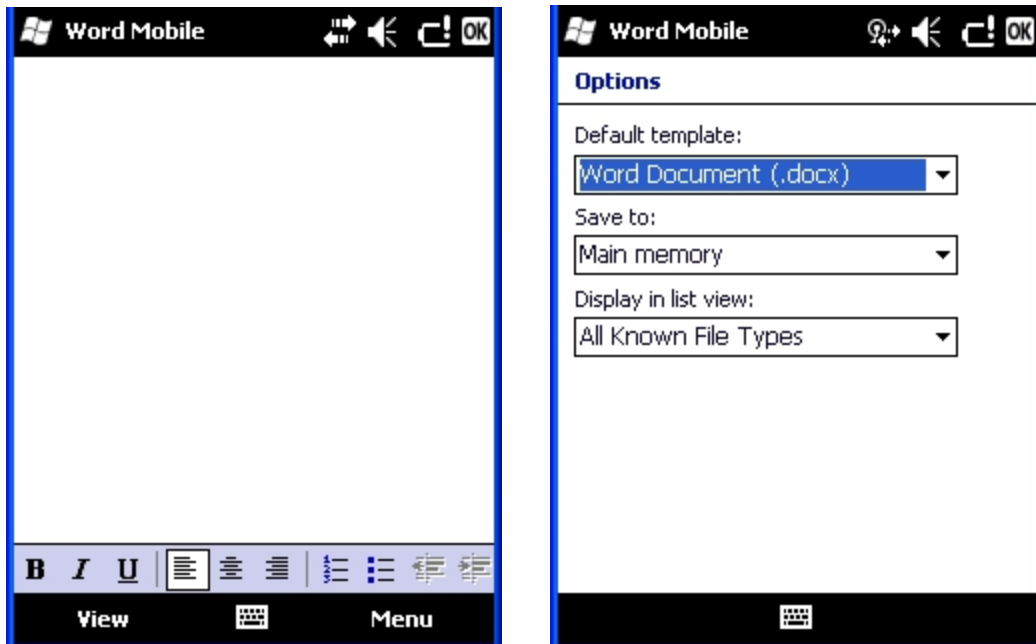
## PowerPoint Mobile

Open, view and edit slides in landscape or portrait format. Zoom and GoTo features enabled. Select Menu > Options to change default settings.



## Word Mobile

Open, view, edit documents. Formats are saved. Spelling checker, cut and paste are available, undo and redo commands. Select Menu > Options to change default settings.



---

## OneNote Mobile

Open, view, edit text-only notes. Select Menu to change default settings.



---

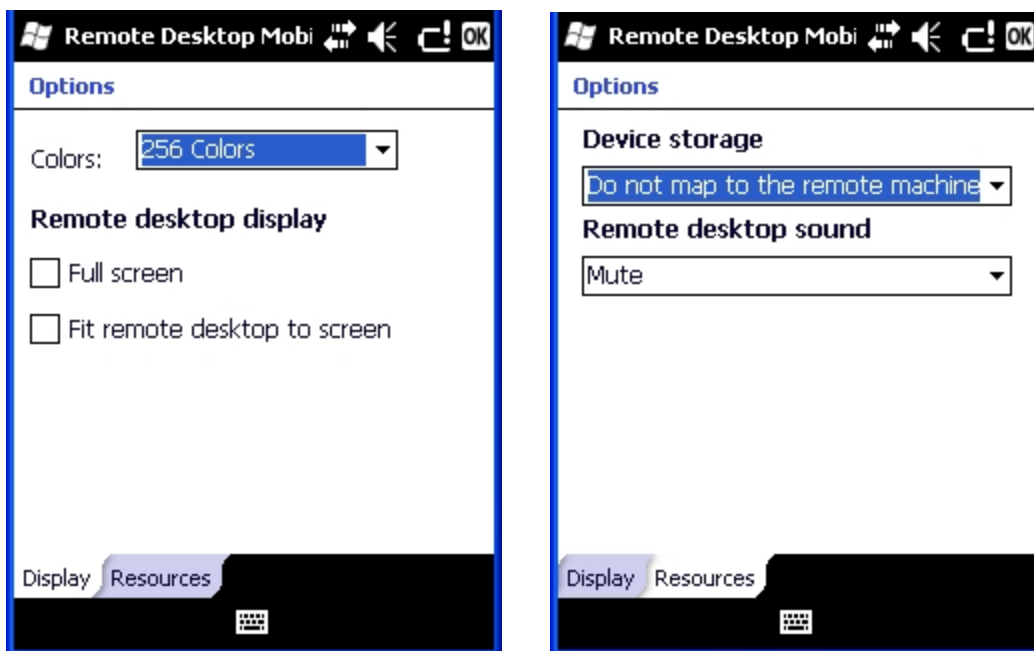
## Remote Desktop

### Start > Remote Desktop Mobile

Using Remote Desktop Mobile, you can log on to a remote computer (host) running Terminal Services or Remote Desktop and use all the programs available on that computer from your mobile device. For example, instead of running Word Mobile on the MX9, you can run the desktop computer version of Word and access all of the .doc files on that computer from your device.

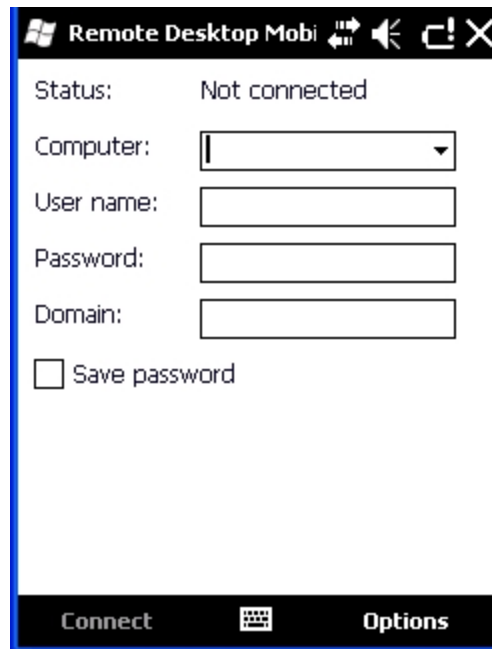
### Set Remote Desktop Options

Before connecting to a remote computer (host), set Remote Desktop Mobile options to improve display and resource when connected, if desired. Tap **Options** in the taskbar. Tap **OK** when finished.



---

## Connect to a Remote Server



1. Configure the radio.
2. Enter the name of the computer to which you want to connect. If needed, enter the port number at the end of the computer name (*remotecomputername:portnumber*).
3. Enter the user name, password and domain.
4. Tap the Save password checkbox if it is blank.
5. Tap Connect to complete the connection and save the password.
6. Select Disconnect from Remote Desktop connection.
7. Create a folder titled Startup under the System folder.
8. Copy Remote.exe from the Windows folder to the \System\Startup folder just created.
9. Select Start > Settings > System > MX9WM Options and check Remote Desktop Autologon.
10. Select OK and 'yes' to reboot.
11. Result: The unit will boot into the Remote Desktop Connection.

---



# Chapter 5 - Using ActiveSync

## Introduction

*Requirement* : ActiveSync (version 4.5 or higher for **Windows XP** desktop/laptop computers) must be resident on the host (desktop/laptop) computer. **Windows Mobile Device Center** (version 6.1 or later) is required for a **Windows Vista/Windows 7** desktop/laptop computer. ActiveSync and Windows Mobile Device Center for the PC is available from the Microsoft website. Follow their instructions to locate, download and install ActiveSync or Windows Mobile Device Center on your desktop computer.

*Note:* For readability in this section, ActiveSync will be used in instructions and explanations. If you have a Windows Vista or Windows 7 operating system on your desktop/laptop, replace ActiveSync with Windows Mobile Device Center.

Using Microsoft ActiveSync, you can synchronize information on your desktop computer with the MX9 and vice versa. Synchronization compares the data on your mobile device with your desktop computer and updates both with the most recent data.

For example, you can:

- Back up and restore your device data.
- Copy (rather than synchronize) files between your device and desktop computer.
- Control when synchronization occurs by selecting a synchronization mode. For example, you can synchronize continually while connected to your desktop computer or only when you choose the synchronize command.

By default, ActiveSync does not automatically synchronize all types of information. Use ActiveSync Options to specify the types of information you want to synchronize. The synchronization process makes the data (in the information types you select) identical on both your desktop computer and your device.

When installation of ActiveSync is complete on your desktop computer, the ActiveSync Setup Wizard begins and starts the following processes:

- connect your device to your desktop computer,
- set up a partnership so you can synchronize information between your device and your desktop computer, and
- customize your synchronization settings.

Because ActiveSync is already installed on your device, your first synchronization process begins automatically when you finish setting up your desktop computer in the ActiveSync wizard. For more information about using ActiveSync on your desktop computer, open ActiveSync, then open ActiveSync Help.

---

## Initial Setup

The initial setup of ActiveSync must be made via a USB connection. Partnerships can only be created using USB cable connection.

### Connect via USB

The default connection type is **USB Client**

This is the only connection option supported on the MX9.

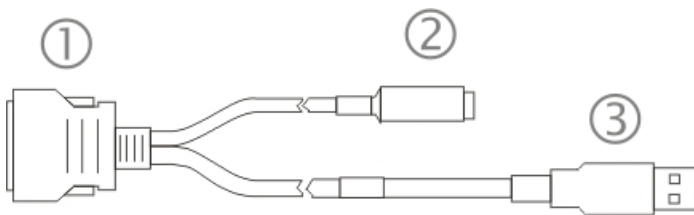
Connect the USB cable to the PC (the host) and the mobile device (the client) as detailed below. USB will start automatically when the USB cable is connected.

When the MX9 loses connection, e.g., enters Suspend Mode, etc., the connection to ActiveSync will be lost. When the MX9 resumes, the ActiveSync session will automatically re-connect.

### ***Cable for USB ActiveSync Connection:***

**MX9051CABLE** - - MX9USB Client Cable Assembly (ActiveSync connection). USB end of cable connects to PC/Laptop USB port.

- Connect the I/O connector end of the cable to the I/O port on the bottom of the MX9
- The USB client type A plug on the MX9 cable connects to a USB port on a PC or laptop.
- It is not necessary to connect the power connector on the cable in order to use ActiveSync.



1. USB client type A plug
2. Power receptacle
3. I/O connector

---

## Explore

From the ActiveSync Dialog on the Desktop PC, tap the Explore button, which allows you to explore the mobile device from the PC side, with some limitations. You can copy files to or from the mobile device by drag-and-drop. You will not be allowed to delete files or copy files out of the \Windows folder on the mobile device. (Technically, the only files you cannot delete or copy are ones marked as system files in the original build of the Windows image. This, however, includes most of the files in the \Windows folder).

## Backup Data Files using ActiveSync

Use the following information to backup data files from the mobile device to a desktop or laptop PC using the appropriate cable and Microsoft's ActiveSync.

### *Prerequisites*

A partnership between the mobile device and ActiveSync has been established.

- A desktop or laptop PC with an available USB port and a mobile device with a USB port. The desktop or laptop PC must be running Windows XP or greater.
- Use the specific USB cable as listed in [Connect Via USB](#).

### *Connect*

Connect the USB cable to the PC (the host) and the mobile device (the client).

The "Get Connected" wizard on the host PC checks COM ports to establish a connection for the first time.

*Note: USB synchronization will start automatically when the cable is connected.*

---

## Disconnect

- Disconnect the cable from the MX9.
- Open the status bar icon in the lower right hand corner of the status bar. Then tap the Disconnect button.

When the MX9 loses connection, e.g., enters Suspend Mode, etc., the connection to ActiveSync will be lost. When the MX9 resumes, the ActiveSync session will automatically re-connect.

## Reset and Loss of Host Re-connection

ActiveSync assigns a partnership between a client and a host computer. A partnership is defined by two objects – a unique computer name and a random number generated when the partnership is first created. An ActiveSync partnership between a unique client can be established to two hosts.

When the mobile device is reset (return to default settings), the random number is deleted – and the partnership with the last one of the two hosts is also deleted. The host retains the random numbers and unique names of all devices having a partnership with it. Two clients cannot have a partnership with the same host if they have the same Device Name.

If the reset mobile device tries to reestablish the partnership with the same host PC, a new random number is generated for the mobile device and ActiveSync will insist the unique name of the mobile device be changed. If the mobile device is associated with a second host, changing the name will destroy that partnership as well. This can cause some confusion when re-establishing partnerships with hosts.

## ActiveSync Help

### ActiveSync indicator on the host remains gray

Solution 1: ActiveSync icon on the PC does not turn green after connecting USB cable from MX9.

1. Disconnect MX9 USB cable from PC.
2. Suspend/Resume or Restart the MX9.
3. In ActiveSync > File > Connection Settings on PC disable Allow USB Connections and click OK.
4. Re-enable Allow USB Connections on the PC and click OK.
5. Reconnect USB cable from MX9 to PC.

---

## Configuring the MX9 with HSMConnect

HSMConnect allows a user to view the MX9 screen remotely from a PC using an ActiveSync connection:

Requirements: ActiveSync version 4.5 (or higher) must be resident on a Windows XP (desktop/laptop) host computer.

Windows Mobile Device Center (version 6.1 or higher) is required for a Windows Vista/Windows 7 desktop/laptop computer.

ActiveSync is already installed on the MX9. The MX9 is preconfigured to establish a USB ActiveSync connection to a host PC when the USB cable is attached to the MX9 and the host PC.

### ***Install HSMConnect***

1. The HSMConnect installation file is on the *Getting Started Disc*.
2. Download the files to a location on your host PC hard drive.
3. Execute the setup file that was copied to the host PC. This setup program installs the HSMConnect utility.



4. Follow the on screen installation prompts. The default installation directory is C:\Program Files\Honeywell Inc\HSM Connect.
5. When the installation is complete, create a desktop shortcut to the following file: C:\Program Files\Honeywell Inc\HSM Connect\HSMConnect.exe. If a different directory was selected during installation, please substitute the appropriate directory.
6. HSMConnect is now installed on the host PC and ready to use.

---

## ***Using HSMConnect***

1. Power up the MX9.
2. Connect the MX9 to the host PC using the USB connection cable. Once connected, the ActiveSync dialog box appears and the ActiveSync connection is automatically established.
3. Select "No" for partnership when prompted. Dismiss any ActiveSync dialog boxes warning a partnership is not set up. It is not necessary to establish a partnership to use HSMConnect. However, if a partnership is desired for other reasons, one may be established now.
4. Double-click the HSMConnect icon that was created on the PC desktop.
5. HSMConnect launches.



- 
6. Click the OK button to dismiss the About CERDisp dialog box on the MX9 desktop by clicking the OK button in the HSMConnect window on the PC desktop. The dialog box automatically times out and disappears after approximately 20 seconds.



7. The MX9 can now be configured from the HSMConnect window. Input from the PC's mouse and keyboard are recognized as if they were attached to the MX9.
8. When the remote session is completed, terminate the HSMConnect program by selecting File > Exit or clicking on the X in the upper right hand corner to close the application, then disconnect the ActiveSync cable.

---



# Chapter 6 - Data Collection

## Start > Settings > System > Data Collection

Set scanner/imager keyboard wedge parameters, enable or disable symbologies from being scanned, scanner icon appearance, active scanner port, and scan key settings. Assign baud rate, parity, stop bits and data bits for available COM ports. Scanner parameters apply to the MX9 integrated scanner/imager only. Bar code manipulation parameters apply to bar codes scanned by the MX9 integrated scanner/imager engine.

Scanner configuration can be changed using the Data Collection settings panels or via API functions. While the changed configuration is being read, the Scanner LED is solid amber. The scanner is not operational during the configuration update.

*Note: When returning scanner or imager to factory default settings: After scanning the scanner-engine-specific bar code to reset all scanner parameters to factory default settings (i.e., Reset All, Set Factory Defaults, Default Settings, etc.), the next step is to open the Data Collection settings panel. Tap ok and close the Data Collection panel. This action will synchronize all scanner formats. Programming bar codes are available in the Integrated Scanner Programming Guide.*

The MX9 has one integrated bar code scanner/imager port. Only one scan engine is installed at a time. Scan engines are not "hot swappable". The MX9 may have one of the following bar code scan engines:

- Symbol Short Range Laser Scanner, 955
- Symbol Multi-Range "LORAX" Laser, 1524ER
- Hand Held Products 2D Area Imager, 5300.

The integrated scan engine activates when the Scan button on the front of the MX9 is depressed or when the trigger on an installed trigger handle is depressed.

### Symbol scanner

Please refer to the *Integrated Scanner Programming Guide* for instruction on configuring specific scanner/imager parameters by using the MX9 to scan engine-specific setup bar codes in the guide.

### Hand Held Products (HHP) Imager

Use the HHP Properties button on the Data Options tab and the Advanced button available on many of the individual Symbology Settings screen to configure the Hand Held Products Imager. There are no configuration bar codes for this imager.

### External Bar Code Readers

The MX9 can use the following external bar code readers:

- Tethered hand-held scanners are tethered to a serial port on the MX9 or cradle and are configured by scanning the engine-specific bar codes in the scanner manufacturer's programming guide. The manufacturer's guides are usually shipped with the bar code reader.
- Wireless hand-held Bluetooth scanners are configured by scanning the engine-specific bar codes in the scanner manufacturer's programming guide. The manufacturer's guides are usually shipped with the bar code reader.
- The body worn Bluetooth Ring Scanner module may be using a Symbol 4400 Ring Imager or a Symbol 955 Ring Scanner. The Bluetooth Ring Scanner module is configured by scanning the bar codes in the *Bluetooth Ring Scanner Programming Guide*.

---

## Return to Factory Default Settings

After scanning the engine-specific bar code to return the scanner/imager to factory default settings, the next step is to open the bar code wedge panel on the mobile device collecting the scanned data. Click the OK button to close the panel. This action will synchronize all scanner formats for your device. Another option you can use to reset the Data Collection panel is to scan the LXEReset bar code (for Symbol and Hand Held Products scan engines) located in the *Integrated Scanner Programming Guide*.

Engine specific bar codes for integrated scanners are contained in the *Integrated Scanner Programming Guide*. They can be used to set or reset scan engine parameters by scanning a bar code, then saving the change. Symbol scan engines can be programmed using programming bar codes. Do not scan decoder engine configuration bar codes when [Continuous Scan Mode](#) is on. Configuration bar codes do not decode when scanned while Continuous Scan Mode is On.

## Data Processing Overview

Bar code data processing involves several steps. Some steps may be skipped during the processing depending on user selections on the Symbology Settings panels. The steps are presented below in the order they are performed on the scanned data.

1. Scanned data is tested for a **code ID** and length (Min/Max). If it matches, it is processed per the rules in place for that symbology. If the scan does not meet the criteria for that symbology, it is processed based on the settings for All. If a code ID is not found, the bar code data is processed based on the settings for All.
  2. If the symbology is **disabled**, the scan is rejected.
  3. Strip **leading** data bytes unconditionally.
  4. Strip **trailing** data bytes unconditionally.
  5. Parse for, and strip if found, **Data Options** strings.
  6. Replace any **control characters** with string, as configured.
  7. Add **prefix** string to output buffer.
  8. If **Code ID** is **not** stripped, add saved **code ID** from above to output buffer.
  9. Add processed **data string** from above to output buffer.
  10. Add **suffix string** to output buffer.
  11. Add a terminating **NUL** to the output buffer, in case the data is processed as a string.
  12. If key output is enabled, start the process to output keys. If control characters are encountered:
    - If Translate All is set, key is translated to CTRL + char, and output.
    - If Translate All is not set, and key has a valid VK code, key is output.
    - Otherwise, key is ignored (not output).
  13. If key output is disabled, a windows message is broadcast to notify listening applications that data is available.
- The manipulated data is ready to be read by applications.

## Main Tab

Start > Settings > System > Data Collection > Main tab

### Factory Default Settings

Device 1	Disabled
Device 2	Internal
Device 3	Disabled
Keep Awake	Disabled
Output	Disabled
Send Key Messages	Enabled
Scan Mode - Continuous	Disabled
Scan Mode - Timeout between same symbol	1 second

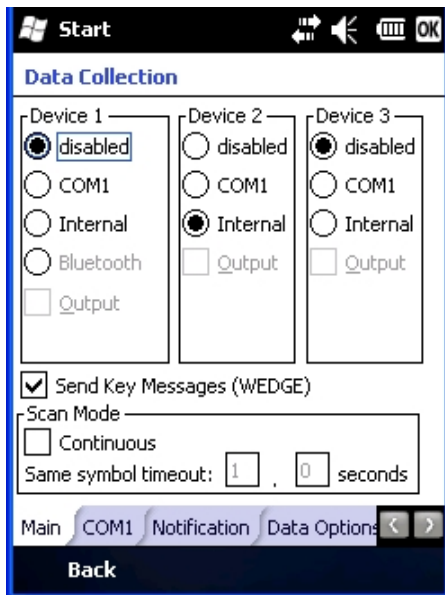
Device 1 – Internal. Radio button allows scanner input/output on Device 1 (scan key or trigger).

Device 2 – Output is enabled when COM1 is enabled on this port.

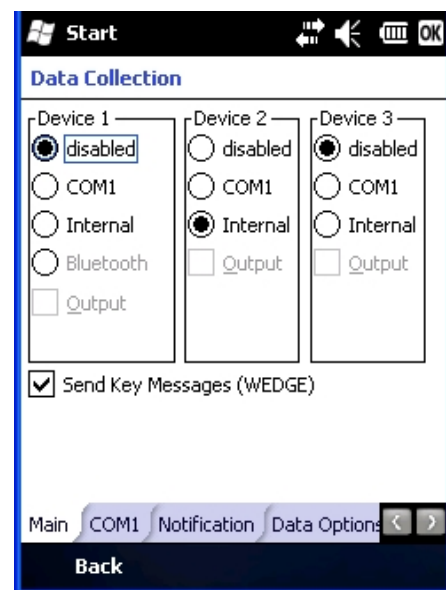
Device 3 – Output is enabled when COM1 is enabled on this port.

The Data Collection Wedge supports up to three concurrent data collection devices. For example, the internal scanner could be used to collect data at the same time a Bluetooth scanner is paired and/or a serial device is attached to COM1. The MX9 must be in a desktop cradle to use a tethered scanner.

*Note: Since Internal is the default setting for Device 2, a Bluetooth scanner can be paired with the Wedge on Device 1 without disabling the internal scanner.*



Device with integrated Symbol Scanner



Device with any other imager/scanner

*Note: The Scan Mode (Continuous Scan) section is only present if the MX9 is equipped with a Symbol integrated scanner.*

---

Output – When Output is enabled, data is received from the scanner and processed via the wedge but an application can also open the WDG0: device and write data to it. An example is when a printer is connected to the same COM port as the scanner via a switch. Data can be written to the WDG device and is redirected to the associated COM port. The application must open the WDG0: port, not the COMx: port as the Wedge has exclusive rights to the COM port. If Output is not enabled, the WDG0: port can still be opened, but any attempts to write to that port fail.

Adjust the settings and tap ok to save the changes. The changes take effect immediately.

## ***Continuous Scan Mode***

### **Start > Settings > System > Data Collection > Main**

Continuous scan mode is only available if the MX9 is equipped with a Symbol scanner. Continuous scan mode draws power from the main battery every time a scan read/decode sequence is performed.

Enabling Continuous Scan Mode will ensure the laser is always on and decoding.

*Note: Do not scan decoder engine configuration bar codes when Continuous Scan Mode is on. Configuration bar codes do not decode when scanned while Continuous Scan Mode is On.*



Caution: Laser beam is emitted continuously. Do not look or stare into the laser beam.

Set the Timeout between same symbol to a value sufficient to prevent the beeper from continuously beeping when a symbol is left in the scanner's field of view.

If trigger mode, power mode, or timeout between same symbol parameters are changed using external configuration bar codes in the *Integrated Scanner Programming Guide*, the operating system automatically restores the parameters to their programmed settings upon a cold boot and/or any change made in the Data Collection settings.

When the scanner is in continuous mode the trigger and scan buttons function as a scanner On/Off switch.

The scanner red LED will always be off in continuous mode. The audio beeps and green LED function the same as they do for normal trigger mode.

Switching to and from continuous and normal trigger modes is in effect after upon tapping the ok button and waiting for the amber scan LED to go out. A reboot is not required or necessary.

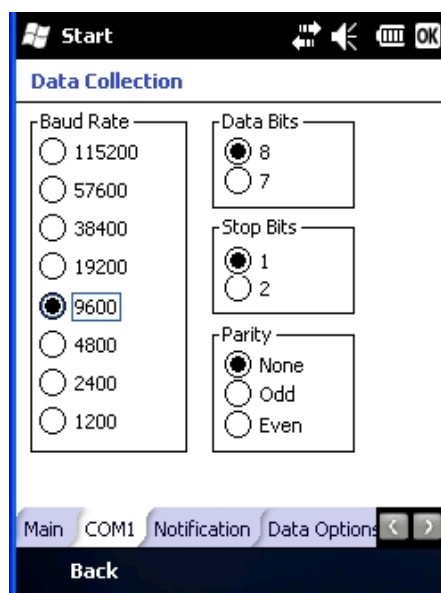
---

## COM1 Tab

Start > Settings > System > Data Collection > COM1 tab

### Factory Default Settings

Baud Rate	9600
Data Bits	8
Stop Bits	1
Parity	None



Integrated laser scanner default values are 9600 Baud, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit and No parity.  
If these values are changed, the default values are restored after a cold boot or reflashing.

*Note: COM1 does not support 5V switchable power on Pin 9 for tethered scanners.*

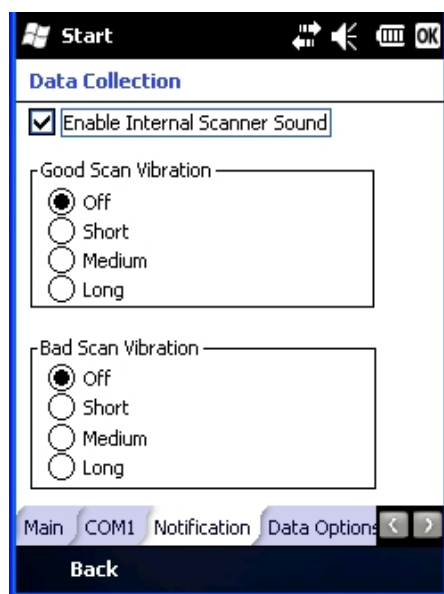
---

## Notification Tab

**Start > Settings > System > Data Collection > Notification tab**

### Factory Default Settings

Enable Internal Scanner Sound	Enabled
Good Scan Vibration	Off
Bad Scan Vibration	Off



This panel toggles internal scanner sounds on and off. Internal scanner sound, by default, is enabled.

Enable Good scan vibration or Bad scan vibration when a tactile response on a good scan or bad scan is desired. Scan sounds are accompanied by a tactile response when the internal scanner Sound parameter is enabled.

Enable short, medium or long duration for each selection (good scan and bad scan).

Adjust the settings and tap ok to save the changes. The changes take effect immediately.

---

## Volume and Vibration

Since the Data Collection Wedge uses the operating system interface to sound beeps, if the volume/vibrate icon is set to anything other than On, Wedge beeps do not sound. Wedge vibration is not affected by these settings.



# Data Options Tab

Start > Settings > System > Data Collection > Data Options tab

Bar code manipulation parameter settings on this tab are applied to the incoming data resulting from successful bar code scans sent to the MX9 for processing.

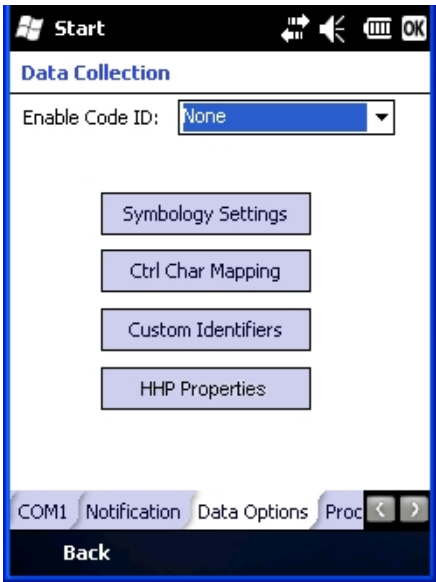
*Note: The Data Options tab contains only those options available for one type of decoding engine.*

The Data Options tab contains several options to control bar code processing. Options include:

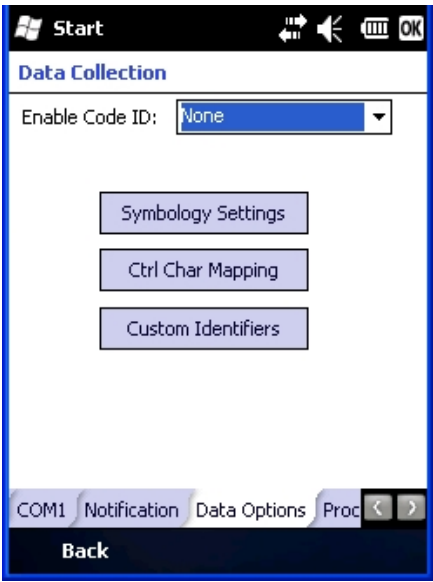
- Defining custom Code IDs
- Disable processing of specified bar code symbologies
- Rejecting bar code data that is too short or too long
- Stripping characters including Code ID, leading or trailing characters and specified bar code data strings
- Replacing control characters
- Adding a prefix and a suffix.

## Factory Default Settings

Enable Code ID	None
----------------	------



MX9 with a Hand Held Products imager



MX9 with any other imager/scanner

*Note: The HHP Properties button is only present if the MX9 is equipped with a Hand Held products imager.*

Choose an option in the Enable Code ID drop-down box: None, AIM, Symbol, HHP or Custom.



---

## For MX9 with Symbol Decoding Engine

Data Collection Wedge can only enable or disable the processing of a bar code inside the Wedge software.

Enabling or disabling a specific bar code symbology at the scanner/imager is done manually using the configuration bar code in the *Integrated Scanner Programming Guide*.

## For MX9 with Hand Held Products Decoding Engine

Data Collection Wedge enables or disables the bar code at the imager as well as enabling or disabling the bar code processing in the Wedge software.

## Enable Code ID

This parameter programs the internal scanner to transmit the specified Code ID and/or determines the type of bar code identifier being processed. If the scanner being configured is not an integrated scanner, the scanner driver expects that the setting has been programmed into the scanner externally, and that the data will be coming in with the specified Code ID attached.

Transmission of the Code ID is enabled at the scanner for all bar code symbologies, not for an individual symbology. Code ID is sent from the scanner so the scanner driver can discriminate between symbologies.

### Options

None	Programs the internal scanner to disable transmission of a Code ID. The only entry in the Symbology popup list is All.
AIM	Programs the internal scanner to transmit the AIM ID with each bar code. The combo box in the Symbology panel is loaded with the known AIM ID symbologies for that platform, plus any configured Custom code IDs.
Symbol	Programs the internal scanner to transmit the Symbol ID with each bar code. The combo box in the Symbology panel is loaded with the known Symbol ID symbologies for that platform, plus any configured Custom Code IDs.
HHP	Programs the internal scanner to transmit the HHP ID with each bar code. The combo box in the Symbology panel is loaded with the known HHP ID symbologies for that platform, plus any custom Code IDs.
Custom	Does not change the scanner's Code ID transmission setting. The combo box in the Symbology panel is loaded with any configured Custom Code IDs.

---

## Notes

- When Strip: Code ID (see Symbology panel) is not enabled, the code ID is sent as part of the bar code data to an application.
- When Strip: Code ID (see Symbology panel) is enabled, the entire Code ID string is stripped (i.e., treated as a Code ID).
- UPC/EAN Codes only: The Code ID for supplemental bar codes is not stripped.
- When Enable Code ID is set to AIM, Symbol or HHP, Custom Code IDs appear at the end of the list of standard Code IDs.
- When Enable Code ID is set to Custom, Custom Code IDs replace the list of standard Code IDs.
- Symbol equipped devices are configured using configuration bar codes, When Enable Code ID is set to Custom, AIM or Symbol Code IDs must be added to the end of the Custom Code ID. For example, if a Custom Code ID 'AAA' is created to be read in combination with an AIM ID for Code 39 'JA1', the Custom Code ID must be entered with the AIM ID code first then the Custom Code ID : JA1AAA.
- When Enable Code ID is set to None, Code IDs are ignored.
- Custom symbologies appear at the end of the list in the Symbology dialog, but will be processed at the beginning of the list in the scanner driver. This allows custom IDs, based on actual code IDs, to be processed before the Code ID.
- The external scanner operation cannot be controlled by the MX9 scanner driver; therefore, a 'good' beep may be sounded from the external scanner even if a bar code from an external scanner is rejected because of the configuration specified. The MX9 will still generate a 'bad' scan beep, to indicate the bar code has been rejected.

## Buttons

Symbology Settings	Individually enable or disable a bar code from being scanned, set the minimum and maximum size bar code to accept, strip Code ID, strip data from the beginning or end of a bar code, or (based on configurable Barcode Data) add a prefix or suffix to a bar code before transmission.
Ctrl Char Mapping	Define the operations the Wedge performs on control characters (values less than 0x20) embedded in bar codes.
Custom Identifiers	Defines an identifier that is at the beginning of bar code data which acts as a Code ID. After a Custom Identifier is defined, Symbology Settings can be defined for the identifier just like standard Code IDs.
HHP Properties	Set properties for a Hand Held Products imager including centering, mode, range, AIM timer and light behavior. Note that the HHP Properties button is only present if the MX9 is equipped with a Hand Held Products imager.

---

## Symbology Settings

**Start > Settings > System > Data Collection > Symbology Settings button**

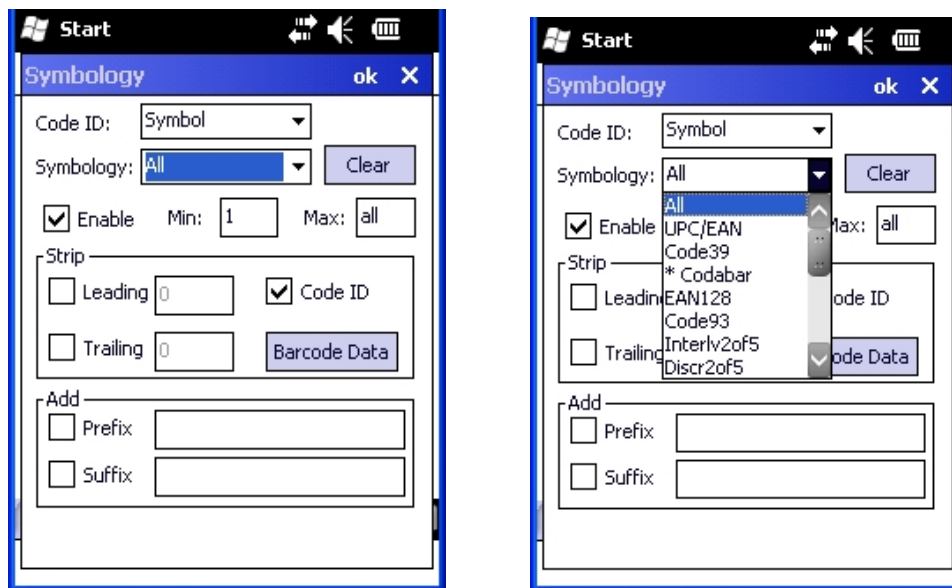
The Symbology selected in the Symbology drop down list defines the symbology for which the data is being configured. The features available on the Symbology panel include the ability to

- individually enable or disable a bar code from scanning,
- set the minimum and maximum size bar code to accept,
- strip Code ID,
- strip data from the beginning or end of a bar code,
- or (based on configurable Barcode Data) add a prefix or suffix to a bar code.

The Code ID drop down box only filters the available symbologies in the Symbology drop down box by the selected Code ID. This Code ID box does not enable or disable the Code ID as that function is controlled by the Enable Code ID box on the Data Options tab.

The Symbology drop down box contains all symbologies **supported by the device selected on the Main tab**. An asterisk appears in front of symbologies that have already been configured or have been modified from the default value.

Each time a Symbology is changed, the settings are saved as soon as ok is clicked. Settings are also saved when a new Symbology is selected from the Symbology drop down list.



### Clear Button

This button will erase any programmed overrides, returning to the default settings for the selected symbology.

If Clear is pressed when All is selected as the symbology, a confirmation dialog appears. Tap the Yes button and all symbologies are reset to their factory defaults, and all star (\*) indications are removed from the list of Symbologies.

---

## Advanced Button

If there are advanced configuration options for the selected symbology, an Advanced button is displayed in the lower right corner of the panel. Not all bar code symbologies have configuration parameters so the Advanced button is not present for all symbologies.

Because the Hand Held Products imager does not support configuration bar codes, the Advanced function allows configuration parameters to be set for many of the supported bar codes.

## Processing Order

The order in which these settings are processed are:

- Min / Max
- Code ID
- Leading / Trailing
- Barcode Data
- Prefix / Suffix

*Note: When **Enable Code ID** is set to **None** on the Data Options tab and when **All** is selected in the Symbology field, **Enable** and **Strip Code ID** on the Symbology panel are grayed and the user is not allowed to change them, to prevent deactivating the scanner completely.*

When **All** is selected in the Symbology field and the settings are changed, the settings in this dialog become the defaults, used unless overwritten by the settings for individual symbologies. This is also true for Custom IDs, where the code IDs to be stripped are specified by the user.

*Note: In Custom mode on the Data Options tab, any Code IDs **not** specified by the user will not be stripped, because they will not be recognized as Code IDs.*

If a specific symbology's settings have been configured, a star (\*) will appear next to it in the Symbology drop down box, so the user can tell which symbologies have been modified from their defaults.

If a particular symbology has been configured, the entire set of parameters from that symbologies screen are in effect for that symbology. In other words, either the settings for the configured symbology will be used, or the default settings are used, not a combination of the two.

If a symbology has not been configured (does not have an \* next to it) the settings for **All** are used which is not necessarily the default.

---

## Enable, Min, Max

### Enable

This checkbox enables (checked) or disables (unchecked) the symbology field.

The scanner driver searches the beginning of the bar code data for the type of ID specified in the Data Options tab -- Enable Code ID field plus any custom identifiers.

When a code ID match is found as the scanner driver processes incoming bar code data, if the symbology is disabled, the bar code is rejected. Otherwise, the other settings in the dialog are applied and the bar code is processed.

If the symbology is disabled, all other fields on this dialog are dimmed.

If there *are customized settings*, uncheck the Enable checkbox for the All symbology. This results in disabling all symbologies *except* the customized ones.

### Min

This field specifies the minimum length that the bar code data (not including Code ID) must meet to be processed.

Any bar code scanned that is less than the number of characters specified in the Min field is rejected. The default for this field is 1.

### Max

This field specifies the maximum length that the bar code data (not including Code ID) can be processed. Any bar code scanned that has more characters than specified in the Max field is rejected. The default for this field is All (9999).

If the value entered is greater than the maximum value allowed for that symbology, the maximum valid length is used instead.

---

## Strip Leading/Trailing Control

### Start > Settings > System > Data Collection > Symbology button

This group of controls determines what data is removed from the collected data before the data is buffered for the application. When all values are set, Code ID takes precedence over Leading and Trailing; Barcode Data stripping is performed last. Stripping occurs before the Prefix and Suffix are added, so does not affect them.

The screenshot shows a control panel titled "Strip". Inside, there are three rows of controls. The first row has a disabled checkbox labeled "Leading" followed by a numeric input field containing "0". The second row has a disabled checkbox labeled "Trailing" followed by a numeric input field containing "0". The third row has a checked checkbox labeled "Code ID" followed by a disabled numeric input field containing "0". To the right of these controls is a button labeled "Barcode Data".

If the total number of characters being stripped is greater than the number of characters in the collected data, it becomes a zero byte data string.

If, in addition, Strip Code ID is enabled, and no prefix or suffix is configured, the processing will return a zero-byte data packet, which will be rejected.

The operation of each type of stripping is defined below:

#### Leading

This strips the number of characters specified from the beginning of the collected data (not including Code ID). The data is stripped unconditionally. This action is disabled by default.

#### Trailing

This strips the number of characters specified from the end of the collected data (not including Code ID). The data is stripped unconditionally. This action is disabled by default.

#### Code ID

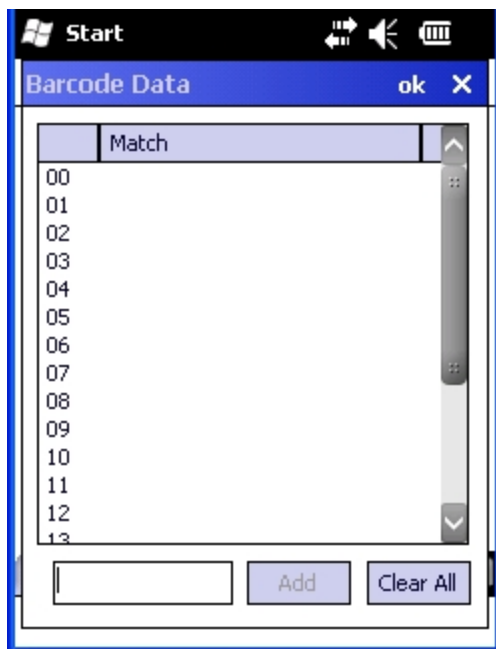
Strips the Code ID based on the type code ID specified in the Enable Code ID field in the Data Options tab. By default, Code ID stripping is enabled for every symbology (meaning code IDs will be stripped, unless specifically configured otherwise).

---

## Barcode Data Match List

### Barcode Data Panel

This panel is used to strip data that matches the entry in the Match list from the bar code. Enter the data to be stripped in the text box and tap the Insert or Add button. The entry is added to the Match list.



To remove an entry from the Match list, highlight the entry in the list and tap the Remove button.  
Tap ok to store any additions, deletions or changes.

---

## Barcode Data Match Edit Buttons

Add	Entering data into the text entry box enables the Add button. Tap the <b>Add</b> button and the data is added to the next empty location in the Custom ID list.
Insert	Tap on an empty line in the Custom ID list. The <b>Add</b> button changes to <b>Insert</b> . Enter data into both the Name and ID Code fields and tap the Insert button. The data is added to the selected line in the Custom IDs list.
Edit	Double tap on the item to edit. Its values are copied to the text boxes for editing. The <b>Add</b> button changes to <b>Replace</b> . When Replace is tapped, the values for the current item in the list are updated.
Clear All	When no item in the Custom IDs list is selected, tapping the Clear All button clears the Custom ID list and any text written (and not yet added or inserted) in the Name and ID Code text boxes.
Remove	The <b>Clear All</b> button changes to a <b>Remove</b> button when an item in the Custom IDs list is selected. Tap the desired line item and then tap the Remove button to delete it. Line items are Removed one at a time. Contents of the text box fields are cleared at the same time.

### Notes

- **Prefix** and **Suffix** data is always added on after stripping is complete, and is not affected by any stripping settings.
- If the stripping configuration results in a 0 length bar code, a good beep will still be emitted, since bar code data was read from the scanner.



---

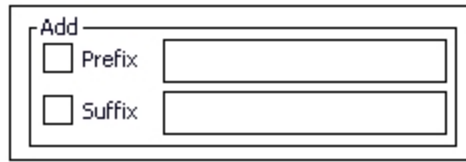
## Match List Rules

The data in the match list is processed by the rules listed below:

- Strings in the list will be searched in the order they appear in the list. If the list contains **ABC** and **AB**, in that order, incoming data with **ABC** will match first, and the **AB** will have no effect.
- When a match between the first characters of the bar code and a string from the list is found, that string is stripped from the bar code data.
- Processing the list terminates when a match is found or when the end of the list is reached.
- If the wildcard \* is not specified, the string is assumed to strip from the beginning of the bar code data. The string **ABC\*** strips off the prefix **ABC**. The string **\*XYZ** will strip off the suffix **XYZ**. The string **ABC\*XYZ** will strip both prefix and suffix together. More than one \* in a configuration string is not allowed. (The User Interface will not prevent it, but results would not be as expected, as only the first \* is used in parsing to match the string.)
- The question mark wildcard **?** may be used to match any single character in the incoming data. For example, the data **AB?D** will match **ABCD**, **ABcD**, or **AB0D**, but not **ABDE**.
- The data collected is saved per symbology configured. The Symbology selected in the Symbologies dialog defines the symbology for which the data is being configured.
- Note that the Code ID (if any are configured) is ignored by this dialog, regardless of the setting of **Strip: Code ID** in the Symbologies dialog. According to the sequence of events (specified above), the Code ID must not be included in the bar code data being matched, because when the matching test occurs, the Code ID has already been stripped. If Strip Code ID is disabled, then the bar code data to match must include the Code ID. If Strip Code ID is enabled, the data should not include the Code ID since it has already been stripped.

---

## Add Prefix/Suffix Control

A dialog box titled "Add" with a close button (X) in the top-left corner. It contains two rows. The first row has a checkbox labeled "Prefix" followed by a text input field. The second row has a checkbox labeled "Suffix" followed by a text input field. Both checkboxes are currently unchecked.

*Note: Non-ASCII equivalent keys in Key Message mode are unavailable in this option. Non-ASCII equivalent keys include the function keys (e.g., <F1>), arrow keys, Page up, Page down, Home, and End.*

Use this option to specify a string of text, hex values or hat encoded values to be added to the beginning (prefix) or the end (suffix) of the bar code data. Up to 19 characters can be included in the string. The string can include any character from the keyboard plus characters specified by hex equivalent or entering in hat encoding. Please see ["Hat Encoding"](#) for a list of characters with their hex and hat-encoded values.

Using the Escape function allows entering of literal hex and hat values.

### Add Prefix

To enable a prefix, check the Prefix checkbox and enter the desired string in the textbox. The default is disabled (unchecked) with a blank text string.

When bar code data is processed, the Prefix string is sent to the output buffer before any other data. Because all stripping operations have already occurred, stripping settings do not affect the prefix.

The prefix is added to the output buffer for the Symbology selected from the pulldown list. If 'All' is selected, the prefix is added for any symbology that has not been specifically configured.

### Add Suffix

To enable a suffix, check the Suffix checkbox and enter the desired string in the textbox. The default is disabled (unchecked) with a blank text string.

When bar code data is processed, the Suffix string is sent to the output buffer after the bar code data. Because all stripping operations have already occurred, stripping settings do not affect the suffix.

The suffix is added to the output buffer for the Symbology selected from the pulldown list. If 'All' is selected, the suffix is added for any symbology that has not been specifically configured.

---

## Symbologies

The Code ID drop-down box filters the available symbologies, in the Symbology drop down box, by the selected Code ID.

When a Hand Held Products imager scan engine is installed, AIM, Custom and HHP symbologies are displayed. HHP does not support Symbol IDs.

When a Symbol scan engine is installed, AIM, Custom and Symbol symbologies are displayed. Symbol does not support HHP IDs (Hand Held Products).

## Custom AIM IDs

*Note: When the integrated scan engine is a Symbol scan engine, AIM IDs apply, but Advanced properties do not and the Advanced button is not available.*

Symbol Engine
All
Codabar
Code11
Code 39
Code 93
Code 128
Discrete 2 of 5
EAN 128
Interleaved 2 of 5
MSI
Other
PDF417
Plessey
RSS14
UPC/EAN

The Data Collection Wedge does not manage mutually exclusive option selections. The user is responsible for understanding the options that can co-exist for the data collection device. The documentation provided from the manufacturer of the scanner/imager being managed describes the interaction between symbologies and their configurations.

---

## HHP Symbolologies

Advanced properties are available when an integrated Hand Held Products imager is installed. Advanced properties are applicable regardless of the ID type selected (AIM or HHP). HHP = Hand Held Products.

Not all HHP symbolologies have Advanced options. Click the symbology link in the table below for the symbology Advanced options.

Symbology	
All	MicroPDF
Aztec	MSI
BPO	<a href="#">OCR</a>
<a href="#">Codabar</a>	Other
CodaBlock	PDF417
<a href="#">Code 11</a>	<a href="#">Plessey</a>
Code 32	<a href="#">Posi</a>
<a href="#">Code 39</a>	Postnet
Code 49	QR
Code 93	RSS
Code 128	Strt25
Composite	Strt32
Coupon	<a href="#">Telepen</a>
DataMatrix	TLC
<a href="#">EAN8</a>	Trioptic39
<a href="#">EAN13</a>	<a href="#">UPCA</a>
EAN128	<a href="#">UPCE0</a>
GenCode128	<a href="#">UPCE1</a>
IATA25	CANPOST
IDTag	AUSPOST
<a href="#">Interleaved 2 of 5</a>	JapanPost
ISBT-1	<a href="#">Planet</a>
Matrix 2 of 5	DutchPost
Maxicode	ChinaPost
<a href="#">Mesa</a>	Code16K
	Usps4cb

The Data Collection Wedge does not manage mutually exclusive option selections. The user is responsible for understanding the options that can co-exist for the data collection device. The documentation provided from the manufacturer of the scanner/imager being managed describes the interaction between symbolologies and their configurations.

## Codabar



### Check Character

**Required** – When enabled, the check character is required. Default is disabled.

**Transmit** – When enabled, the check character is transmitted. Default is disabled.

### Start / Stop Character

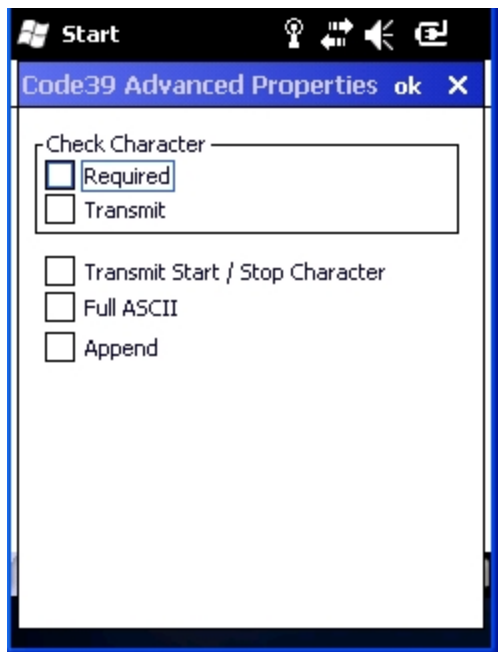
**Transmit** – When enabled, the start / stop characters are transmitted. Default is disabled.

## Code 11



**Check Digits Required** – When enabled, only bar codes with two check digits are decoded. The default is disabled.

## Code 39



### Check Character

**Required** – When enabled, the check character is required. Default is disabled.

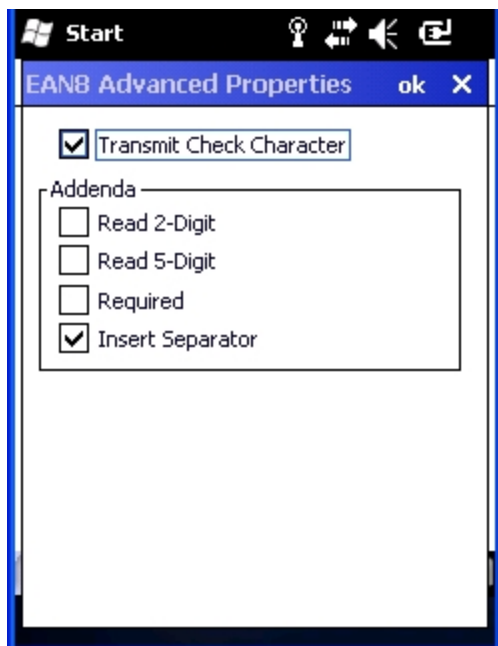
**Transmit** – When enabled, the check character is transmitted. Default is disabled.

**Transmit Start / Stop Character** – When enabled, the start / stop characters are transmitted. Default is disabled.

**Full ASCII** – When enabled, full ASCII interpretation is used. Default is disabled.

**Append** – When enabled, append and buffer codes that start with a space. Default is disabled.

## EAN 8



**Transmit Check Character** – When enabled, transmit the check character. Default is enabled.

### Addenda

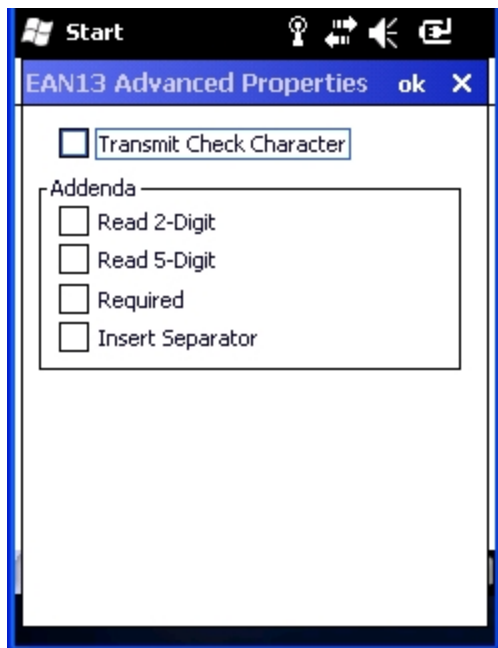
**Read 2-Digit** – When enabled, transmit the 2 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

**Read 5-Digit** – When enable, transmit the 5 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

**Required** – When enabled, only transmit bar codes with a 2 or 5 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

**Insert Separator** – When enabled, insert a space between the code and addenda. Default is enabled.

## EAN 13



**Transmit Check Character** – When enabled, transmit the check character. Default is disabled.

### Addenda

**Read 2-Digit** – When enabled, transmit the 2 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

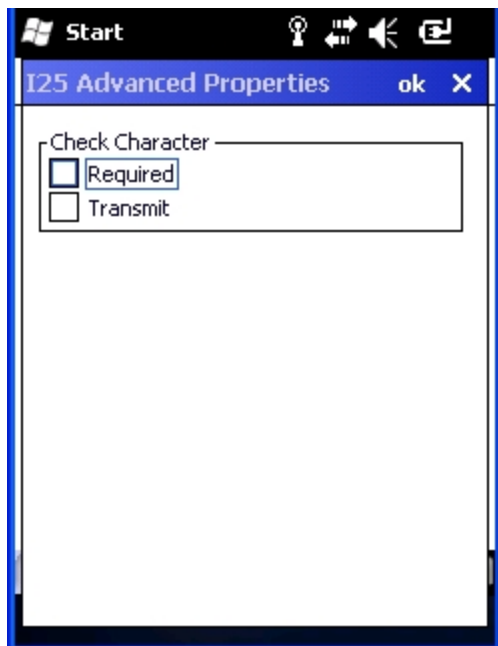
**Read 5-Digit** – When enable, transmit the 5 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

**Required** – When enabled, only transmit bar codes with a 2 or 5 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

**Insert Separator** – When enabled, insert a space between the code and addenda. Default is disabled.

*Note: A UPCA decoding algorithm will also decode EAN 13 labels. For correct operation, either disable the UPCA symbology when using EAN 13 labels or configure the UPCA settings to match the EAN 13 settings.*

## Interleaved 2 of 5

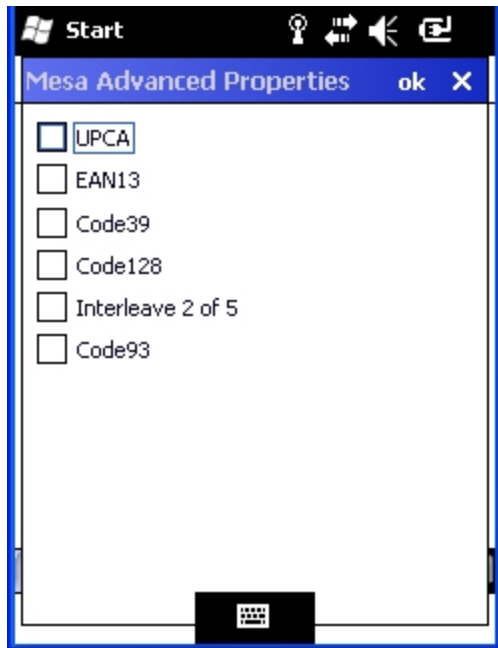


### Check Character

**Required** – When enabled, the check character is required. Default is disabled.

**Transmit** – When enabled, the check character is transmitted. Default is disabled.

## Mesa



**UPCA** – When enabled, decode UPCA Mesa. Default is disabled.

**EAN13** – When enabled, decode EAN 13 Mesa. Default is disabled.

**Code39** – When enabled, decode Code 39 Mesa. Default is disabled.

**Code128** – When enabled, decode Code 128 Mesa. Default is disabled.

**Interleaved 2 of 5** – When enabled, decode Interleaved 2 of 5 Mesa. Default is disabled.

**Code93** – When enabled, decode Code 93 Mesa. Default is disabled.

When the Mesa symbology is chosen on the Symbology panel (the Enable checkbox is checked) the Advanced button must be clicked and the desired Mesa Advanced Properties sub-symbology selected.

When Mesa is disabled on the Symbology panel (the Enable checkbox is cleared), click the Advanced button and uncheck all parameters or sub-symbologies, on the Mesa Advanced Properties panel.

*Note: The root symbology (UPCA, EAN13, Code39, Code128, Interleaved 2 of 5 and/or Code 93) must be enabled before the matching enabled Mesa sub-symbology will decode.*

## MSI Plessey



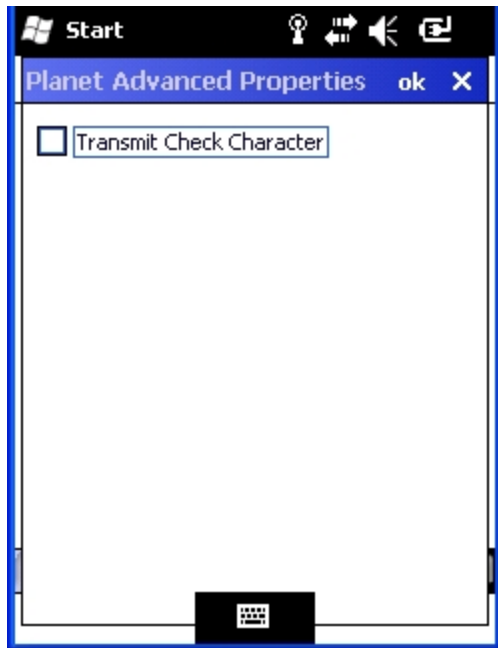
**Transmit Check Character** – When enabled, transmit the check character. Default is enabled.

OCR See Also: "OCR Symbology"



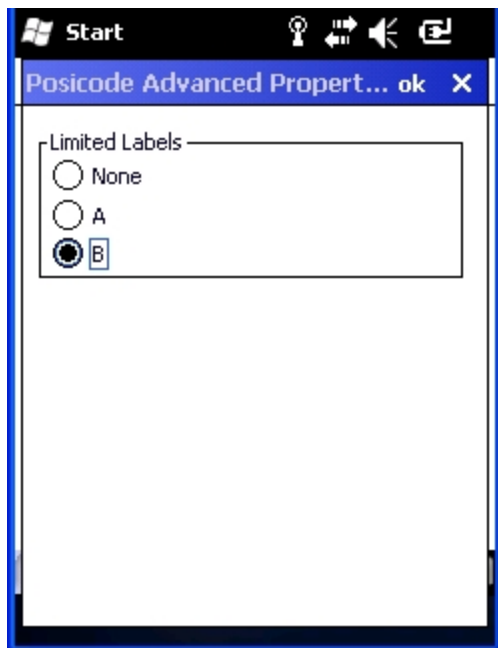
---

## Planet (Postal AlphaNumeric Encoding Technique)



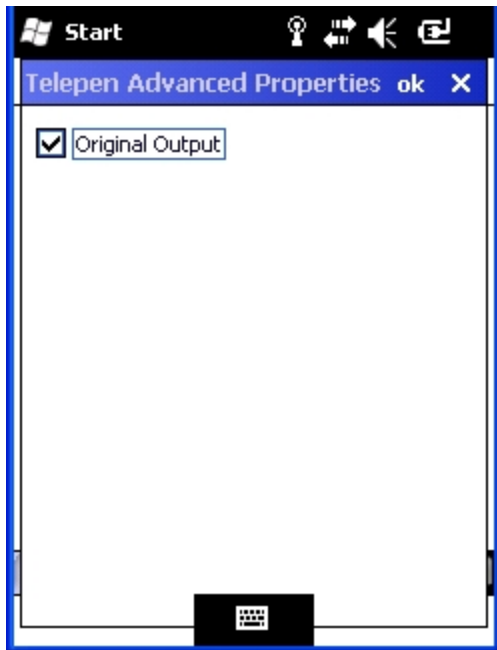
**Transmit Check Character** – When enabled, transmit the check character. Default is disabled.

## Posicode



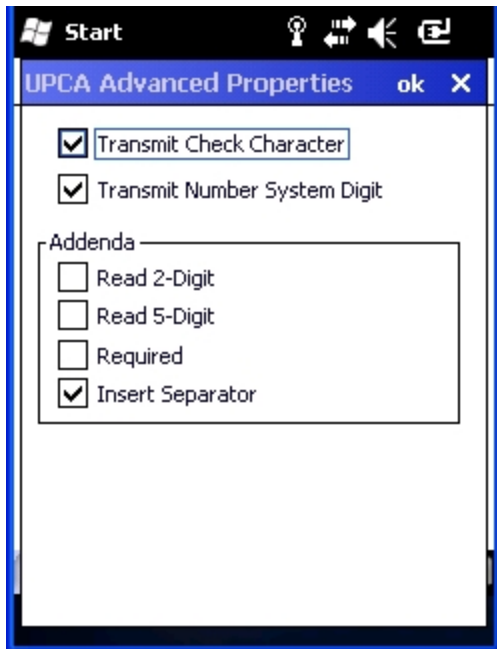
**Limited Labels** – Select the type of Posicode Limited labels:  
None  
A – Posicode Limited A  
B – Posicode Limited B

## Telepen



**Original Output** – When enabled, output is Original Telepen. When disabled, output is AIM. Default is enabled.

## UPCA



**Transmit Check Character** – When enabled, transmit the check character. Default is enabled

**Transmit Number System Digit** – When enabled, transmit the number system digit. Default is enabled.

### Addenda

**Read 2-Digit** – When enabled, transmit the 2 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

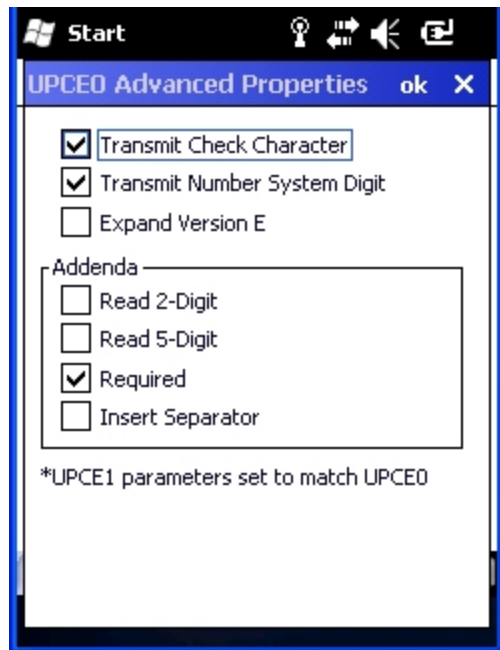
**Read 5-Digit** – When enable, transmit the 5 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

**Required** – When enabled, only transmit bar codes with a 2 or 5 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

**Insert Separator** – When enabled, insert a space between the code and addenda. Default is enabled.

*Note: An EAN 13 decoding algorithm will also decode UPCA labels. For correct operation, either disable the EAN 13 symbology when using UPCA labels or configure the EAN 13 settings to match the UPCA settings.*

## UPCE0



*Note: The UPCE0 and UPCE1 parameters are always set to match each other. Therefore if a change is made to a parameter to either the EPCE0 or UPCE1 Advanced Properties that same change is automatically made to the Advanced Properties for the other symbology.*

*Note: UPCE0 and UPCE1 are enabled as the same symbology at the scanner. Therefore, the only way for UPCE1 configuration to be used is if UPCE0 is disabled. When UPCE0 is disabled, it is scanned by the imager but rejected by Data Collection Wedge.*

**Transmit Check Character** – When enabled, transmit the check character. Default is enabled

**Transmit number System Digit** – When enabled, transmit the number system digit. Default is enabled.

**Expand Version E** – When enabled, expand version E to 12-digit UPCA format. Default is disabled.

### Addenda

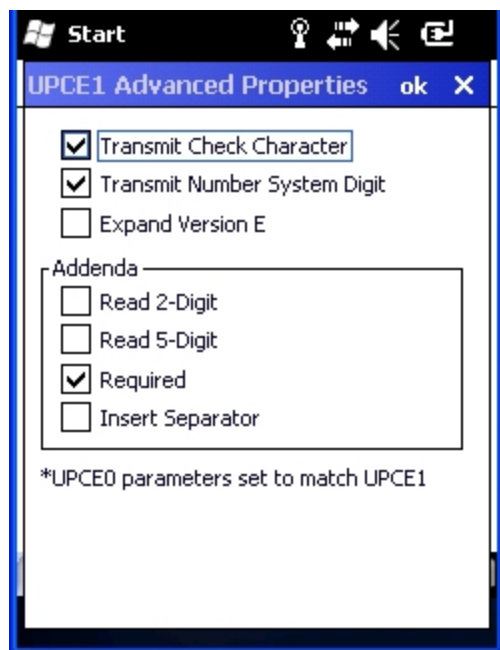
**Read 2-Digit** – When enabled, transmit the 2 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

**Read 5-Digit** – When enable, transmit the 5 digit addenda. Default is disabled.

**Required** – When enabled, only transmit bar codes with a 2 or 5 digit addenda. Default is enabled.

**Insert Separator** – When enabled, insert a space between the code and addenda. Default is disabled.

## UPCE1



## OCR Symbology

**Font** – Font selection:

Disabled

A = OCR A

B = OCR B

Money = OCR Money

MICR = Magnetic Ink Character Recognition

Default is disabled.

**Direction** – Decoder reads OCR fonts in any direction, but setting direction parameter correctly can increase decoding speed:

Left to Right

Top to Bottom

Right to Left

Bottom to Top

Default is Left to Right.

**Template** – Template length must match the length of OCR string to be read.

Valid template selections are:

a - alphanumeric character (digit or letter)

c - check character

d - digits from 0 to 9

e - any character

g - any character specified in group G

h - any character specified in group H

l - alphabetic letter

r - delimits a row

t - delimits multiple templates

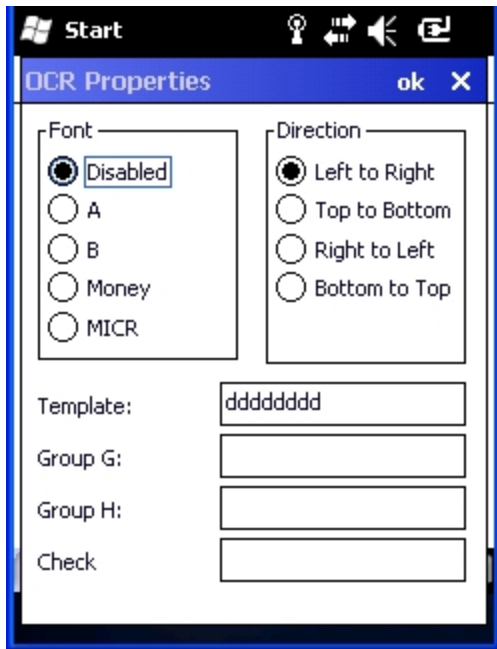
All characters are transmitted as is except for the selected template. Default is dddddddd.

**Group G** – Null terminated string defines the set of characters in group G. The default is null.

**Group H** – Null terminated string defines the set of characters in group H. The default is null.

**Check** – Enter the string constant 0123456789 for modulo10 checksums and the string constant 0123456789ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ for modulo36 checksums.

The default is null.



---

## OCR Template Examples

1. To read a combination of 6 alpha and numeric characters use the following template:  
aaaaaa
2. To read the same string with a modulo 10 check digit in the 7<sup>th</sup> character position, use the following template:  
aaaaaac  
Then enter 0123456789 for the Check parameter.
3. To read either a string of 6 alphabetic letters OR a string of 8 numeric digits, use this template:  
llllltddddddd  
Note the use of the “t” to separate the first template from the second.
4. To read multiple rows of OCR data as shown below:  
123450  
ABCDEF  
Either of the following templates could be used:  
ddddddrlllll or aaaaaaraaaaaa  
Note the use of the “r” to define the position of the second row.

## OCR Checksum Calculation

The following explains how the checksum is generated for the OCR bar code:

### Modulo 10:

1. Add the characters in the string (not including the checksum character). Valid values are 0 – 9 for modulo 10.
2. Subtract 10 from the sum obtained above. Continue subtracting 10 until the remainder is less than 10.
3. The remainder obtained above is the checksum. Enter this digit in the checksum position.

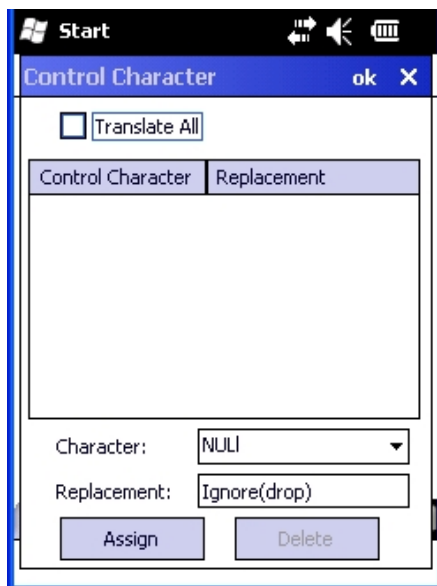
### Modulo 36

1. Add the characters in the string (not including the checksum character). Digit / Alpha values are defined as follows for modulo 36: 0 – 9 = 0 – 9; A = 10, B = 11, ... Z = 25
2. Subtract 36 from the sum obtained above. Continue subtracting 36 until the remainder is less than 36.
3. Subtract the remainder obtained above from 36. The value obtained is the checksum. Enter this character in the checksum position.

---

## Ctrl Char Mapping

The Ctrl Char Mapping button activates a dialog to define the operations the Data Collection Wedge performs on control characters (values less than 0x20) embedded in bar codes. Control characters can be replaced with user-defined text which can include hat encoded or hex encoded values. In key message mode, control characters can also be translated to their control code equivalent key sequences.



---

## Translate All

When Translate All is checked, unprintable ASCII characters (characters below 20H) in scanned bar codes are assigned to their appropriate CTRL code sequence when the bar codes are sent in Character mode.

The wedge provides a one-to-one mapping of control characters to their equivalent control+character sequence of keystrokes. If control characters are translated, the translation is performed on the bar code data, prefix, and suffix before the keystrokes are simulated.

Translate All	This option is grayed unless the user has Key Message mode (on the Main tab) selected. In Key Message mode, when this option is enabled, control characters embedded in a scanned bar code are translated to their equivalent 'control' key keystroke sequence (13 [0x0d] is translated to Control+M keystrokes as if the user pressed the CTRL, SHIFT, and m keys on the keypad). Additionally, when Translate All is disabled, any control code which has a keystroke equivalent (enter, tab, escape, backspace, etc.) is output as a keystroke. Any control code without a keystroke equivalent is dropped.
Character	This is a drop down combo box that contains the control character name. Refer to the Character drop down box for the list of control characters and their names. When a character name is selected from the drop down box, the default text Ignore (drop) is shown and highlighted in the Replacement edit control. Ignore (drop) is highlighted so the user can type a replacement if the control character is not being ignored. Once the user types any character into the Replacement edit control, reselecting the character from the Character drop down box redisplayes the default Ignore (drop) in the Replacement edit control.
Replacement	The edit control where the user types the characters to be assigned as the replacement of the control character. Replacements for a control character are assigned by selecting the appropriate character from the Character drop down box, typing the replacement in the Replacement edit control (according to the formats defined above) and then selecting Assign. The assigned replacement is then added to the list box above the Assign button. For example, if 'Carriage Return' is replaced by Line Feed (by specifying '^J' or '0x0A') in the configuration, the value 0x0d received in any scanned bar code (or defined in the prefix or suffix) will be replaced with the value 0x0a. The Wedge then sends Ctrl+J to the receiving application, rather than Ctrl+M.
List Box	The list box shows all user-defined control characters and their assigned replacements. All replacements are enclosed in single quotes to delimit white space that has been assigned.
Delete	This button is grayed unless an entry in the list box is highlighted. When an entry (or entries) is highlighted, and Delete is selected, the highlighted material is deleted from the list box.

---

## Custom Identifiers

Code IDs can be defined by the user. This allows processing parameters to be configured for bar codes that do not use the standard AIM or Symbol IDs or for bar codes that have data embedded at the beginning of the data that acts like a Code ID.

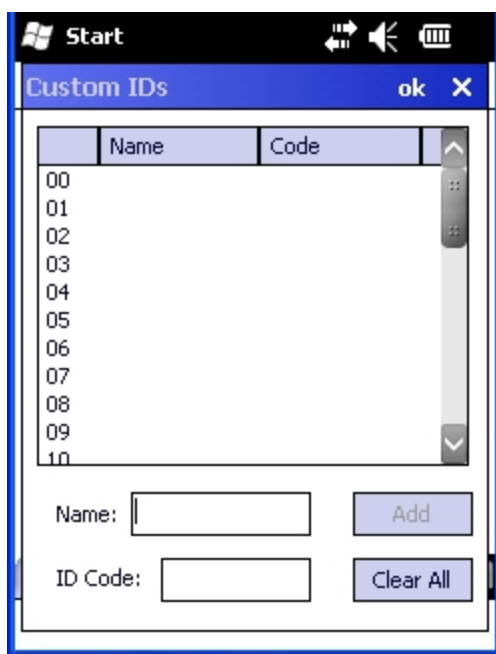
These are called “custom” Code IDs and are included in the Symbology drop down box in the Symbology dialog, unless Enable Code ID is set to None. When the custom Code ID is found in a bar code, the configuration specified for the custom Code ID is applied to the bar code data. The dialog below allows the custom Code IDs to be configured.

It is intended that custom code IDs are used to supplement the list of standard code IDs (if Enable Code ID is set to AIM or Symbol), or to replace the list of standard code IDs (if Enable Code ID is set to Custom).

When Enable Code ID is set to None, custom code IDs are ignored.

*Note: Custom symbologies will appear at the end of the list in the Symbology dialog, and are processed at the beginning of the list in the scanner driver itself. This allows custom IDs based on actual code IDs to be processed before the code ID itself.*

*Note: When Strip: Code ID is enabled, the entire custom Code ID string is stripped (i.e., treated as a Code ID).*



After adding, changing and removing items from the Custom IDs list, tap the ok button to save changes and return to the Barcode panel.



---

## Parameters

### Name text box

Name is the descriptor that is used to identify the custom Code ID. Names must be unique from each other; however, the Name and ID Code may have the same value. Name is used in the Symbology drop down box to identify the custom Code ID in a user-friendly manner. Both Name and ID Code must be specified in order to add a custom Code ID to the Custom IDs list.

### ID Code text box

ID Code defines the data at the beginning of a bar code that acts as an identifier (the actual Code ID). Both Name and ID Code must be specified in order to add a custom Code ID to the Custom IDs list.

## Buttons

Add	Entering data into both the Name and ID Code fields enables the Add button. Tap the Add button and the data is added to the next empty location in the Custom ID list.
Insert	Tap on an empty line in the Custom ID list. The Add button changes to Insert. Enter data into both the Name and ID Code fields and tap the Insert button. The data is added to the selected line in the Custom IDs list.
Edit	Double tap on the item to edit. Its values are copied to the text boxes for editing. The Add button changes to Replace. When Replace is tapped, the values for the current item in the list are updated.
Clear All	When no item in the Custom IDs list is selected, tapping the Clear All button clears the Custom ID list and any text written (and not yet added or inserted) in the Name and ID Code text boxes.
Remove	The Clear All button changes to a Remove button when an item in the Custom IDs list is selected. Tap the desired line item and then tap the Remove button to delete it. Line items are Removed one at a time. Contents of the text box fields are cleared at the same time.

## Control Code Replacement Examples

Configuration data	Translation	Example Control Character	Example configuration	Translated data
Ignore(drop)	The control character is discarded from the bar code data, prefix and suffix	ESCape	'Ignore (drop)'	0x1B in the bar code is discarded.
Printable text	Text is substituted for Control Character.	Start of TeXt	'STX'	0x02 in a bar code is converted to the text 'STX'.
Hat-encoded text	The hat-encoded text is translated to the equivalent hex value.	Carriage Return	'^M'	Value 0x0d in a bar code is converted to the value 0x0d.
Escaped hat-encoded text	The hat-encoding to pass thru to the application.	Horizontal Tab	'^I'	Value 0x09 in a bar code is converted to the text '^I'.
Hex-encoded text	The hex-encoded text is translated to the equivalent hex value.	Carriage Return	'0x0A'	Value 0x0D in a bar code is converted to a value 0x0A.
Escaped hex-encoded text	The hex-encoding to pass thru to the application.	Vertical Tab	'\0x0A' or '0\x0A'	Value 0x0C in a bar code is converted to text '0x0A'

## Bar Code Processing Examples

The following table shows examples of stripping and prefix/suffix configurations. The examples assume that the scanner is configured to transmit an AIM identifier.

	Symbology				
	All	EAN-128 (JC1)	EAN-13 (JE0)	Intriv 2 of 5 (JIO)	Code93
Enable	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Disabled
Min length	1	4	1	1	
Max length	all	all	all	10	
Strip Code ID	Enabled	Enabled	Disabled	Enabled	
Strip Leading	3	0	3	3	
Strip Bar Code Data		'*123'	'1**'	'456'	
Strip Trailing	0	0	3	3	
Prefix	'aaa'	'bbb'	'ccc'	'ddd'	
Suffix	'www'	'xxx'	'yyy'	'zzz'	

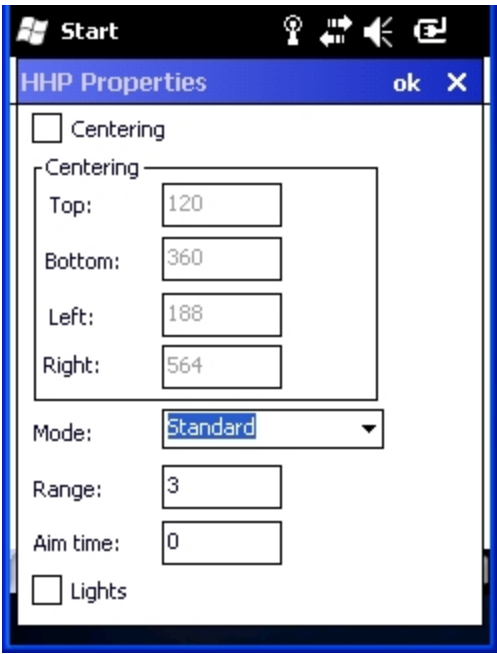
Provided that the wedge is configured with the above table, following are examples of scanned bar code data and results of these manipulations.

Bar Code Symbology	Raw Scanner Data	Resulting Data
EAN-128	]C11234567890123	bbb1234567890xxx
EAN-128	]C111234567890123	bbb11234567890xxx
EAN-128	]C1123	< rejected > (too short)
EAN-13	]E01234567890987	ccc]E04567890yyy
EAN-13	]E01231234567890987	ccc]E0234567890yyy
EAN-13	]E01234	ccc]E0yyy
I2/5	]I04444567890987654321	< rejected > (too long)
I2/5	]I04444567890123	ddd7890zzz
I2/5	]I0444	dddzzz
I2/5	]I022245622	ddd45zzz
Code-93	]G0123456	< rejected > (disabled)
Code-93	]G0444444	< rejected > (disabled)
Code-39	]A01234567890	aaa4567890www
Code-39 full ASCII	]A41231234567890	aaa1234567890www
Code-39	]A4	< rejected > (too short)

Rejected bar codes generate a bad scan beep. In some cases, the receipt of data from the scanner triggers a good scan beep (from the external scanner), and then the rejection of scanned bar code data by the processing causes a bad scan beep on the same data.

# HHP Properties

When the MX9 is equipped with a Hand Held Products imager, this option is used to configure imager parameters.



Option	Action
Centering	<p>The centering feature is used to allow the user to accurately scan a selected bar code among a group of bar codes that are located closely together. When centering is turned on, the imager will only decode bar codes that intersect the centering window defined by the user. The centering window must intersect the center of the bar code.</p> <p>The default centering settings define a 60 pixel square area in the center of the imager's field of view.</p> <p>The default is disabled. When enabled, the following parameters may be entered.</p> <p><b>Top</b> Valid:0 – 239 Default:120</p> <p><b>Bottom</b> Valid:240 – 479 Default:360</p> <p><b>Left</b> Valid:0 – 319 Default:188</p> <p><b>Right</b> Valid:320 – 639 Default:564</p>

Option	Action
Mode	<p>In <i>Standard mode</i> the imager will decode both linear and 2-D symbologies.</p> <p>In <i>Aggressive Linear Decode mode</i> the imager will only read linear symbologies in this mode, but decoding these is faster and more accurate than Standard Mode.</p> <p>In <i>Quick Omni mode</i> the imager searches for a bar code in a reduced field located around the center of the image. Decoding is faster in this mode, but the user must center the aiming line over the bar code to be read. Both linear and 2-D symbologies can be read in this mode.</p> <p>The default is Standard.</p>
Range	<p>Set the linear range.</p> <p>Valid: 1 – 6</p> <p>Default: 3</p> <p>A value of 1 specifies that the linear range that is searched for a readable label is a tight vertical range near the aimer. A value of 6 specifies that the entire height of the image is to be searched.</p>
AIM	<p>Duration of the imager aim beam in 0.1 second increments.</p> <p>Valid: 0 – 50 (0 to 5 seconds)</p> <p>Default: 0</p>
Lights	<p>Specifies if the imager's lights and aimer should be left on during the entire decode process.</p> <p>The default is disabled.</p> <p>If disabled, the lights are turned on only during image capture, then turned off while the imager attempts to process and decode the bar code.</p> <p>If enabled, the aimer and lights remain turned on during the entire process.</p> <p>In Aggressive Linear Decode mode, set this parameter to enabled to improve the aimer visibility. See "Mode" above.</p>

---

## Length Based Bar Code Stripping

Use this procedure to create symbology rules for two bar codes with the same symbology but with different discrete lengths. This procedure is not applicable for bar codes with variable lengths (falling between a maximum value and a minimum value).

### Example 1:

- A normal AIM or Symbol symbology role can be created for the desired bar code ID.
- Next, a custom bar code symbology must be created using the same Code ID as the original AIM or Symbol ID rule and each rule would have unique length settings.

### Example 2:

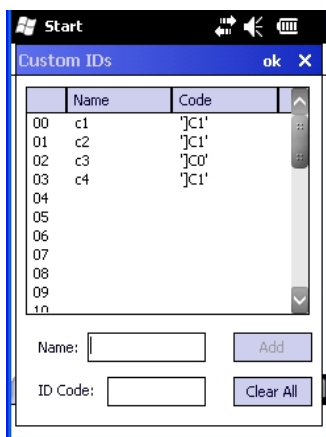
For the purposes of this example, the following sample bar code parameters will be used – EAN 128 and Code 128 bar codes. Some of the bar codes start with '00' and some start with '01'. The bar codes are different lengths.

- 34 character length with first two characters = "01" (strip first 2 and last 18)
- 26 character length with first two characters = "01" (strip first 2 and last 10)
- 24 character length with first two characters = "01" (strip first 2 and last 8). This 24 character bar code is Code 128.
- 20 character length with first two characters = "00" (strip first 0 (no characters) and last 4)

On the Data Options tab, set Enable Code ID to AIM.

Create four custom IDs, using 1 for EAN 128 bar code and 0 for Code 128 bar code.

- c1 = Code = 'JC1'
- c2 = Code = 'JC1'
- c3 = Code = 'JC0' (24 character bar code is Code 128)
- c4 = Code = 'JC1'



AIM custom symbology setup is assigned in the following manner:

- c1 min length = 34, max length = 34, strip leading 2, strip trailing 18, Code ID enabled, Barcode Data = "01"
- c2 min length = 26, max length = 26, strip leading 2, strip trailing 10, Code ID enabled, Barcode Data = "01"
- c3 min length = 24, max length = 24, strip leading 2, strip trailing 8, Code ID enabled, Barcode Data = "01"
- c4 min length = 20, max length = 20, strip leading 0, strip trailing 4, Code ID enabled, Barcode Data = "00"

Add the AIM custom symbologies. Refer to [Symbology Settings](#) for instruction.

Symbology dialog box configuration:

- Code ID: AIM
- Symbology: c1
- Enable: ☒ Min: 34 Max: 34
- Strip:
  - Leading: ☒ 2
  - Trailing: ☒ 18
  - Code ID: ☒
- Barcode Data button
- Add:
  - Prefix:
  - Suffix:

Tap the Barcode Data button. Tap the Add button. Add the data for the match codes.

Barcode Data dialog box configuration:

Match	Value
00	'01'
01	
02	
03	
04	
05	
06	
07	
08	
09	
10	
11	
12	
13	

Buttons: Add, Clear All

Refer to the previous section [Bar Code Data Match List](#) for instruction. Scan a bar code and examine the result.

---

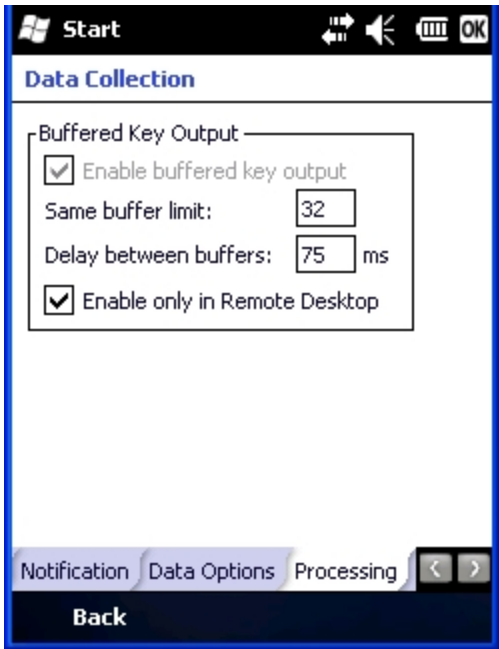
# Processing Tab

The Processing tab contains a user configurable key delay that applies to scanned bar codes as they are input when Remote Desktop is the application with the input focus.

## Factory Default Settings

Enable buffered key output	Enabled
Same buffer limit (characters)	32
Delay between (key) buffers	75 ms
Enable only in Remote Desktop	Enabled

*Note: Settings on this panel have no effect when RFTerm is the application with the input focus.*



## Enable buffered key output

Specifies the number of milliseconds to delay after each character in the scanned bar code is processed as a keystroke. This value may need to be adjusted depending on the network traffic in the environment. The default value is 75 ms. Valid value is from 0 to 9999. A zero value is No Delay between characters.

## Only in Remote Desktop

The delay specified in *buffered key output* is only applied when Remote Desktop is enabled and is the application with the input focus. When disabled, all keystrokes are delayed by the number of milliseconds specified in *buffered key output*.



---

## About Tab

The About tab lists the version of the Data Collection Wedge (DCWedge) software and the type of scanner/imager installed in the MX9.



Symbol Scanner



Hand Held Products Imager

### Valid scanner / imager types:

HHP – Hand Held Products 5300 2D Imager

Symbol - Symbol SE955

Symbol – Symbol SE1524

Blank – No scanner installed

# Hat Encoding

## Hat Encoded Characters Hex 00 through AD

Desired ASCII	Hex Value	Hat Encoded
NUL	0X00	^@
SOH	0X01	^A
STX	0X02	^B
ETX	0X03	^C
EOT	0X04	^D
ENQ	0X05	^E
ACK	0X06	^F
BEL	0X07	^G
BS	0X08	^H
HT	0X09	^I
LF	0X0A	^J
VT	0X0B	^K
FF	0X0C	^L
CR	0X0D	^M
SO	0X0E	^N
SI	0X0F	^O
DLE	0X10	^P
DC1 (XON)	0X11	^Q
DC2	0X12	^R
DC3 (XOFF)	0X13	^S
DC4	0X14	^T
NAK	0X15	^U
SYN	0X16	^V
ETB	0X17	^W
CAN	0X18	^X
EM	0X19	^Y
SUB	0X1A	^Z
ESC	0X1B	^[
FS	0X1C	^\
GS	0X1D	^]
RS	0X1E	^^
US	0X1F	^ (Underscore)
	0X7F	^?
	80	~^@
	81	~^A
	82	~^B
	83	~^C
IND	84	~^D
NEL	85	~^E
SSA	86	~^F
@	AE	~. (Period)
—	AF	~/
°	B0	~0 (Zero)
±	B1	~1

Desired ASCII	Hex Value	Hat Encoded
ESA	87	~^G
HTS	88	~^H
HTJ	89	~^I
VTJ	8A	~^J
PLD	8B	~^K
PLU	8C	~^L
RI	8D	~^M
SS2	8E	~^N
SS3	8F	~^O
DCS	90	~^P
PU1	91	~^Q
PU2	92	~^R
STS	93	~^S
CCH	94	~^T
MW	95	~^U
SPA	96	~^V
EPA	97	~^W
	98	~^X
	99	~^Y
	9A	~^Z
CSI	9B	~^[
ST	9C	~^\
OSC	9D	~^]
PM	9E	~^^
APC	9F	~^ (Underscore)
(no-break space)	A0	~ (Tilde and Space)
ı	A1	~!
€	A2	~"
£	A3	~#
¤	A4	~\$
¥	A5	~%
¦	A6	~&
§	A7	~'
-	A8	~(
©	A9	~)
ª	AA	~*
«	AB	~+
¬	AC	~,
(soft hyphen)	AD	~ (Dash)
×	D7	~W
Ø	D8	~X
Ù	D9	~Y
Ú	DA	~Z

## Hat Encoded Characters Hex AE through FF

Desired ASCII	Hex Value	Hat Encoded
²	B2	~2
³	B3	~3
´	B4	~4
µ	B5	~5
¶	B6	~6
·	B7	~7
¸	B8	~8
¹	B9	~9
º	BA	~:
»	BB	~;
¼	BC	~<
½	BD	~=
¾	BE	~>
¿	BF	~?
À	C0	~@
Á	C1	~A
Â	C2	~B
Ã	C3	~C
Ä	C4	~D
Å	C5	~E
Æ	C6	~F
Ç	C7	~G
È	C8	~H
É	C9	~I
Ê	CA	~J
Ë	CB	~K
Ì	CC	~L
Í	CD	~M
Î	CE	~N
Ï	CF	~O
Ð	D0	~P
Ñ	D1	~Q
Ò	D2	~R
Ó	D3	~S
Ô	D4	~T
Õ	D5	~U
Ö	D6	~V

Desired ASCII	Hex Value	Hat Encoded
Û	DB	~[
Ü	DC	~\
Ý	DD	~]
Þ	DE	~^
ß	DF	~_ (Underscore)
à	E0	~`
á	E1	~a
â	E2	~b
ã	E3	~c
ä	E4	~d
å	E5	~e
æ	E6	~f
ç	E7	~g
è	E8	~h
é	E9	~i
ê	EA	~j
ë	EB	~k
ì	EC	~l
í	ED	~m
î	EE	~n
ï	EF	~o
ð	F0	~p
ñ	F1	~q
ò	F2	~r
ó	F3	~s
ô	F4	~t
õ	F5	~u
ö	F6	~v
÷	F7	~w
ø	F8	~x
ù	F9	~y
ú	FA	~z
û	FB	~{
ü	FC	~
ý	FD	~}
þ	FE	~~
ÿ	FF	~^?

---

# Chapter 7 - Enhanced Launch Utility

## Introduction

The launch utility on the MX9 has two functions:

- Process registry based Launch items
- Process [script based Launch items](#).

The registry based Launch items are processed before the script based Launch items.

## Registry Based Launch Items

*Note: The Registry based Launch items (documented here) are processed before the Script Based Launch items.*

The Launch utility can use registry entries to auto-launch Windows CAB files. These CAB files exist as separate files from the main installation image, and are copied to the device using ActiveSync, or using the optional SD card. The CAB files are copied into the folder System, which is the internal Flash drive. Then, information is added to the registry, if desired, to make the CAB file auto-launch at startup.

The registry information needed is under the key

HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\LXE\Persist

The main subkey is any text, and is a description of the file. Then the values are added:

Value	Need	Data Type	Description
FileName	Required	String	Name of the CAB file, with full path (usually \System)
Installed	Required	DWORD	Starts as 0, changed to 1 when the CAB file is installed
FileCheck	Required	String	File name, with full path, of a file installed by the CAB file. If this file is not found, Launch assumes the CAB file is not installed or memory was lost.
Order	Optional	DWORD	Determines sequence of installation. Order=0 is installed first, order=99 is installed last.
Delay	Optional	DWORD	Delay, in seconds, after this item is installed and before the next one is installed. If the install fails (or is not found) the delay does not occur.
PCMCIA	Optional	DWORD	1=power up PCMCIA/CF slot after installation

---

The auto-launch process is as follows.

1. The launch utility opens the registry database and reads the list of CAB files to auto-launch.
2. First it looks for **FileName** to see if the CAB file is present.
  - If not, the registry entry is ignored.
  - If it is present, and the **Installed** flag is not set, auto-launch makes a copy of the CAB file (since it gets deleted by installation), and runs the Microsoft utility WCELOAD to install it.
3. If the **Installed** flag is set, auto-launch looks for the **FileCheck** file.
  - If it is present, the CAB file is installed and that registry entry is complete..
  - If the **FileCheck** file is not present, memory has been lost, and the utility calls WCELOAD to reinstall the CAB file.
4. This process repeats for the next entry in the registry, until all registry entries are analyzed.

**Notes:**

- To force execution every time, use a **FileCheck** of “dummy”, which is never found, forcing the item to execute. If an **AUTOEXEC.BAT** file is found, the terminal runs it by default.
- For persist keys specifying **.EXE** or **.BAT** files, the executing process is started, and then **Launch** continues, leaving the loading process to run independently.
- For other persist keys (including **.CAB** files), **Launch** waits for the loading process to complete before continuing. This is important, for example, to ensure that a **.CAB** file is installed before the **.EXE** files from the **.CAB** file are run.
- The **Order** field is used to force a sequence of events; **Order=0** is first, and **Order=99** is last. Two items which have the same order are installed in the same pass, but not in a predictable sequence.
- The **Delay** field is used to add a delay after the item is loaded, before the next is loaded. The delay is given in seconds, and defaults to **0** if not specified. If the install fails (or the file to be installed is not found), the delay does not occur.
- The **PCMCIA** field is used to indicate that the file (usually a CAB file) being loaded is a radio driver, and the PCMCIA slots must be started after this file is loaded. By default, the PCMCIA slots are off on power up, to prevent the “Unidentified PCMCIA Slot” dialog from appearing. Once the drivers are loaded, the slot can be turned on. The value in the **PCMCIA** field is a DWORD, representing the number of seconds to wait after installing the CAB file, but before activating the slot (a latency to allow the thread loading the driver to finish installation). The default value of **0** means the slot is not powered on. The default values for the default radio drivers (listed below) is **1**, meaning one second elapses between the CAB file loading and the slot powering up.
- Note that the auto-launch process can also launch batch files (**\*.BAT**), executable files (**\*.EXE**), registry setting files (**\*.REG**), or sound files (**\*.WAV**). The mechanism is the same as listed above, but the appropriate OS application is called, depending on file type.

---

## Launch Startup options

The Launch utility uses registry entries to enable or disable startup options. These flags are located in the registry key:

HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\Software\LXE\Launch

These can be configured using RegEdit. The options are as follows:

Value	Ship Default	Description
LaunchPSM	1	Execute the Persist keys
JumpStart	1	Look for and execute JumpStart scripts
LaunchStart	1	Execute any auto-install files in \System\Startup
TimeService	0	Launches the GrabTime utility as a service, so that the time and date are periodically automatically updated.

It can often be useful to disable these as necessary, to troubleshoot system startup.

## Example

The following example loads and launches RFTerm.

```
;; ----- RFTerm support
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\LXE\Persist\LXE TE]
"FileName"="\System\RFTERM.CAB"
"Installed"=dword:0
"FileCheck"="\WINDOWS\LXE\RFTERM.EXE"
"Order"=dword:11

;; run the app after it has loaded and client device is ready
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\LXE\Persist\RFTERM]
"FileName"="\WINDOWS\LXE\RFTERM.EXE"
"Installed"=dword:0
"FileCheck"="ALWAYSEXEC"
"Order"=dword:40
"Delay"=dword:1
```

---

## Script Based Launch Items

*Note: The Script Based Launch items (documented here) are processed after the [Registry Based Launch](#) items (documented earlier).*

The Enhanced (script based) portion of the Launch utility provides several features:

- Launch .CAB file
- Run .EXE file
- Run .EXE file using specified parameters
- Run .BAT file
- Process .REG file
- Copy file, with or without overwriting of existing file
- Delete file
- Create directory
- Remove directory
- Add / Update a registry field
- Delete a registry field
- Add a registry subkey
- Delete a registry key
- Display an on-screen message; message requires OK to continue
- Conditional commands, based on existence of file or folder
- Conditional commands, based on device type
- End block of conditional commands
- Create a shortcut
- Perform a Suspend/Resume (Restart is not useful in this context)

The script developer has the option of pausing script file execution until the current action completes, or continuing script file processing. The script developer is also able to pause for a specified number of milliseconds between commands.

The utility also processes .REG files, using the same format as the legacy Launch Utility. It does this by calling the RegLoad utility. It can also process .BAT files, by calling the Command Prompt utility.

This utility allows the user to configure separate processing for Suspend/Resume and Cold Boot.

- By default, Enhanced Launch processes both registry entries and scripts, if present. There are registry settings to enable/disable processing of both types of files.
- Script files may have the extension .CLD (for cold boot) or .WRM for warm boot. With this extension, they may be clicked to execute from the File Explorer. When clicked directly, the extensions do not matter (a script ending in .CLD does not have to be preceded by a suspend/resume).

## Enhanced Launch Utility Use

The Enhanced Launch Utility can be used at OS startup to execute commands from a script file or to launch programs. The user can configure scripts or registry entries for different operation after Suspend/Resume and Cold Boot. Use of scripts and registry entries is documented in the following sections.



---

## ***File Names***

From a Cold Boot it looks for `JmpStart.cld` but from a Warm Boot it looks for `JmpStart.wrm`. The Launch program can also be run manually. Unless it is given a file as part of the command line it tries to run `Launch.txt`. The script file may be in ASCII or Unicode.

When trying to find a script file, Launch looks in the following locations (in sequence):

- root directory of the Flash (`\System\JmpStart.xxx`)
- root directory of the SD card (`\SD Card\JmpStart.xxx`).

In addition, a script file can be written (with a `.cld` or `.wrm` extension), and can be double-clicked to run from the File Explorer.

## ***Command line structure***

Each command takes up one line. Every command uses the format:

```
COMMAND,PARAMETER1,PARAMETER2,...etc.
```

Parameters are separated by a single comma. If a parameter requires a comma within it, the whole parameter must be enclosed in quote marks (`"`). Extra spaces are ignored between the comma and the next parameter.

### **For Example**

To delete a file called `Ive, got, commas, in, my, name.txt`, use the command

```
delete,"Ive, got, commas, in, my, name.txt".
```

Enclosing quotes are used to allow commas inside a parameter, but are removed prior to executing the command. Thus, `delete,deleteme.txt` is the same as `delete,"deleteme.txt"`. If a parameter requires a quote mark within it, the whole parameter must first be enclosed within quote marks, and the required quote mark is represented by two quote marks (`""`). For example, to place the message `This is how you display "quote marks"` on the screen, use the command

```
message,This is a heading,"This is how you display ""quote marks""".
```

The case of a command is ignored, so `delete` is the same as `DELETE` and `DeLeTe`.

## ***Comments***

Any line that starts with a semicolon (`;`), a slash (`/`) or an asterisk (`*`) is treated as a comment, and ignored by Launch.

Launch also ignores any extra parameters (more than the required number) in a command. It is not recommended that comments be placed on the end of lines as any future changes could render your script files incompatible.

Blank lines are also ignored.

---

## Commands Supported by Launch

Copy	ElselfFile	IfFile	Mkdir
Delete	EndIf	IfTerm	Rmdir
DelRegData	EndIfFile	Launch	SetRegData
DelRegKey	EndIfTerm	LaunchCmd	SetRegKey
Elself	FCopy	Message	Shortcut

The commands supported by Launch are detailed below. Square brackets indicate that a parameter is optional. Characters in *Italics* represent a variable, and not a literal.

### Copy

#### Description

Copies a file but does not overwrite an existing file.

#### Syntax

**Copy**, *source-file*, *destination-file*

#### Parameters

*source-file*: The file to be copied, including its path  
*destination-file*: The destination path and filename

#### Example

```
copy, \Storage Card\MyData.dat, \Temp\MyData.dat
```

#### Notes

If the destination file already exists, it is not overwritten, and no error is given.

If the source file is blank, a zero-byte file is created.

### Delete

#### Description

Deletes the specified file.

#### Syntax

**Delete**, *source-file*

#### Parameters

*source-file*: The file to be deleted, including its path

#### Example

```
delete, \Temp\MyData.dat
```

---

## DelRegData

### Description

Deletes a specified registry data field.

### Syntax

**Delregdata**, *key*, *subkey*, *field*

### Parameters

*key*: The abbreviated major registry key where you want to delete a field. Can be one of:

- **cr** or **hkcr** (HKEY\_CLASSES\_ROOT)
- **cu** or **hkcu** (HKEY\_CURRENT\_USER)
- **lm** or **hklm** (HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE).

The case of *key* doesn't matter

*subkey*: The subkey that holds the field you want to delete.

*field*: The field that you want to delete.

### Example

```
delregdata, LM, Software\WidgetsPlc\OurApp, AppName
```

### Notes

An error isn't displayed if you specify a non-existent field, but is displayed if you specify a non-existent key or subkey.

---

## DelRegKey

### Description

Deletes a specified registry subkey.

### Syntax

**DelRegKey**, *key*, *subkey*

### Parameters

*key*: The abbreviated major registry key where you want to delete the subkey. Can be one of:

- **cr** or **hkcr** (HKEY\_CLASSES\_ROOT)
- **cu** or **hkcu** (HKEY\_CURRENT\_USER)
- **lm** or **hklm** (HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE).

*subkey*: The case of *key* doesn't matter  
The subkey you want to delete.

### Example

```
delregkey, LM, Software\WidgetsPlc\OurApp
```

### Notes

Deletes the specified subkey and all of its contents (if any).

## ElseIf

### Description

Begins conditional command block, executed only if the previous IF command was FALSE.

### Syntax

```
ElseIf
```

### Parameters

None

### Example

See [IfFile](#) , below

### Notes

Results are unpredictable if not paired properly with **If...** command.

---

## **ElseIfFile**

### **Description**

Begins conditional command block executed only if the file specified in the previous IfFile does not exist.

### **Syntax**

```
ElseIfFile
```

### **Parameters**

None

### **Example**

See [IfFile](#) , below

### **Notes**

Results are unpredictable if not paired properly with **IfFile** command.

## **EndIf**

### **Description**

Ends conditional command block begun with the previous IF command.

### **Syntax**

```
EndIf
```

### **Parameters**

None

### **Example**

See [IfFile](#), below

### **Notes**

Results are unpredictable if not paired properly with **If...** command.

---

## EndIfFile

### Description

Ends conditional command block begun with the previous IF command.

### Syntax

```
EndIfFile
```

### Parameters

None

### Example

See [IfFile](#) , below

### Notes

Results are unpredictable if not paired properly with **IfFile** command.

## EndIfTerm

### Description

Ends conditional command block executed only if the device type specified in **IfTerm** matches.

### Syntax

```
EndIfTerm
```

### Parameters

None

### Example

See [IfTerm](#) , below

### Notes

Results are unpredictable if not paired properly with **IfTerm** command.

---

## FCopy

### Description

Copies a file, overwriting any existing file.

### Syntax

**fcopy**, *source-file*, *destination-file*

### Parameters

*source-file*: The file to be copied, including its path

*destination-file*: The destination path and filename

### Example

```
fcopy, \Storage Card\MyData.dat, \Temp\MyData.dat
```

### Notes

If the destination file already exists it is overwritten.

If the source file is blank, a zero-byte file is created.

---

## **IfFile**

### **Description**

Begins the conditional execution of a block of commands only if the specified file exists.

### **Syntax**

```
IfFile, file
```

### **Parameters**

*file*: The path and filename to determine if the commands should be executed

### **Example**

```
IfFile, \System\MyData.dat
    any number of commands, executed if file exists
ElseIfFile
    any number of commands, executed if file does not exist
EndIfFile
```

### **Notes**

If the file already exists the commands are executed.

This test does not care if file is a file or directory.

Nesting is supported.



---

## IfTerm

### Description

Begins the conditional execution of a block of commands only if the terminal matches the specified terminal type.

### Syntax

```
IfTerm, terminal
```

### Parameters

*terminal*: The terminal type to determine if the commands should be executed

### Example

```
IfTerm, MX3X
    any number of commands
EndIfTerm
```

### Notes

If the terminal type is identical (not case-dependent) the commands are executed.

Nesting with **IfFile** is supported. Nesting with **IfTerm** is meaningless.

## Launch

### Description

Runs a program.

### Syntax

```
Launch, program, wait-code
```

### Parameters

*program*: The full path and filename of the program to be run.

*wait-code* Tells Launch how to behave when the program is running.

**w(ait)** causes Launch to stop processing the script until the program has finished executing.

**c(ontinue)** makes Launch continue processing the script while the program is executing.

### Example

```
launch, \Windows\Calc.exe, w
```

### Notes

This differs from **LaunchCmd** in that **Launch** has no parameters.

---

## LaunchCmd

### Description

Runs a program with arguments.

### Syntax

**Launchcmd**, *program*, *arguments*, *wait-code*

### Parameters

*program*: The full path and filename of the program to be run.  
*wait-code* Tells Launch how to behave when the program is running.  
**w(ait)** causes Launch to stop processing the script until the program has finished executing.  
**c(ontinue)** makes Launch continue processing the script while the program is executing.  
*arguments*: The command line arguments for program.

### Example

```
launchcmd, \Windows\Pword.exe, \My Documents\Doc1.doc, w
```

### Notes

This differs from **Launch** in that **LaunchCmd** allows parameters.

## Message

### Description

Displays a message on the screen.

### Syntax

**Message**, *message-title*, *message-body*

### Parameters

*message-title*: A heading for the message. Can be left empty.  
*message-body*: The main body of the message. To display a message over multiple lines, use the \n character combination at the end of each line. To display a single backslash use two together (\\).

### Example

```
message, This is a message, "This is the first line, \nand this is the second"
```

### Notes

Displaying a message pauses the execution of the script file until the message is OK'd. This is displayed with a modal dialog.

---

## Mkdir

### Description

Creates a directory.

### Syntax

**Mkdir**, *dir*

### Parameters

*dir*: The full path and name of the directory to be created.

### Example

```
mkdir, \Program Files\MyApp
```

### Notes

A new directory cannot be created if its parent directory doesn't exist.

For example, to create a directory called *MyApp* with a subdirectory called *SubDir1*, use **mkdir, MyApp** followed by **mkdir, MyApp\SubDir1**.

## Rmdir

### Description

Removes a directory.

### Syntax

**Rmdir**, *dir*

### Parameters

*dir*: The full path and name of the directory to be removed.

### Example

```
rmdir, \Program Files\MyApp
```

### Notes

A directory cannot be removed if it contains files or subdirectories.

---

## SetRegData

### Description

Adds or updates a data field in the registry.

### Syntax

**Setregdata**, *key*, *subkey*, *type*, *field*, *data* [, *data2*] [, *data3*] ...

### Parameters

<i>key</i> :	The abbreviated major registry key where you want to create/update the subkey. Can be one of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>cr</b> or <b>hkcr</b> (HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT)</li><li>• <b>cu</b> or <b>hkcu</b> (HKEY_CURRENT_USER)</li><li>• <b>lm</b> or <b>hklm</b> (HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE).</li></ul>
<i>subkey</i> :	The case of <i>key</i> doesn't matter The subkey you want to create/update a field in.
<i>type</i> :	The data type of the field you wish to create/update. Can be s (for string value), dd (for decimal value), dx (for hexadecimal value) or b (for binary value). The case of <i>type</i> doesn't matter. If you're altering an existing field, <i>type</i> can be different from the current type
<i>field</i> :	The name of the new field to be created/updated.
<i>data</i> :	The value of the field being created. This depends on the <i>type</i> of field. Binary fields can have many values (up to 2000 bytes). In this case the data field holds the number of bytes in the binary field, and each byte is given as a subsequent parameter in hexadecimal ( <i>data2</i> , <i>data3</i> etc.).

### Example

```
Setregdata,LM,WidgetsPlc\Info,s,AppName,The Widget Program
```

```
Setregdata,LM,WidgetsPlc\Info,dx,HexField,FA5B
```

```
Setregdata,LM,WidgetsPlc\Info,b,5,d3,62,58,f1,9c
```

---

## SetRegKey

### Description

Adds a sub key to the registry.

### Syntax

**Setregkey**, *key*, *subkey*

### Parameters

*key*: The abbreviated major registry key where you want to create the subkey. Can be one of:

- **cr** or **hkcr** (HKEY\_CLASSES\_ROOT)
- **cu** or **hkcu** (HKEY\_CURRENT\_USER)
- **lm** or **hklm** (HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE).

The case of *key* doesn't matter

*subkey*: The subkey you want to create.

### Example

Setregkey, LM, Software\MyApp

### Notes

Attempting to create a key that already exists does not cause an error.

---

## Shortcut

### Description

Creates a shortcut.

### Syntax

**Shortcut**, *name*, *target*

### Parameters

*name*: The path and name of the shortcut file. The file name must end in .lnk for Windows to recognize it as a shortcut.

*target*: The target of the shortcut. If the target has a space in it quote marks must be used (see Command Line Structure section and example below).

### Example

```
shortcut, \Program Files\Widget.lnk, """"\My App\Widget.exe""""
```

### Notes

No validation is performed on target to be sure it is executable.

---

## Launch Error Messages

Launch displays a message if it encounters an error during the processing of a script. It is possible to get cascading error messages, as Launch does not stop processing the script if it encounters an error. An example of this would be a failure creating a directory causing the failure of all files copied to that directory.

Here is a list of the possible error messages that could be given:

Error Message	Given by	Description
Bad wait code wait-code	Launch LaunchCmd	The wait-code wasn't recognized
Directory Creation Failed error-code	Mkdir	There was a problem encountered creating the directory
Directory Removal Failed error-code	Rmdir	There was a problem encountered removing the directory
Error reading script file	-	An error occurred reading the script file.
File Copy Failed error-code	Copy Fcopy	There was a problem encountered copying the file
File Delete Failed error-code	Delete	There was a problem encountered deleting the file
Invalid Command: command	-	The command wasn't recognized
Invalid Data Length data	SetRegData	Tried to set more than 2000 byte values in a binary field
Invalid Data Type type	SetRegData	The value of the type parameter is invalid
Invalid decimal data data	SetRegData	The data field doesn't contain decimal data
Invalid hex data data	SetRegData	The data field doesn't contain hexadecimal data
Invalid Registry Key key	DelRegData DelRegKey SetRegData DelRegKey	The key parameter to the command has not been recognized
Parms: Invalid Create Directory	Mkdir	Not enough parameters were supplied.
Parms: Invalid Create RegistryKey	SetRegKey	Not enough parameters were supplied.
Parms: Invalid Create Shortcut	Shortcut	Not enough parameters were supplied.
Parms: Invalid Delete RegistryData	DelRegData	Not enough parameters were supplied.
Parms: Invalid Delete Registry Key	DelRegKey	Not enough parameters were supplied.
Parms: Invalid File Copy	Copy Fcopy	Not enough parameters were supplied.
Parms: Invalid File Delete	Delete	Not enough parameters were supplied.
Parms: Invalid Program Name	Launch LaunchCmd	Not enough parameters were supplied.

Error Message	Given by	Description
Parms: Invalid Remove Directory	Rmdir	Not enough parameters were supplied.
Parms: Invalid Set Registry Data	SetRegData	Not enough parameters were supplied.
Parms: Invalid User Message	Message	Not enough parameters were supplied.
Program Launch couldn't get Exit-Code error-code	Launch LaunchCmd	There was a problem getting the exit status of the program.
Program Launch Failed error-code	Launch LaunchCmd	There was a problem executing the program.
Registry Key Create Failed error-code	SetRegKey	There was a problem creating the registry key given.
Registry Key Delete Failed error-code	DelRegKey	There was a problem deleting the registry key given.
Registry Value Delete Failed error-code	DelRegData	There was a problem deleting the registry data. Most likely a bad sub-key.
Registry Value Set Failed error-code	SetRegData	There was a problem setting the registry data. Most likely a bad sub-key.
Shortcut Creation Failed error-code	Shortcut	There was a problem encountered creating the shortcut.
Unable to open file script-file	-	There was a problem opening the script-file. This message is only displayed when manually running Launch.



---

## Example Script File

```
iffile, \System\applock.cab
launchcmd, \Windows\wceload.exe, "/noaskdest /noui \System\applock.cab", w
launch, \Windows\applockprep.exe, c
endiffile
launchcmd, \Windows\wceload.exe, "/noaskdest /noui \System\wedge.cab", w
iffile, \System\summit.cab
launchcmd, \Windows\wceload.exe, "/noaskdest /noui \System\summit.cab", w
endiffile
iffile, \System\RFTerm.cab
launchcmd, \Windows\wceload.exe, "/noaskdest /noui \System\RFTerm.cab", w
endiffile
iffile, \System\Java.cab
launchcmd, \Windows\wceload.exe, "/noaskdest /noui \System\Java.cab", w
launchcmd, \Windows\wceload.exe, "/noaskdest /noui \Windows\Jeode.cab", w
endiffile
launch, \System\regrest.exe, w
coldboot
```

---

# Chapter 8 - Enabler Installation and Configuration

## Introduction

This section discusses Honeywell supported features with Wavelink Avalanche Mobile Device Servers. This section is split into three basic areas:

- Installation
- User Interface
- Enabler Configuration

## Installation

To use the Wavelink Avalanche MC System, the following items are required:

- A desktop or laptop PC on which to install the Avalanche MC Console.
- A desktop or laptop PC on which to install the Avalanche Mobile Device Server (this can be the same PC where the Avalanche MC Console is installed).
- Wavelink Avalanche MC Console 4.2 or later.
- A Wavelink Device License for each client device.

To use Avalanche Remote Control, the follow additional items are required:

- Wavelink Remote Control plug-in, 2.0 or later
- A Wavelink Remote Control License for each client device

## Installing the Enabler on Mobile Devices

Supported devices have the Avalanche Enabler installation files loaded, but not installed, on the mobile device when it is shipped. The installation files are located in the \System folder.

**Note:** ***Important:** If the user is NOT using Wavelink Avalanche to manage their mobile device(s), the Enabler should not be installed on the mobile device(s). Doing so results in unnecessary delays when booting the device.*

The Avalanche Enabler installation file ENABLER.CAB is loaded on the MX9 by Honeywell; however, the device is not configured to launch the Enabler installation file automatically. The installation application must be run manually the first time Avalanche is used.

After installation the Enabler will run as a background application monitoring for updates. This behavior can be modified by accessing the Avalanche Update Settings panel through the Enabler Interface.

The RMU.CE.CAB file is placed on the device during manufacturing in the \System\RMU folder.

During the Enabler installation process, the Enabler checks for the RMU.CE.CAB file in the \System folder.

- If present, it assumes the RMU.CE.CAB file is already installed and continues.
- If the file RMU.CE.CAB file is not present, it looks for the file in the \System\RMU folder.
- If present, the Enabler copies the file to the \System folder and installs it.

At this point, the OS will automatically install the RMU (Remote Management Utility) after the MX9 reboots.

---

## Enabler Uninstall Process

To remove the Avalanche Enabler from the MX9:

- Delete the Avalanche folder located in the \System directory.
- Warm boot the MX9.

The Avalanche folder cannot be deleted while the Enabler is running. See [Stop the Enabler Service](#).

If sharing errors occur while attempting to delete the Avalanche folder, warm boot the MX9, immediately delete the Avalanche folder, and then perform another warm boot.

## *Stop the Enabler Service*

To stop the Enabler from monitoring for updates from the Mobility Center Console:

1. Open the Enabler Settings Panels by tapping the Enabler icon on the MX9 desktop.
2. Select **File > Settings**.
3. Select the **Preferences** tab.
4. Select **Do not monitor** to prevent automatic monitoring upon **Startup**.
5. Select **Exit Application** for an immediate shutdown of all Enabler update functionality upon exiting the user interface.
6. Click the **OK** button to save the changes.
7. **Reboot** the MX9 if necessary.

## Update Monitoring Overview

There are three methods by which the Enabler on the MX9 can communicate with the Mobile Device Server running on the host machine.

- Wired via a serial cable between the Mobile Device Server PC and the MX9.
- Wired via a USB connection, using ActiveSync, between the Mobile Device Server PC and the MX9.
- Wirelessly via the MX9 2.4GHz radio and an access point

After installing the Enabler on the MX9 the Enabler searches for a Mobile Device Server, first by polling all available serial ports and then over the wireless network.

The Enabler running on the MX9 will attempt to access COM1, COM2, and COM3. "Agent not found" will be reported if the Mobile Device Server is not located or a serial port is not present or available (COM port settings can be verified using bar code wedge panels on the MX9).

The wireless connection is made using the default wireless [radio] interface on the mobile device therefore the MX9 must be actively communicating with the network for this method to succeed.

If a Mobile Device Server is found, the Enabler automatically attempts to apply all wireless and network settings from the active profile. The Enabler also automatically downloads and processes all available packages.

If the Enabler does not automatically detect the Mobile Device Server, the IP address of the Mobile Device Server can be entered on the Connect tab of the Enabler setup. Please see [Enabler Configuration](#) for details.

---

## Mobile Device Wireless and Network Settings

Once the connection to the Mobile Device Server is established, the MX9 Enabler attempts to apply all network and wireless settings contained in the active profile.

The success of the application of settings is dependent upon the local configuration of control parameters for the Enabler.

These local parameters cannot be overridden from the Avalanche MC Console.

The default Enabler adapter control settings are:

- Manage network settings – enabled
- Use Avalanche network profile – enabled
- Manage wireless settings – disabled for Windows CE devices

To configure the Avalanche Enabler management of the network and wireless settings:

1. Open the Enabler Settings Panels by tapping the **Enabler icon** on the desktop.
2. Select **File > Settings**.
3. Select the **Adapters** tab.
4. Choose settings for the **Use Manual Settings** parameter.
5. Choose settings for **Manage Network Settings**, **Manage Wireless Settings** and **Use Avalanche Network Profile**.
6. Click the **OK button** to save the changes.
7. **Reboot** the device.

## Preparing a Device for Remote Management

Two additional utilities are necessary for remote management.

- The **Remote Management Utility (RMU)** must be installed on all mobile devices first – then you can control mobile device reboot, storage RAM adjustment, real-time updates and Avalanche Enabler properties.  
If in doubt, verify RMU.CE.CAB exists in the \System folder. If the RMU.CE.CAB file is present when the Enabler is installed, the RMU is also installed.

**Important:** If the OS package includes double-byte Asian fonts, the storage RAM property of the RMU must be higher than the default value (40MB).

If the amount of storage RAM is too low, the Enabler returns a “Mobile unit out of resources” error.

To determine the minimum value required, inspect the RMU.StorageSpaceAvailable>=nn parameter in the Criteria field for the OS package. Generally, this setting should be approximately the amount of storage space available on the Storage Card.

For example, if after installing all the software, the device shows 5MB in use, this setting should be about 45MB for a standard OS, 55 MB for an Asian font OS.

- Use the **Wireless Configuration Application (WCA)** when you want to remotely manage the Summit client device. This utility is downloaded and installed in addition to the Remote Management Utility. The WCA is included when the Summit radio driver software is updated. The WCA is automatically installed when the radio driver is updated.

---

## User Interface

The Enabler can be configured and controlled manually through the user interface on the MX9. This section details the functionality that can be controlled by the user or system administrator.

### Parameters and Screen Displays

Screen displays shown in this section are designed to present the end-user with information graphically.

Placement of information on the screen displays may be split between one or many tabbed panels.

Standard Avalanche Enabler parameters that are not supported by Honeywell may be missing or dimmed (visible but unable to be edited) on the tabbed panels or screen displays.

## Enabler Configuration



Enabler Settings Icon

The Enabler user interface application is launched by clicking either the **Enabler Settings icon** on the desktop or Taskbar or by selecting **Avalanche Enabler** from the Programs menu.


The opening screen presents the MX9 user with the connection status and a navigation menu.



*Note: Some parameters and features described in this section may not be available if you are not running the latest version of the Enabler. Contact [technical assistance](#) for upgrades.*

---

## File Menu Options

<b>Connect</b>	The Connect option under the File menu allows the user to initiate a manual connection to the Mobile Device Server. The connection methods, by default, are wireless and COM connections. Any updates available will be applied to the MX9 immediately upon a successful connection.
<b>Scan Config</b>	<i>Scan Configuration feature not supported.</i> The Scan Config option under the File menu allows the user to configure Enabler settings using a special bar code that can be created using the Avalanche MC Console utilities. Refer to the Wavelink Avalanche Mobility Center User Guide for details.
<b>Settings</b>	<p>The Settings option under the File menu allows the MX9 user to access the control panel to locally configure the Enabler settings. The Enabler control panel is, by default, password protected.</p>  <p>The default Settings password is</p> <p><b>system</b></p> <p>The password is not case-sensitive.</p>

---

## Avalanche Update using File > Settings

Use these menu options to setup the Avalanche Enabler on the MX9. Change the settings and then save the changes (reboot) before connecting to the network.

Alternatively, the Mobile Device Server can be disabled until needed (refer to the **Wavelink Avalanche Mobility Center User's Guide** for details).

### Menu Options

*Note:* Your MX9 screen display may not be exactly as shown in the following menu options. Contact [technical assistance](#) for version information and upgrade availability.

Connection	Enter the IP Address or host name of the Mobile Device Server. Set the order in which serial ports or RF connections are used to check for the presence of the Mobile Device Server.
Execution	<i>Not available in this release.</i> Use AppLock instead, which is resident on each Windows device.
Server Contact	Setup synchronization, scheduled Mobile Device Server contact, suspend and reboot settings.
Data	Control when data is transferred between the device and the Mobile Device Server.
Preferences	Set options for Enabler startup or shutdown and logging.
Taskbar	Set options for Taskbar.
Scan Config	This option allows the user to configure Enabler settings using a special bar code that is created by the Avalanche MC Console. <i>Scan Config not currently supported.</i>
Display	Set up the Windows display at startup, on connect and during normal mode. The settings can be adjusted by the user.
Shortcuts	Add, delete and update shortcuts to user-allowable applications.
SaaS	Configure the Enabler to connect with Avalanche on Demand.
Adapters	Enable or disable network and wireless settings. Select an adapter and switch between the Avalanche Network Profile and manual settings.
Status	View the current adapter signal strength and quality, IP address, MAC address, SSID, BSSID and Link speed. The user cannot edit this information.



## Connection

**Avalanche**

Avalanche Server Address:

☐ Check serial connection.

☐ Disable ActiveSync

☐ Restrict Adapter Link Speed

Min. Link Speed:  kbs

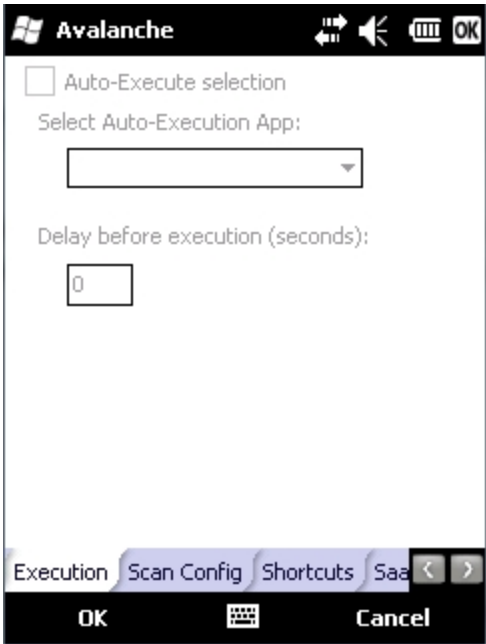
Connection Server Contact Data Pre < >

OK Cancel

Avalanche Server Address	Enter the IP Address or host name of the Mobile Device Server assigned to the MX9.
Check Serial Connection	Indicates whether the Enabler should first check for serial port connection to the Mobile Device Server before checking for a wireless connection to the Mobile Device Server.
Disable ActiveSync	Disable ActiveSync connection with the Mobile Device Server.
Restrict Adapter Link Speed	Default is disabled. Minimum Link Speed dimmed.

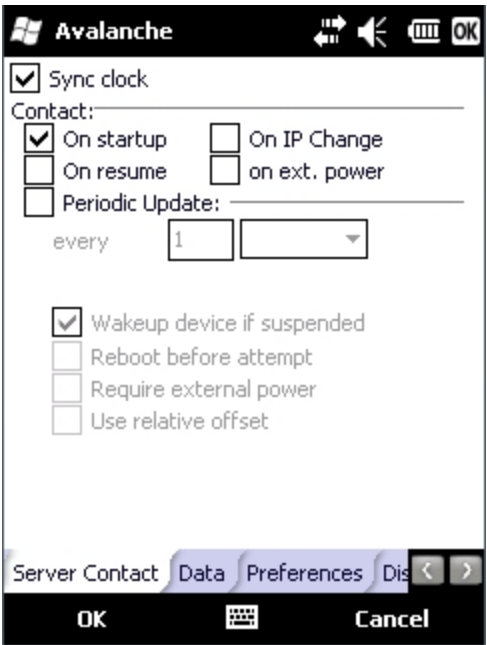
## Execution

Note the dimmed options on this MX9 panel. This menu option is designed to manage downloaded applications for automatic execution upon startup.



Auto-Execute Selection	An application that has been installed with the Avalanche Management system can be run automatically following each boot.
Select Auto-Execute App	The drop-down box provides a list of applications that have been installed with the Avalanche Management System.
Delay before execution	Time delay before launching Auto-Execute application.

Server Contact



*Note:* Your MX9 screen display may not be exactly as shown above. Contact [technical assistance](#) for upgrade availability and version information.

Sync Clock	Reset the time on the MX9 based on the time on the Mobile Device Server host PC.
Contact	On Startup – Connect to the Mobile Device Server when the Enabler is accessed.
	On Resume – Connect to the Mobile Device Server when resuming from Suspend mode.
	On Ext. Power – Initiate connection to the Mobile Device Server when the device is connected to an external power source, such as based on a docking event.
Periodic Update	Allows the administrator to configure the Enabler to contact the Mobile Device Server and query for updates at a regular interval beginning at a specific time.
Wakeup device if suspended	If the time interval for periodic contact with the Mobile Device Server occurs, a mobile device that is in Suspend Mode can wakeup and process updates.
Reboot before attempt	Reboot mobile device before attempting to contact Mobile Device Server.
Require external power	Only connect when the mobile device has external power.
Use relative offset	Dimmed.

## Data

The screenshot shows the 'Avalanche' configuration window with the 'Data' tab selected. The window has a title bar with the 'Avalanche' logo and standard window controls. The 'Data' tab is highlighted in the bottom navigation bar. The configuration options are as follows:

- ☐ Transfer Data When Device is Idle
  - Idle Timeout: 5 minute(s)
- ☒ Real-time Statistics:
  - Report: 1 hour(s)
- ☐ Retransmit After Server Contact

The bottom of the window features an 'OK' button, a keyboard icon, and a 'Cancel' button.

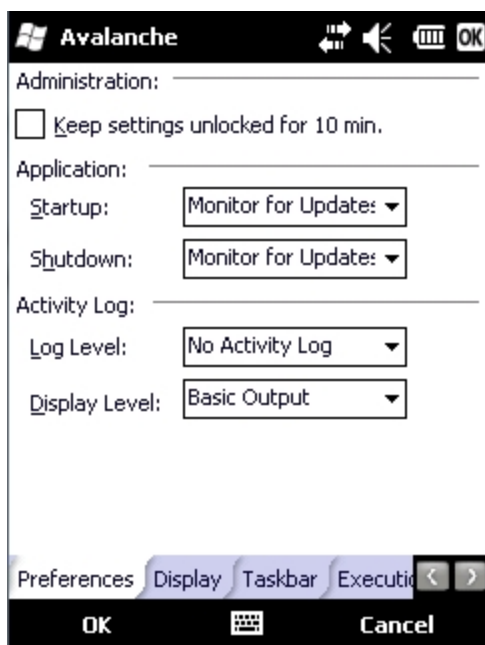
The Data tab controls when data is transferred between the MX9 and the Mobile Device Server.

Transfer Data When Device is Idle	When enabled, periodic updates from the Mobile Device Server are postponed until the MX9 has been idle for the specified period of time. The default is disabled.
Idle timeout	Specify the length of time the device must be idle before a periodic update can run, used when the parameter above is enabled.
Real-time Statistics	When checked, the statistics are transmitted over the network by the Enabler.
Report	Specifies the Report Interval, how frequently the Enabler reports statistics to the Mobile Device Server.
Retransmit After Server Contact	Specifies if the device sends statistics to the Mobile Device Server immediately following a connection to the server.

---

## Preferences

For best results, use *AppLock* to manage the taskbar. AppLock is resident on each mobile device.



### Administration

By default, *Keep settings unlocked for 10 minutes* is disabled (checkbox is blank).

### Application

Startup	<p>Behavior of the Enabler when the MX9 boots up. The default is Monitor for Updates.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Do not Monitor - When the device boots, do not launch the Enabler application and do not attempt to connect to the Mobile Device Server.</li><li>• Monitor for Updates - Attempt to connect to the Mobile Device Server and process any updates that are available. Do not launch the Enabler application.</li><li>• Launch User Interface - Attempt to connect to the Mobile Device Server and process any updates that are available. Launch the Enabler application.</li></ul>
Shutdown	<p>Behavior of the monitor when the Enabler is exited. The default is Monitor for Updates.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Monitor for Updates - Attempt to connect to the Mobile Device Server and process any updates that are available. Do not launch the Enabler application.</li><li>• Exit Application - Terminates the monitor (requires successful password entry if a password has been configured).</li></ul>

---

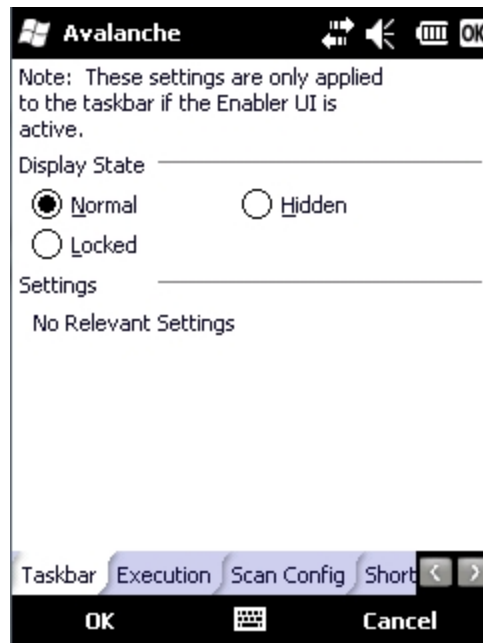
## Activity Log

Log Level	<p>Use this option to control the level of detail recorded in the log file. The default is No Activity Log.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• No Activity Log - No log file is written.</li><li>• Critical - Only critical errors written to the log files.</li><li>• Error - Communication or configuration problems are written to the log file along with critical messages.</li><li>• Warning - Possible operation problems are written to the log file along with critical and error messages.</li><li>• Info - Operational information is written to the log file.</li><li>• Debug - The most detailed log file.</li></ul>
Display Level	<p>Use this option to control the level of detail shown on the main Enabler screen. The default is Basic Output.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Basic Output - General information is displayed.</li><li>• Critical - Critical errors are displayed in addition to those above.</li><li>• Error - Communication or configuration problems are displayed in addition to those above.</li><li>• Warning - Possible operation problems are displayed in addition to those above.</li><li>• Info - Operational information is displayed in addition to those above.</li><li>• Debug - The most detailed list is displayed.</li></ul>

---

## Taskbar

For best results use AppLock to manage the taskbar. AppLock is resident on each mobile device.



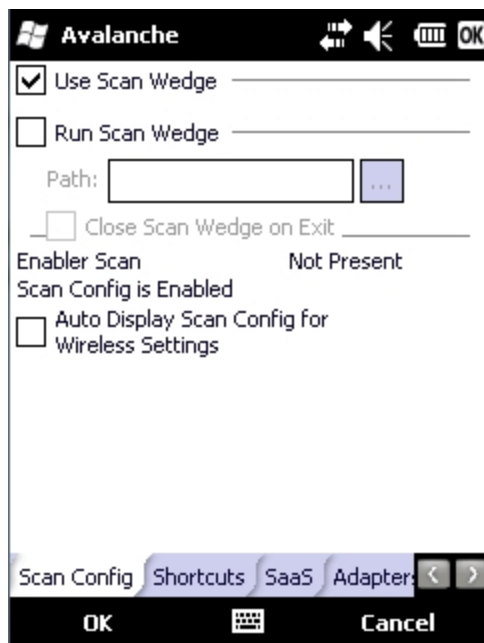
The Display State options control the appearance of the taskbar while using the Enabler interface.

- Normal - taskbar is visible, taskbar icons function normally.
- Hidden - taskbar is not displayed
- Locked - taskbar is visible, but most icons are hidden or for information only.

---

## Scan Config

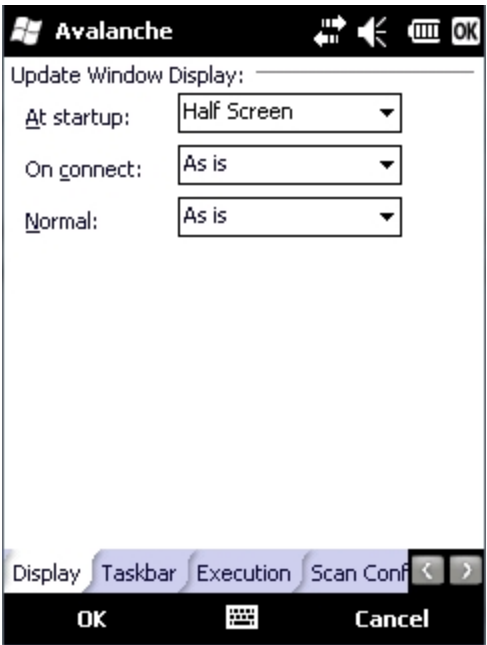
For best results use *eXpress Config* and *eXpress Scan* for this function. eXpress Scan is included with the updated MX9 enablers.



Scan Config functionality is a standard option of the Wavelink Avalanche MC system but is *not currently supported* on the MX9.



# Display



## Update Window Display

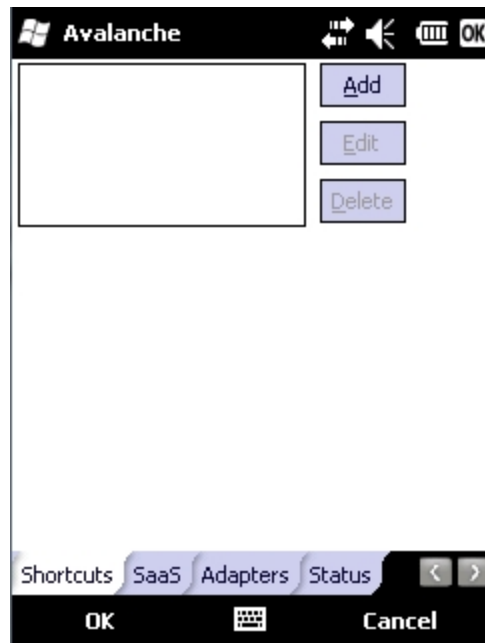
The user interface for the Enabler can be configured to dynamically change based on the status of the MX9 connection with the Mobile Device Server.

At startup	Default is Half Screen. Options are Half screen, Hidden or Full screen.
On connect	Default is As Is. Options are As is, Half screen, or Full screen.
Normal	Default is As Is. Options are Half screen, Hidden or As Is.

---

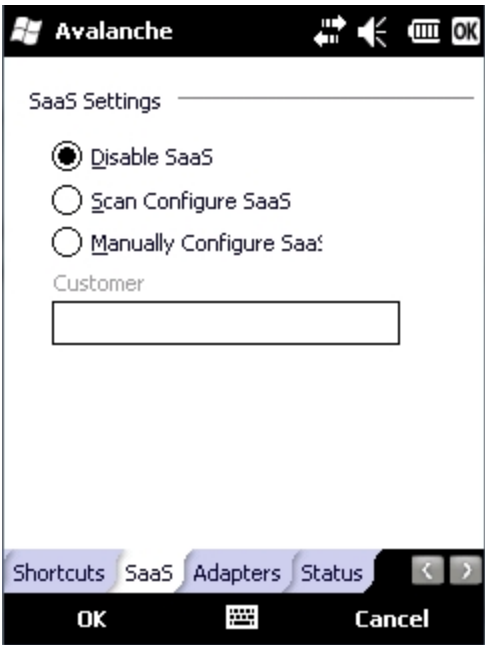
## Shortcuts

For best results use AppLock for this function. AppLock is resident on each mobile device.



Configure shortcuts to other applications on the MX9. Shortcuts are viewed and activated in the Programs panel. This limits the user's access to certain applications when the Enabler is controlling the mobile device display.

SaaS

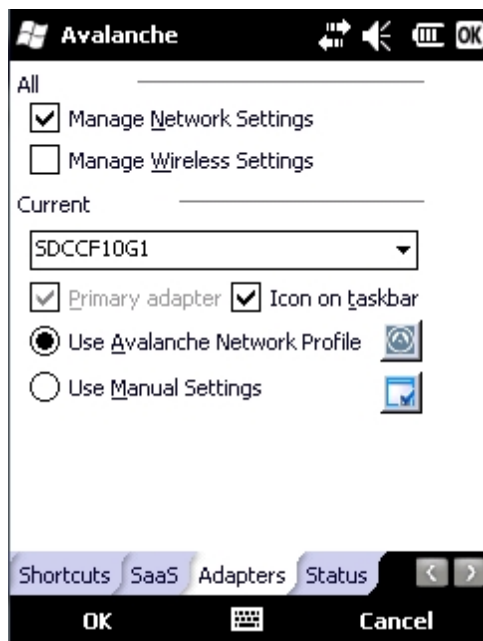


Use to configure the Enabler to connect with Avalanche on Demand. This is a Software-as-a-Service version of Avalanche. Using either of the SaaS configuration options below assumes the user has registered with Wavelink.


Disable SaaS	No SaaS connection is used.
Scan Configure SaaS	Scan bar codes printed from within the Avalanche Console to configure the Enabler for the SaaS connection.
Manually Configure SaaS	Manually enter the SaaS connection information. Enter the server address on the Connection tab and the customer ID in the Company text box.

## Adapters

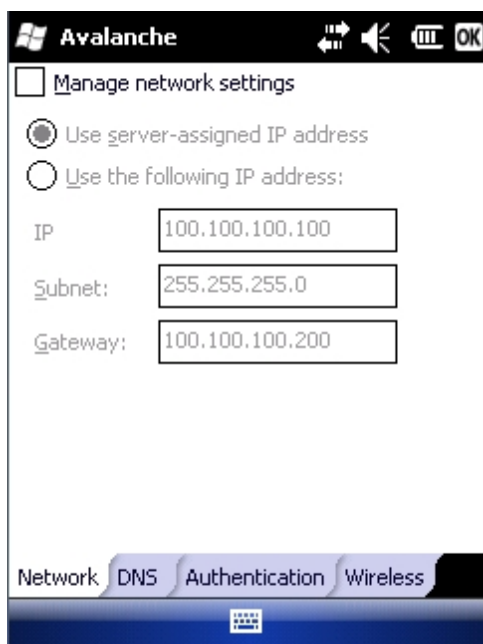
**Note:** Review the network settings configuration utilities and the default values before setting All Adapters to Enable in the Adapters applet.



Manage Network Settings	When enabled, the Enabler will control the network settings. This parameter cannot be configured from the Avalanche Mobility Center Console and is enabled by default.
Manage Wireless Settings	When enabled, the Enabler will control the wireless settings. This parameter cannot be configured from the Avalanche Mobility Center Console and is disabled by default. For Summit clients, Manage Wireless Settings should not be checked as configuration packages provide more radio configuration options.
Current Adapter	Lists all network adapters currently installed on the MX9.
Primary Adapter	Indicates if the Enabler is to attempt to configure the primary adapter (active only if there are multiple network adapters).
Icon on taskbar	Places the Avalanche icon in the Avalanche taskbar that may, optionally, override the standard Windows taskbar.
Use Avalanche Network Profile	The Enabler will apply all network settings sent to it by the Mobile Device Server.

<p>Avalanche Icon</p> 	<p>Selecting the Avalanche Icon will access the Avalanche Network Profile tab which will display current network settings.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Property</th><th>Value</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ManageNetwork</td><td>no</td></tr> <tr> <td>ManageWireless</td><td>no</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Property	Value	ManageNetwork	no	ManageWireless	no
Property	Value						
ManageNetwork	no						
ManageWireless	no						
<p>Use Manual Settings</p>	<p>When enabled, the Enabler will ignore any network or wireless settings coming from the Avalanche MC Console and use only the network settings on the MX9.</p>						
<p>Properties Icon</p>	<p>Selecting the Properties icon displays the Manual Settings Properties dialog applet. From here, the user can configure Network, DNS and Wireless parameters using the displays shown below:</p>						

*Note: A reboot may be required after enabling or disabling these options.*



**Avalanche**

☐ Manage network settings

☒ Use server-assigned IP address

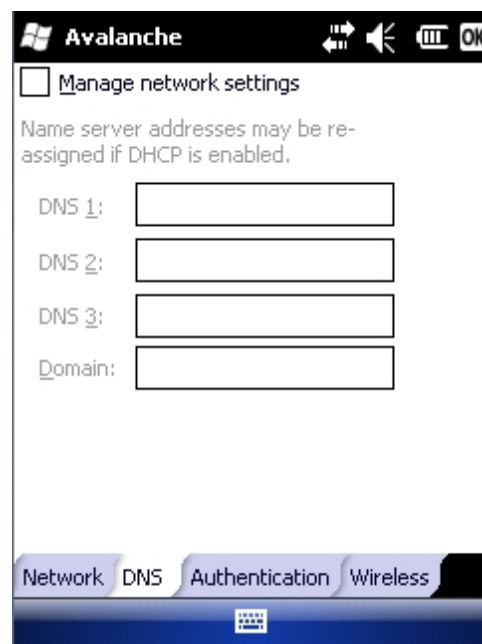
☐ Use the following IP address:

IP:

Subnet:

Gateway:

Network DNS Authentication Wireless



**Avalanche**

☐ Manage network settings

Name server addresses may be re-assigned if DHCP is enabled.

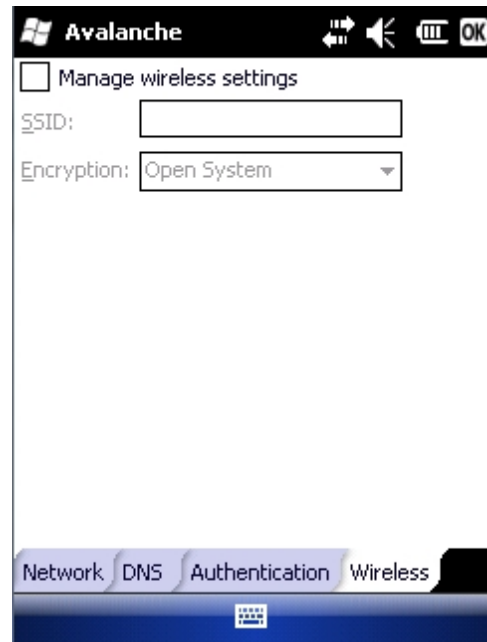
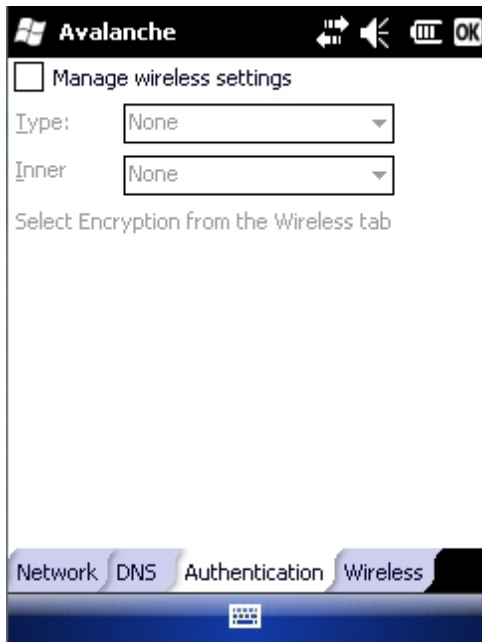
DNS 1:

DNS 2:

DNS 3:

Domain:

Network DNS Authentication Wireless



*Note: The Authentication tab may not be present in all versions of the Enabler.*

Enabling “Manage Wireless Settings” for Summit Client devices is not recommended.

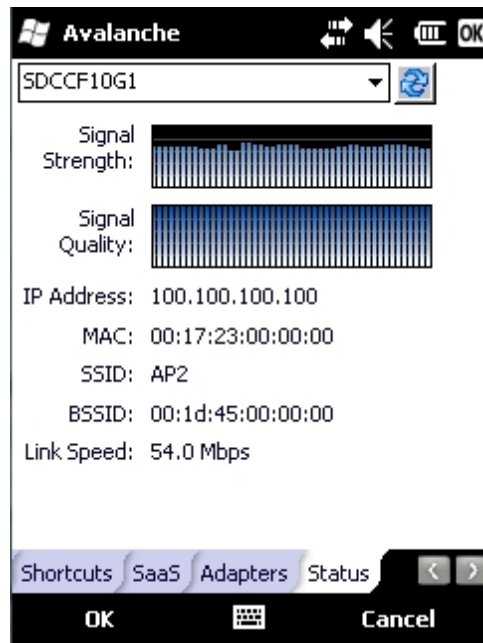
*Note: When you download a profile that is configured to manage network and wireless settings, the Enabler will not apply the manage network and wireless settings to the adapter unless the global Manage wireless settings and Manage network settings options are enabled on the Adapters panel. Until these options are enabled, the network and wireless settings are controlled by the third-party software associated with these settings.*

---

## Status

The Status panel displays the current status of the MX9 network adapter selected in the drop down box. Note the availability of the Windows standard Refresh button.

When the Windows Refresh button is tapped, the signal strength, signal quality and link speed are refreshed for the currently selected adapter. It also searches for new adapters and may cause a slight delay to refresh the contents of the drop-down menu.



Link speed indicates the speed at which the signal is being sent from the adapter to the MX9. Speed is dependent on signal strength.

---

## Exit

The Exit option is password protected. The default password is **leave**. The password is not case-sensitive.



A dialog box titled "Input Exit Password" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The main text says "Enter device password". Below this is a text input field. At the bottom center is an "OK" button.

If changes were made on the MX9 Startup/Shutdown tab screen, then after entering the password, tap OK and the following screen is displayed:



A dialog box titled "Avalanche Monitor" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. The main text says "Do you want to:". Below this are two radio button options: "Continue monitoring." (which is selected) and "Stop monitoring.". To the right of these options is a square icon containing a stylized 'A' with an upward-pointing arrow. At the bottom center is an "OK" button.

Change the option if desired. Tap the X button to cancel Exit. Tap the OK button to exit the Avalanche applet.



---

## Using Remote Management

1. Configure the radio to connect to the network running the Mobile Device Server. After the MX9 is connected, proceed to step 2.
2. If it is desired to configure the radio using the Summit package, add the configured package to the Wavelink Avalanche MC Console and enable it.
3. Verify RMU.CE.CAB exists in the \System\RMU folder.
4. Double click the MX9 enabler CAB file in the \System folder.
5. The enabler automatically launches after installation and contacts the Mobile Device Server. The Avalanche MC Console connected to that Mobile Device Server identifies the remote device and performs a sync. This downloads any available packages available for the MX9.

---

## Using eXpress Scan



eXpress Scan Desktop Icon

If the MX9 has an eXpress Scan icon on the desktop, eXpress Scan may be used for the initial configuration of the device.

If the eXpress Scan icon is not present on the desktop, [install the Enabler](#). If the icon is still not present, [the Enabler must be updated](#).

If the eXpress Scan icon is present, follow these steps to configure the MX9 to connect with the wireless network and the Mobile Device Server.

### ***Step 1: Create Bar Codes***

Barcodes are created with the eXpress Config utility on the desktop/laptop computer, not the mobile device. Depending on the bar code length and the number of parameters selected, eXpress Config generates one or more bar codes for device configuration. The bar codes contain configuration parameters for the wireless client in the mobile device and may also specify the address of the Mobile Device Server.

Barcodes should be printed at a minimum of 600 dpi.

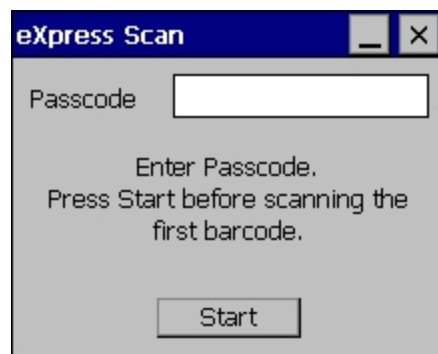
Please see "Creating Configuration Barcodes with eXpress Config" .

### ***Step 2: Scan Bar Codes***

For each mobile device to be configured, please follow these instructions.

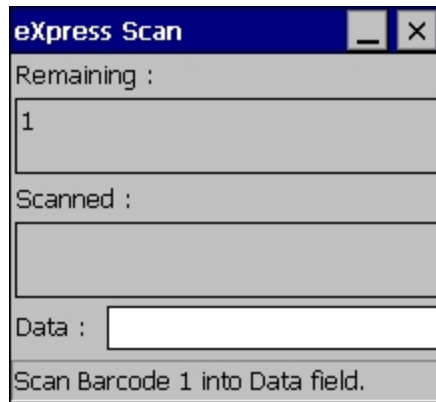
Start eXpress Scan on the MX9 by double clicking the eXpress Scan icon.

Enter the bar code password, if any.



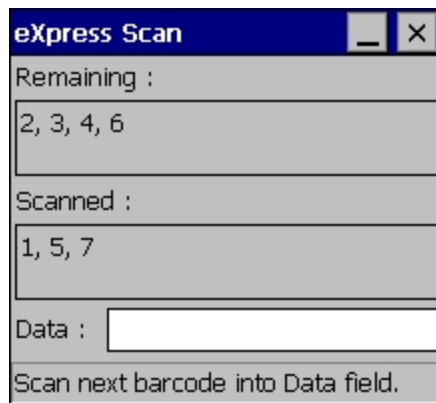
Click Start.

Bar code 1 must be scanned first. The scanned data is displayed in the "Data" text box. The password, if any, entered above is compared to the password entered when the bar codes were created.



If the passwords match, the bar code data is processed and the screen is updated to reflect the number of bar codes included in the set.

If the passwords do not match, an error message is displayed. The current screen can be closed using the X box in the upper right corner. The password can be re-entered and Bar code 1 scanned again.



The remaining bar codes may be scanned in any order. After a bar code is scanned, that bar code is removed from the "Remaining:" list and placed in the "Scanned:" list.

### ***Step 3: Process Completion***

After the last bar code is scanned, the settings are automatically applied.



Once configured, the MX9 is warmbooted. Once connected to the wireless network and the Mobile Device Server, any software updates and additional configuration data are downloaded.

---

# Chapter 9 - Wireless Network Configuration




## Introduction

The Summit client device is either an 802.11g radio, capable of both 802.11b and 802.11g data rates or an 802.11a radio, capable of 802.11a, 802.11b and 802.11g data rates. The radio can be configured for no encryption, WEP encryption or WPA security.

Security options supported are

- [None](#)
- [WEP](#)
- [LEAP](#)
- [WPA-PSK](#)
- [WPA/LEAP](#)
- [PEAP-MSCHAP](#)
- [PEAP-GTC](#)
- [EAP-TLS](#)
- [EAP-FAST](#)

## Important Notes

	It is important that all dates are correct on the MX9 and host computers when using any type of certificate. Certificates are date sensitive and if the date is not correct authentication will fail.
	It may be necessary to upgrade radio software in order to use certain Summit Client Utility (SCU) features. Contact <a href="#">technical assistance</a> for details.
	When using the 802.11a radio, the U-NII 1 band is the preferred band for indoor operation. For regulatory domains in which the U-NII 3 band is allowed, the following channels are supported: 149, 157 and 161. The AP must be configured accordingly.

After making any changes to the wireless configuration, perform a Suspend and Resume on the MX9.

---

## Summit Client Utility

*Note: When making changes to profile or global parameters, tap the power key to place the MX9 in Suspend. When the MX9 resumes from suspend the parameters are applied. The MX9 can be resumed by tapping the power key or the touch screen or by pressing any key.*

**Start > Settings > System > Wi-Fi or**

### Summit Tray Icon (if present)

The [Main Tab](#) provides information, admin login and active profile selection.

Profile specific parameters are found on the [Profile Tab](#). The parameters on this tab can be set to unique values for each profile.

The [Status Tab](#) contains information on the current connection.

The [Diags Tab](#) provides utilities to troubleshoot the radio.

Global parameters are found on the [Global Tab](#). The values for these parameters apply to all profiles.


## Help

Help is available by clicking the ? icon in the title bar on most SCU screens.

The SCU help may also be accessed by selecting **Start > Help** and tapping the Summit Client Utility link. The SCU does not have to be accessed to view the help information using this option.

---






## Summit Tray Icon

 The Summit tray icon provides access to the SCU and is a visual indicator of radio status.

The Summit tray icon is displayed when:

- The Summit radio is installed and active
- The Windows Zero Config utility is not active
- The Tray Icon setting is On

Click the icon to launch the SCU. Use the tray icon to view the radio status:

	The radio is not currently associated or authenticated to an Access Point
	The signal strength for the currently associated/authenticated Access Point is less than -90 dBm
	The signal strength for the currently associated/authenticated Access Point is -71 dBm to -90 dBm
	The signal strength for the currently associated/authenticated Access Point is -51 dBm to -70 dBm
	The signal strength for the currently associated/authenticated Access Point is greater than -50 dBm

---

## Using Windows Mobile Wireless Manager

For best results use the Summit Client Utility to manage wireless connectivity.

However, if desired, Windows Mobile includes the Wireless Manager utility to manage wireless network connections in place of the Summit Client Utility.

To use the Windows Mobile Wireless Manager, first open the Summit Client Utility.

1. Select **ThirdPartyConfig** in the Active Profile drop down box on the [Main tab](#).
2. A message appears that a Power Cycle is required to make settings activate properly.
3. Tap **OK**.
4. Open the [Registry panel](#) and click Warmboot

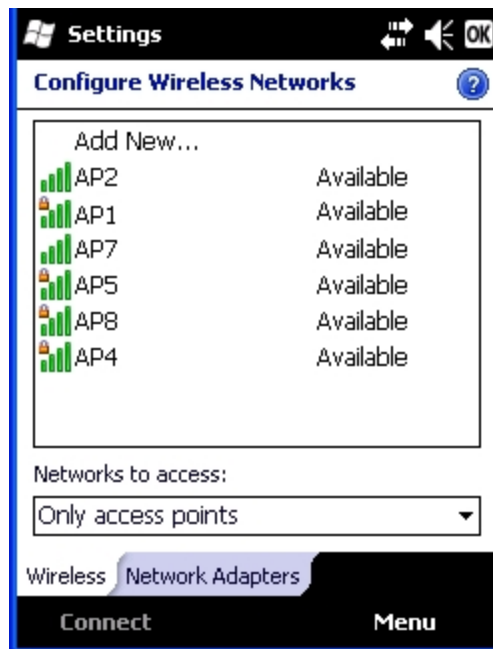
Access the Wireless Manager utility by tapping the radio icon at the top of the screen or tapping:

**Start > Settings > Connections > Wi-Fi**

If the Wi-Fi icon is not present in the Connections panel, return to the Summit Client Utility and select **ThirdPartyConfig**.

### Create a New Network Connection

Click on the Wi-Fi icon. A list of available networks is displayed.



If the desired network is not displayed, tap **Add New**. If the desired network is displayed in the list, tap the network name.





Enter the SSID of the desired network in the **Network name** text box. Be sure to check the *This is a hidden network* checkbox for a non-broadcast SSID.

In the **Connects to** box, select **The Internet** if the MX9 connects directly to the Internet, select Work if the MX9 connects to a network (even if the network provides an Internet connection).

Tap Next.



Please refer to the Windows Mobile help screens or online documentation for configuring wireless security using the Windows Mobile Wireless Manager.

---

*Note: Tap Start > Help for context sensitive Windows Help when changing or viewing options. Tap the X icon in the top right corner to close Windows Help.*

## **Edit a Network Connection**

Double tap the network name to edit the configuration or tap the network name and tap **Connect** to connect to the network.

Network configuration screens are the same as displayed in the previous section.

## **Switch Control to SCU**

1. To switch back to SCU control, select any other profile except **ThirdPartyConfig** in the SCU Active Config drop down list on the [Main tab](#).
2. A message appears that a Power Cycle is required to make settings activate properly.
3. Tap **OK**.
4. Open the [Registry panel](#) and click Warmboot.

Radio control is passed to the Summit Client Utility.

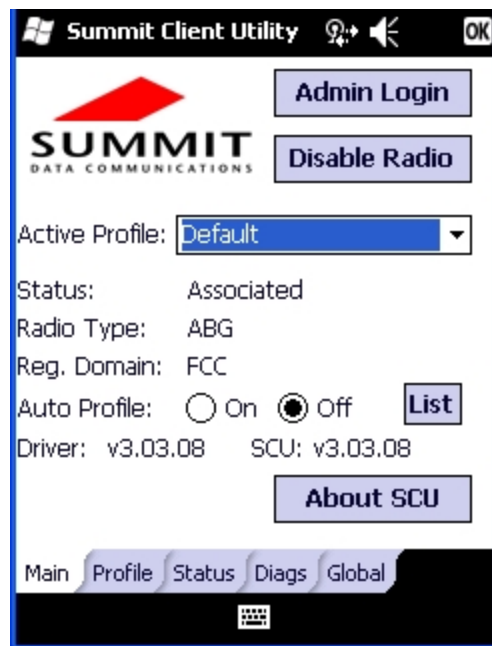
---

## Main Tab

Start > Settings > System > Wi-Fi > Main tab

### Factory Default Settings

Admin Login	SUMMIT
Radio	Enabled
Active Config/Profile	Default
Regulatory Domain	Varies by location



The Main tab displays information about the wireless client device including:

- SCU (Summit Client Utility) version
- Driver version
- Radio Type (BG is an 802.11 b/g radio, ABG is an 802.11 a/b/g radio).
- Regulatory Domain is preset to either Worldwide or a location specific domain (FCC, ETSI, KCC or TELEC).
- Copyright Information can be accessed by tapping the About SCU button
- Active Config profile / Active Profile name
- Status of the client (Down, Associated, Authenticated, etc).

The **Active Profile** can be switched without logging in to Admin mode. Selecting a different profile from the drop down list does not require logging in to Administrator mode. The profile must already exist. Always perform a Suspend/Resume function when changing profiles. Profiles can be created or edited after the Admin login password has been entered and accepted.

When the profile named "ThirdPartyConfig" is chosen as the active profile, the Summit Client Utility passes control to Wireless Manager for configuration of all client and security settings for the network module.

---

The **Disable Radio** button can be used to disable the network card. Once disabled, the button label changes to Enable Radio. By default the radio is enabled.

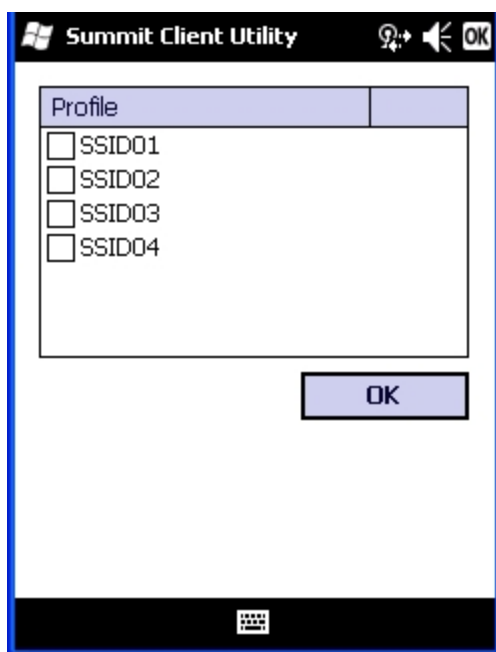
The **Admin Login** button provides access to editing wireless parameters. Profile and Global may only be edited after entering the Admin Login password.

The password is case-sensitive.

Once logged in, the button label changes to Admin Logout. To logout, either tap the **Admin Logout** button or exit the SCU without tapping the **Admin Logout** button.

## Auto Profile

Auto Profile allows the user to configure a list of profiles that the SCU can search when a radio connection is lost. After using the Profile tab to create any desired profiles, return to the Main tab. To specify which profiles are to be included in Auto Profile, click the **List** button.



The Auto Profile selection screen displays all currently configured profiles. Click on the checkbox for any profiles that are to be included in Auto Profile selection then click ok to save.

To enable Auto Profile, click the **On** button on the **Main** tab.

When Auto Profile is On, if the radio goes out of range from the currently selected profile, the radio then begins to attempt to connect to the profiles listed under Auto Profile.

The search continues until:

- the SCU connects to and, if necessary, authenticates with, one of the specified profiles or
- the Off button is clicked to turn off Auto Profile.

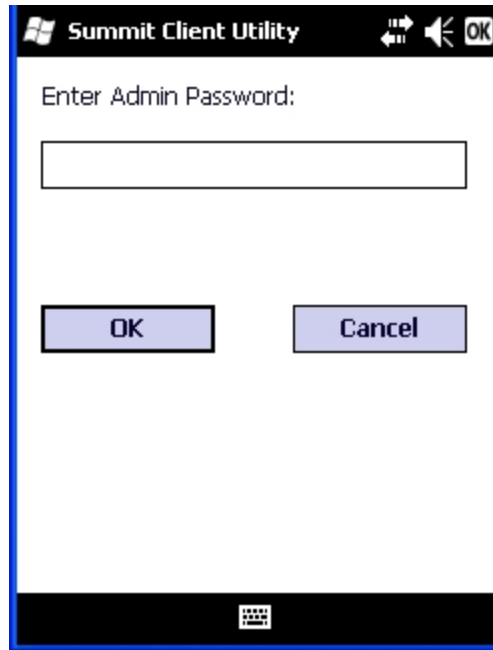
*Note:* Do not include any profiles with an **Ad Hoc Radio Mode** in this listing.

---

## Admin Login

To login to Administrator mode, tap the **Admin Login** button.

Once logged in, the button label changes to Admin Logout. The admin is automatically logged out when the SCU is exited. The Admin can either tap the **Admin Logout** button, or the **OK** button to logout. The Administrator remains logged in when the SCU is not closed and a Suspend/Resume function is performed.



Enter the Admin password (the default password is SUMMIT and is case sensitive) and tap **OK**. If the password is incorrect, an error message is displayed.

The Administrator default password can be changed on the [Global](#) tab.

The end-user can:

- Turn the radio on or off on the Main tab.
- Select an active Profile on the Main tab.
- View the current parameter settings for the profiles on the [Profile](#) tab.
- View the global parameter settings on the [Global](#) tab.
- View the current connection details on the [Status](#) tab.
- View radio status, software versions and regulatory domain on the Main tab.
- Access additional troubleshooting features on the [Diags](#) tab.

After Admin Login, the end-user can also:

- Create, edit, rename and delete profiles on the [Profile](#) tab.
- Edit global parameters on the [Global](#) tab.
- Enable/disable the Summit tray icon in the taskbar.

---

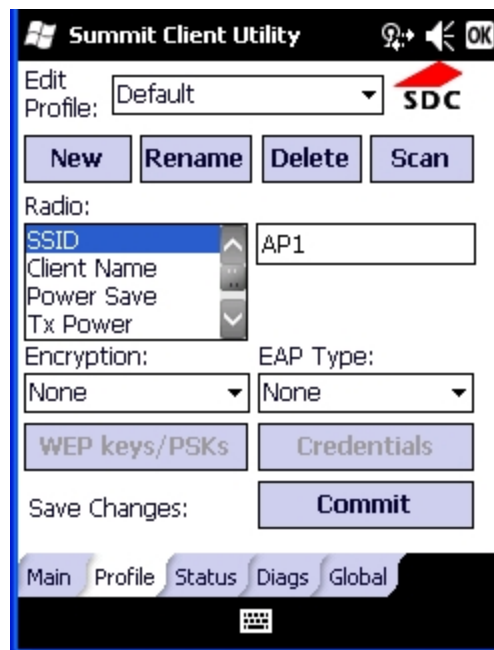
## Profile Tab

**Start > Settings > System > Wi-Fi > Profile tab**

*Note: Tap the Commit button to save changes before leaving this panel or the SCU. If the panel is exited before tapping the Commit button, changes are not saved!*

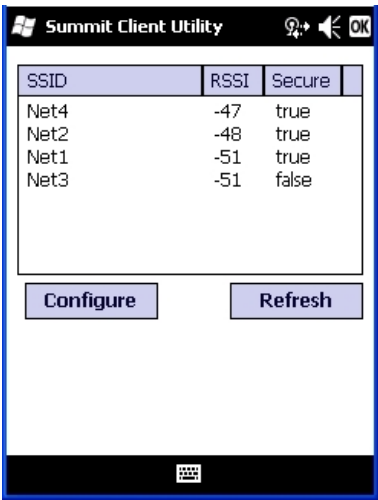
### Factory Default Settings

Profile	Default
SSID	Blank
Client Name	Blank
Power Save	Fast
Tx Power	Maximum
Bit Rate	Auto
Radio Mode	See <a href="#">Profile Parameters</a> for default
Auth Type	Open
EAP Type	None
Encryption	None



When logged in as an Admin (see [Admin Login](#)), use the Profile tab to manage profiles. When not logged in as an Admin, the parameters can be viewed, and cannot be changed. The buttons on this tab are dimmed if the user is not logged in as Admin. The Profile tab was previously labeled Config.

## Buttons

Button	Function
Commit	Saves the profile settings made on this screen. Settings are saved in the profile.
Credentials	Allows entry of a username and password, certificate names, and other information required to authenticate with the access point. The information required depends on the EAP type.
Delete	Deletes the profile. The current active profile cannot be deleted and an error message is displayed if a delete is attempted.
New	Creates a new profile with the default settings (see Profile Parameters) and prompts for a unique name. If the name is not unique, an error message is displayed and the new profile is not created.
Rename	Assigns a new, unique name. If the new name is not unique, an error message is displayed and the profile is not renamed.
Scan	<p>Opens a window that lists access points that are broadcasting their SSIDs. Tap the Refresh button to view an updated list of APs. Each AP's SSID, its received signal strength indication (RSSI) and whether or not data encryption is in use (true or false). Sort the list by tapping on the column headers.</p> <p>If the scan finds more than one AP with the same SSID, the list displays the AP with the strongest RSSI and the least security.</p>  <p>If you are logged in as an Admin, tap an SSID in the list and tap the Configure button, you return to the Profile window to recreate a profile for that SSID, with the profile name being the same as the SSID (or the SSID with a suffix such as "_1" if a profile with the SSID as its name exists already).</p>
WEP Keys / PSK Keys	Allows entry of WEP keys or pass phrase as required by the type of encryption.

**Note:** *Unsaved Changes* – The SCU will display a reminder if the Commit button is not clicked before an attempt is made to close or browse away from this tab.

**Important** – The settings for Auth Type, EAP Type and Encryption depend on the security type chosen.

---

## Profile Parameters

Parameter	Default	Explanation
Edit Profile	Default	A string of 1 to 32 alphanumeric characters, establishes the name of the Profile. Options are Default or ThirdPartyConfig.
SSID	Blank	A string of up to 32 alphanumeric characters. Establishes the Service Set Identifier (SSID) of the WLAN to which the client connects.
Client Name	Blank	A string of up to 16 characters. The client name is assigned to the network card and the device using the network card. The client name may be passed to networking wireless devices, e.g., Access Points.
Power Save	Fast	Power save mode is On. Options are: Constantly Awake Mode (CAM) power save off, Maximum (power saving mode) and Fast (power saving mode).
Tx Power	Maximum	Maximum setting regulates Tx power to the Max power setting for the current regulatory domain. Options are: Maximum, 50mW, 30mW, 20mW, 10mW, 5mW, or 1mW.
Bit Rate	Auto	Setting the rate to Auto will allow the Access Point to automatically negotiate the bit rate with the client device. Options are: Auto, 1 Mbit, 2, 5.5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48 or 54 Mbit.
Auth Type	Open	802.11 authentication type used when associating with the Access Point. Options are: Open, LEAP, or Shared key.
EAP Type	None	Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) type used for 802.1x authentication to the Access Point. Options are: None, LEAP, EAP-FAST, PEAP-MSCHAP, PEAP-GTC, or EAP-TLS. <i>Note: EAP Type chosen determines whether the Credentials button is active and also determines the available entries in the Credentials pop-up window.</i>
Encryption	None	Type of encryption to be used to protect transmitted data. Available options may vary by SCU version. Options are: None, WEP (or Manual WEP), WEP EAP (or Auto WEP), WPA PSK, WPA TKIP, WPA CCKM, WPA2 PSK, WPA2 AES, or WPA2 CCKM. CKIP is not supported in the MX9. <i>Note: The Encryption type chosen determines if the WEP Keys / PSK Keys button is active and also determines the available entries in the WEP or PSK pop-up window.</i>



Parameter	Default	Explanation
Radio Mode	BG radio: BG Rates Full Or A radio: BGA Rates Full	<p>Specify 802.11a, 802.11b and/or 802.11g rates when communicating with the AP. The options displayed for this parameter depend on the type of radio installed in the mobile device.</p> <p>Options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>B rates only (1, 2, 5.5 and 11 Mbps)</li> <li>BG Rates Full (All B and G rates)</li> <li>G rates only (6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48 and 54 Mbps)</li> <li>BG optimized or BG subset (1, 2, 5.5, 6, 11, 24, 36 and 54 Mbps)</li> <li>A rates only (6, 9, 12, 18, 24, 36, 48 and 54 Mbps)</li> <li>ABG Rates Full (All A rates and all B and G rates with A rates preferred)</li> <li>BGA Rates Full (All B and G rates and all A rates with B and G rates preferred)</li> <li>Ad Hoc (when connecting to another client device instead of an AP)</li> </ul> <p>Default:</p> <p>BGA Rates Full (for 802.11a/b/g radio)</p>

It is important the **Radio Mode** parameter correspond to the AP to which the device is to connect. For example, if this parameter is set to G rates only, the MX9 may only connect to APs set for G rates and not those set for B and G rates.

The options for the Radio Mode parameter should be set, based on the antenna configuration, as follows:

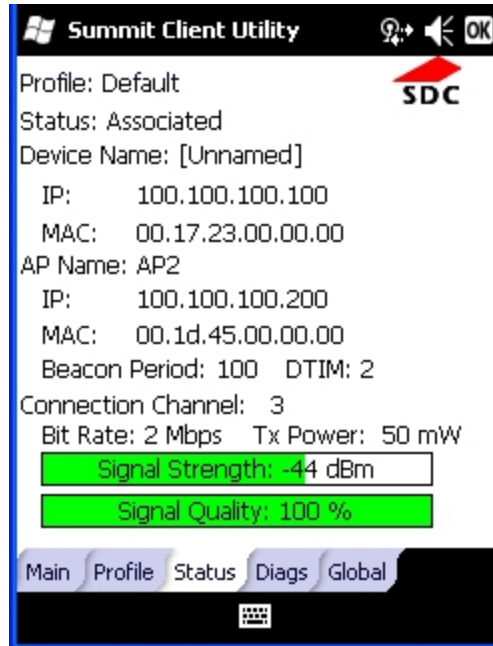
Antenna Configuration	Radio Mode
A Main and BG Main	ABG Rates Full BGA Rates Full
A Main and A Aux	A Rates Only
BG Main and BG Aux	B Rates Only G Rates Only BG Rates Full BG Subset

Contact [technical assistance](#) if you have questions about the antenna(s) installed on your MX9.

---

## Status Tab

Start > Settings > System > Wi-Fi > Status tab



This screen provides information on the radio:

- The profile being used
- The status of the radio card (down, associated, authenticated, etc.)
- Client information including device name, IP address and MAC address.
- Information about the Access Point (AP) maintaining the connection to the network including AP name, IP address and MAC address.
- Channel currently being used for wireless traffic
- Bit rate in Mbit.
- Current transmit power in mW
- Beacon period – the time between AP beacons in kilomicroseconds. (one kilomicrosecond = 1,024 microseconds)
- DTIM interval – A multiple of the beacon period that specifies how often the beacon contains a delivery traffic indication message (DTIM). The DTIM tells power saving devices a packet is waiting for them. For example, if DTIM = 3, then every third beacon contains a DTIM.
- Signal strength (RSSI) displayed in dBm and graphically
- Signal quality, a measure of the clarity of the signal displayed in percentage and graphically.

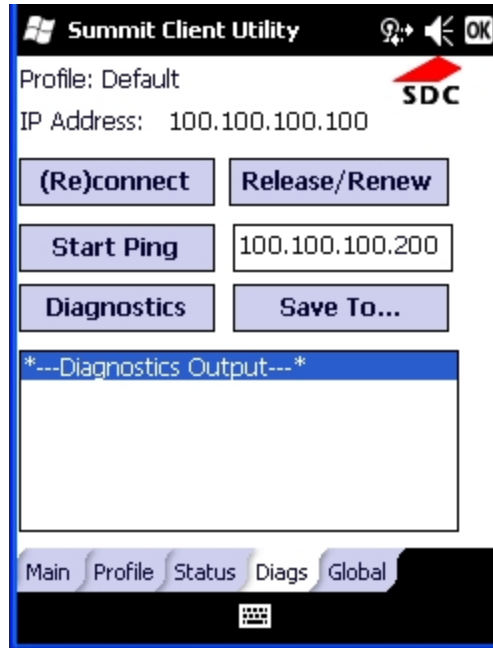
There are no user entries on this screen.

*Note: After completing radio configuration, it is a good idea to review this screen to verify the radio has associated (no encryption, WEP) or authenticated (LEAP, any WPA), as indicated above.*

---

## Diags Tab

Start > Settings > System > Wi-Fi > Diags tab



The Diags screen can be used for troubleshooting network traffic and radio connectivity issues.

- **(Re)connect** – Use this button to apply (or reapply) the current profile and attempt to associate or authenticate to the wireless LAN. All activity is logged in the Diagnostic Output box on the lower part of the screen.
- **Release/Renew** – Obtain a new IP address through release and renew. All activity is logged in the Diagnostic Output box. If a fixed IP address has been assigned to the radio, this is also noted in the Diagnostic Output box. Note that the current IP address is displayed above this button.
- **Start Ping** – Start a continuous ping to the IP address specified in the text box to the right of this button. Once the button is clicked, the ping begins and the button label changes to **Stop Ping**. Clicking the button ends the ping. The ping also ends when any other button on this screen is clicked or the user browses away from the Diags tab. The results of the ping are displayed in the Diagnostic Output box.
- **Diagnostics** – Also attempts to (re)connect to the wireless LAN. However, this option provides more data in the Diagnostic Output box than the (Re)connect option. This data dump includes radio state, profile settings, global settings, and a list of broadcast SSID APs.
- **Save To...** – Use this to save the results of the diagnostics to a text file. Use the explorer window to specify the name and location for the diagnostic file. The text file can viewed using an application such as WordPad.

---

## Global Tab

### Start > Settings > System > Wi-Fi > Global tab

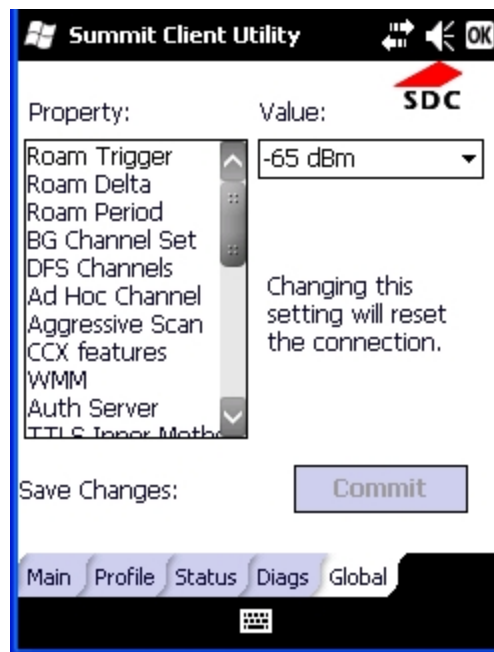
The parameters on this panel can only be changed when an [Admin is logged in](#) with a password. The current values for the parameters can be viewed by the general user without requiring a password.

*Note: Tap the Commit button to save changes. If the panel is exited before tapping the Commit button, changes are not saved!*

#### Factory Default Settings

Roam Trigger	-65 dBm
Roam Delta	5 dBm
Roam Period	BG: 10 sec. A: 5 sec.
BG Channel Set	Full
DFS Channels	Off
Ad Hoc Channel	1
Aggressive Scan	On
CCX	BG: Off A: Optimized
WMM	Off
Auth Server	Type 1
TTLS Inner Method	Auto-EAP
PMK Caching	Standard
WAPI	Off (dimmed)
TX Diversity	BG: On A: Main Only
RX Diversity	BG: On-Start on Main A: Main Only
Frag Threshold	2346
RTS Threshold	2347
LED	Off
Tray Icon	On
Hide Passwords	On
Admin Password	SUMMIT (or blank)
Auth Timeout	8 seconds
Certs Path	System
Ping Payload	32 bytes

Ping Timeout	5000 ms
Ping Delay ms	1000 ms



## Custom Parameter Option

Honeywell does not support the parameter Custom option. The parameter value is displayed as "Custom" when the operating system registry has been edited to set the Summit parameter to a value that is not available from the parameter's drop down list. Selecting Custom from the drop down list has no effect. Selecting any other value from the drop down list will overwrite the "custom" value in the registry.

## Global Parameters

Parameter	Default	Function
Roam Trigger	-65 dBm	If signal strength is less than this trigger value, the client looks for a different Access Point with a stronger signal. Options are: -50 dBm, -55, -60, -65, -70, -75, -80, -85, -90 dBm or <a href="#">Custom</a> .
Roam Delta	5 dBm	The amount by which a different Access Point signal strength must exceed the current Access Point signal strength before roaming to the different Access Point is attempted. Options are: 5 dBm, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35 dBm or <a href="#">Custom</a> .
Roam Period	BG: 10 sec. A: 5 sec.	The amount of time, after association or a roam scan with no roam, that the radio collects Received Signal Strength Indication (RSSI) scan data before a roaming decision is made. Options are: 5 sec, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60 seconds or <a href="#">Custom</a> .
BG Channel Set	Full	Defines the 2.4GHz channels to be scanned for an AP when the radio is contemplating roaming. By specifying the channels to search, roaming time may be reduced over scanning all channels. Options are: Full (all channels) 1,6,11 (the most commonly used channels) 1,7,13 (for ETSI and TELEC radios only) <a href="#">Custom</a> .
DFS Channels	Off	Support for 5GHZ 802.11a channels where support for DFS is required. Options are: On, Off, Optimized. <i>Note: Not supported (always off) in some releases.</i>
Ad Hoc Channel	1	Use this parameter when the <a href="#">Radio Mode</a> profile parameter is set to Ad Hoc. Specifies the channel to be used for an Ad Hoc connection to another client device. If a channel is selected that is not supported by the by the radio, the default value is used. Options are: 1 through 14 (the 2.4GHz channels) 36, 40, 44, 48 (the UNII-1 channels)
Aggressive Scan	On	When set to On and the current connection to an AP weakens, the radio aggressively scans for available APs. Aggressive scanning works with standard scanning (set through Roam Trigger, Roam Delta and Roam Period). Aggressive scanning should be set to On unless there is significant co-channel interference due to overlapping APs on the same channel. Options are: On, Off
CCX or CCX Features	BG: Off A: Optimized	Use of Cisco Compatible Extensions (CCX) radio management and AP specified maximum transmit power features. Options are: Full - Use Cisco IE and CCX version number, support all CCX features. The option known as "On" in previous versions. Optimized –Use Cisco IE and CCX version number, support all CCX features except AP assisted roaming, AP specified maximum transmit power and radio management. Off - Do not use Cisco IE and CCX version number.

Parameter	Default	Function
		Cisco IE = Cisco Information Element.
WMM	Off	Use of Wi-Fi Multimedia extensions. Options are: On, Off
Auth Server	Type 1	Specifies the type of authentication server. Options are: Type 1 (ACS server) and Type 2 (non-ACS server)
TTLS Inner Method	Auto-EAP	Authentication method used within the secure tunnel created by EAP-TTLS. Options are: AUTO-EAP (Any available EAP method) MSCHAPV2 MSCHAP PAP CHAP EAP-MSCHAPV2
PMK Caching	Standard	Type of Pairwise Master Key (PMK) caching to use when WPA2 is in use. PMK caching is designed to speed up roaming between APs by allowing the client and the AP to cache the results of 802.1X authentications, eliminating the need to communicate with the ACS server. Standard PMK is used when there are no controllers. The re-authentication information is cached on the original AP. The client and the AP use the cached information to perform the four-way handshake to exchange keys. Opportunistic PMK (OPMK) is used when there are controllers. The re-authentication information is cached on the controllers. The client and the controller behind the AP use the cached information to perform the four-way handshake to exchange keys.  If the selected PMK caching method is not supported by the network infrastructure, every roam requires full 802.11X authentication, including interaction with the ACS server.  If the active profile is using WPA2 CCKM, the global PMK Caching setting is ignored and the client attempts to use CCKM.  Options are: Standard, OPMK <i>Note: This change does not take effect until after a Suspend/Resume cycle.</i>
WAPI	Off	Default is Off and dimmed (cannot be changed).
TX Diversity	BG: On A: Main Only	How to handle antenna diversity when transmitting packets to the Access Point. Options are: Main only (use the main antenna only), Aux only (use the auxiliary antenna only), or On (use diversity or both antennas).
RX Diversity	BG: On-Start on Main A: Main Only	How to handle antenna diversity when receiving packets from the Access Point. Options are: Main Only (use the main antenna only), Aux Only (use the auxiliary antenna only), On-start on Main (on startup, use the main antenna), or On-start on Aux (on startup, use the auxiliary antenna).

Parameter	Default	Function
Frag Thresh	2346	If the packet size (in bytes) exceeds the specified number of bytes set in the fragment threshold, the packet is fragmented (sent as several pieces instead of as one block). Use a low setting in areas where communication is poor or where there is a great deal of wireless interference. Options are: Any number between 256 bytes and 2346 bytes.
RTS Thresh	2347	If the packet size exceeds the specified number of bytes set in the Request to Send (RTS) threshold, an RTS is sent before sending the packet. A low RTS threshold setting can be useful in areas where many client devices are associating with the Access Point. Options are: Any number between 0 and 2347.
LED	Off	The LED on the wireless card is not visible to the user when the wireless card is installed in a sealed mobile device. Options are: On, Off.
Tray Icon	On	Determines if the Summit icon is displayed in the System tray. Options are: On, Off
Hide Password	On	When On, the Summit Config Utility masks passwords (characters on the screen are displayed as an *) as they are typed and when they are viewed. When Off, password characters are not masked. Options are: On, Off.
Admin Password	SUMMIT (or Blank)	A string of up to 64 alphanumeric characters that must be entered when the Admin Login button is tapped. If Hide Password is On, the password is masked when typed in the Admin Password Entry dialog box. The password is case sensitive. This value is masked when the Admin is logged out. Options are: none.
Auth Timeout	8 seconds	Specifies the number of seconds the Summit software waits for an EAP authentication request to succeed or fail. If the authentication credentials are stored in the active profile and the authentication times out, the association fails. No error message or prompting for corrected credentials is displayed. If the authentication credentials are not stored in the active profile and the authentication times out, the user is again prompted to enter the credentials. Options are: An integer from 3 to 60.
Certs Path	System	A valid directory path, of up to 64 characters, where WPA Certificate Authority and User Certificates are stored on the mobile device when not using the Windows certificates store. The Windows folder must exist before assigning the path in this parameter. See <a href="#">Certificates</a> for instructions on obtaining CA and User Certificates. Options are: none. For example, when the valid certificate is stored as My Computer/System/MYCERTIFICATE.CER, enter System in the Certs Path text box as the Windows folder path.
Ping Payload	32 bytes	Maximum amount of data to be transmitted on a ping. Options are: 32 bytes, 64, 128, 256, 512, or 1024 bytes.
Ping Timeout ms	5000	The amount of time, in milliseconds, that a device will be continuously pinged. The Stop Ping button can be tapped to end the ping process ahead of the ping timeout. Options are: Any number between 0 and 30000 ms.
Ping Delay	1000	The amount of time, in milliseconds, between each ping after a Start Ping button tap.



---

Parameter	Default	Function
ms		Options are: Any number between 0 and 30000 ms.

*Note: Tap the Commit button to save changes. If this panel is closed before tapping the Commit button, changes are not saved!*

---

## Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials

When using wireless security that requires a user name and password to be entered, the Summit Client Utility offers these choices:

- The Username and Password may be entered on the Credentials screen. If this method is selected, anyone using the device can access the network.
- The Username and Password are left blank on the Credentials screen. When the device attempts to connect to the network, a sign on screen is displayed. The user must enter the Username and Password at that time to authenticate.

### ***How to: Use Stored Credentials***

1. After completing the other entries in the profile, click on the **Credentials** button.
2. Enter the Username and Password on the Credentials screen and click the **OK** button.
3. Click the **Commit** button.
4. For LEAP and WPA/LEAP, configuration is complete.
5. For PEAP-MSCHAP and PEAP-GTC, importing the CA certificate into the Windows certificate store is optional.
6. For EAP-TLS, import the CA certificate into the Windows certificate store. Also import the User Certificate into the Windows certificate store.
7. Access the Credentials screen again. Make sure the **Validate server** and **Use MS store** checkboxes are checked.
8. The default is to use the entire certificate store for the CA certificate. Alternatively, use the **Browse** button next to the CA Cert (CA Certificate Filename) on the Credentials screen to select an individual certificate.
9. For EAP-TLS, also enter the User Cert (User Certificate filename) on the credentials screen by using the **Browse** button.
10. If using EAP FAST and manual PAC provisioning, input the PAC filename and password..
11. Click the **OK** button then the **Commit** button.
12. If changes are made to the stored credentials, click **Commit** to save those changes before making any additional changes to the profile or global parameters.
13. Verify the device is authenticated by reviewing the Status tab. When the device is property configured, the Status tab indicates the device is Authenticated and the method used.

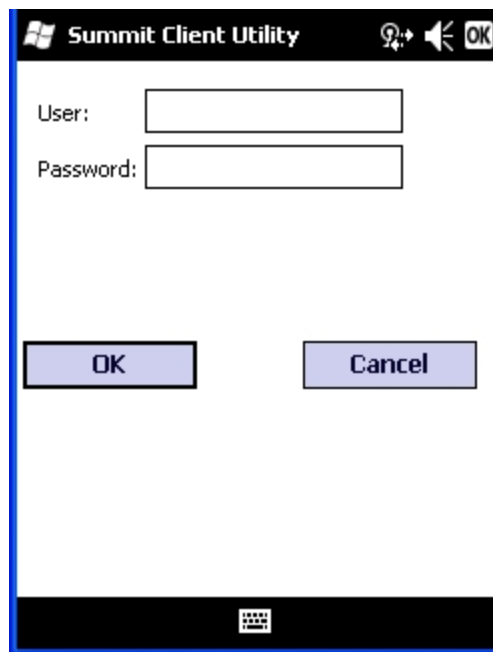
*Note:* See [Configuring the Profile](#) for more details.

*Note:* If invalid credentials are entered into the stored credentials, the authentication will fail. No error message is displayed and the user is not prompted to enter valid credentials.

---

## How to: Use Sign On Screen

1. After completing the other entries in the profile, click on the **Credentials** button. Leave the Username and Password blank. No entries are necessary on the Credentials screen for LEAP or LEAP/WPA.
2. For PEAP-MSCHAP and PEAP-GTC, importing the CA certificate into the Windows certificate store is optional.
3. For EAP-TLS, import the CA certificate into the Windows certificate store. Also import the User Certificate into the Windows certificate store.
4. Access the Credentials screen again. Make sure the **Validate server** and **Use MS store** checkboxes are checked.
5. The default is to use the entire certificate store for the CA certificate. Alternatively, use the Browse button next to the CA Cert (CA Certificate Filename) on the Credentials screen to select an individual certificate.
6. For EAP-TLS, also enter the User Cert (User Certificate filename) on the credentials screen by using the **Browse** button.
7. Click the **OK** button then the **Commit** button.
8. When the device attempts to connect to the network, a sign-on screen is displayed.
9. Enter the Username and Password. Click the **OK** button.



10. Verify the device is authenticated by reviewing the Status tab. When the device is properly configured, the [Status Tab](#) indicates the device is Authenticated and the method used.
11. The sign-on screen is displayed after a reboot.

**Note:** See [Configuring the Profile](#) for more details.

If a user enters invalid credentials and clicks **OK**, the device associates but does not authenticate. The user is again prompted to enter credentials.

If the user clicks the **Cancel** button, the device does not associate. The user is not prompted again for credentials until:

- the device is rebooted,
- the radio is disabled then enabled,

- 
- the **Reconnect** button on the [Diags Tab](#) is clicked or
  - the profile is modified and the **Commit** button is clicked.

## Windows Certificate Store vs. Certs Path

*Note: It is important that all dates are correct on the MX9 and host computers when using any type of certificate. Certificates are date sensitive and if the date is not correct authentication will fail.*

### User Certificates

EAP-TLS authentication requires a user certificate. The user certificate must be stored in the Windows certificate store.

- To generate the user certificate, see [Generating a User Certificate](#).
- To import the user certificate into the Windows certificate store, see [Installing a User Certificate](#).
- A Root CA certificate is also needed. Refer to the section below.

### Root CA Certificates

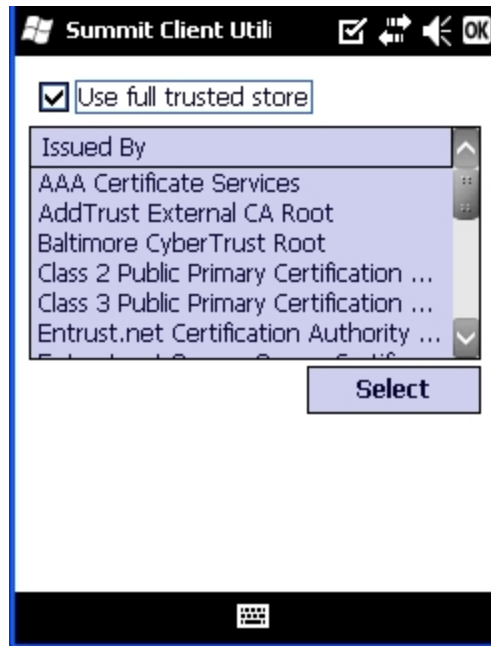
Root CA certificates are required for EAP/TLS, PEAP/GTC and PEAP/MSCHAP. Two options are offered for storing these certificates. They may be imported into the Windows certificate store or copied into the Certs Path directory.

#### How To: Use the Certs Path

1. See [Generating a Root CA Certificate](#) and follow the instructions to download the Root Certificate to a PC.
2. Copy the certificate to specified directory on the mobile device. The default location for Certs Path is \System. A different location may be specified by using the Certs Path global variable. Please note the location chosen for certificate storage should persist after a reboot.
3. When completing the Credentials screen for the desired authentication, do not check the **Use MS store** checkbox after checking the **Validate server** checkbox.
4. Enter the certificate name in the CA Cert textbox.
5. Click **OK** to exit the Credentials screen and then **Commit** to save the profile changes.

#### How To: Use Windows Certificate Store

1. See [Generating a Root CA Certificate](#) and follow the instructions to download the Root Certificate to a PC.
2. To import the certificate into the Windows store, See [Installing a Root CA Certificate](#).
3. When completing the Credentials screen for the desired authentication, be sure to check the **Use MS store** checkbox after checking the **Validate server** checkbox.
4. The default is to use all certificates in the store. If this is OK, skip to the last step.
5. Otherwise, to select a specific certificate click on the **Browse (...)** button.



6. Uncheck the **Use full trusted store** checkbox.
7. Select the desired certificate and click the **Select** button to return the selected certificate to the CA Cert textbox.
8. Click **OK** to exit the Credentials screen and then **Commit** to save the profile changes.

---

## Configuring the Profile

Use the instructions in this section to complete the entries on the Profile tab according to the type of wireless security used by your network. The instructions that follow are the minimum required to successfully connect to a network. Your system may require more parameters than are listed in these instructions. Please see your system administrator for complete information about your network and its wireless security requirements.

To begin the configuration process:

- On the [Main Tab](#), click the [Admin Login](#) button and enter the password.
- For best results edit the default profile with the parameters for your network. Select the Default profile from the pull down menu.
- Make any desired parameter changes as described in the applicable following section determined by network security type and click the **Commit** button to save the changes.

**IMPORTANT** – Remember to click the Commit button after making changes to ensure the changes are saved. Many versions of the SCU display a reminder if the Commit button is not clicked before an attempt is made to close or browse away from the tab in focus if there are unsaved changes.

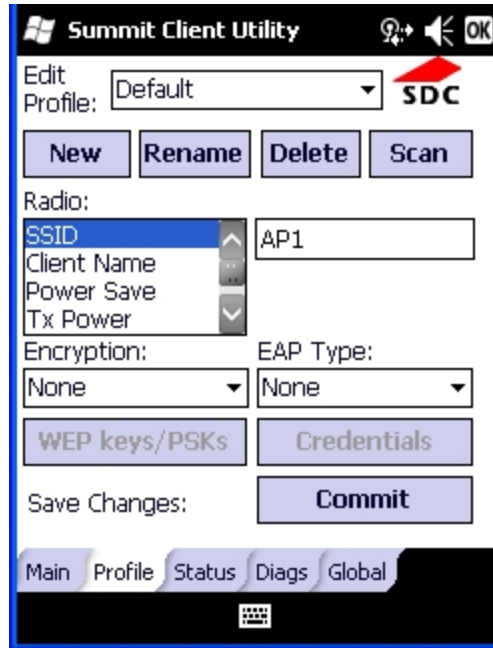
If changes are made to the *stored credentials*, click Commit to save those changes first before making any additional changes.

---

## No Security

To connect to a wireless network with no security, make sure the following profile options are used.

- Enter the **SSID** of the Access Point assigned to this profile
- Set **EAP Type** to **None**
- Set **Encryption** to **None**
- Set **Auth Type** to **Open**



Once configured, click the **Commit** button.

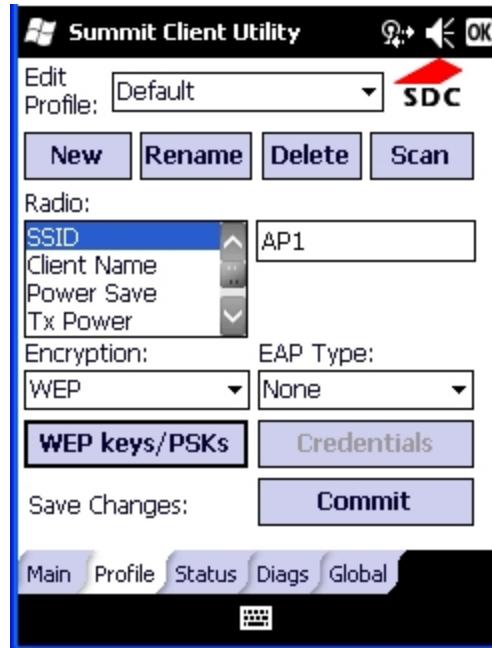
Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the [Main tab](#) and perform a Suspend/Resume. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

---

## WEP

To connect using WEP, make sure the following profile options are used.

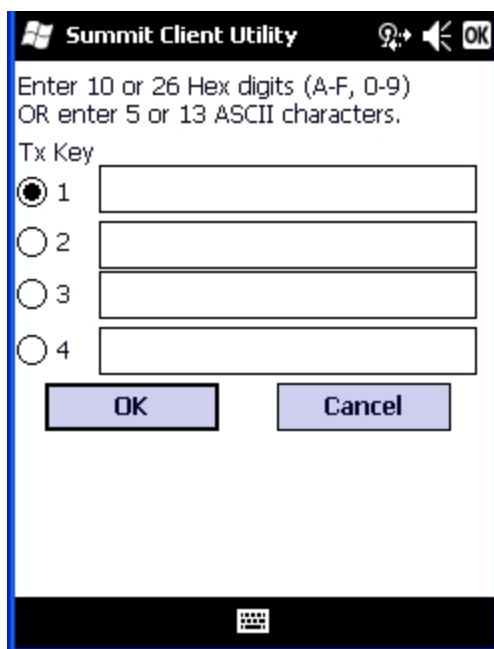
- Enter the **SSID** of the Access Point assigned to this profile
- Set **EAP Type** to **None**
- Set **Encryption** to **WEP** or **Manual WEP** (depending on SCU version)
- Set **Auth Type** to **Open**





---

Click the **WEP keys/PSKs** button.



The image shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "Summit Client Utility". Inside the dialog, the text reads: "Enter 10 or 26 Hex digits (A-F, 0-9) OR enter 5 or 13 ASCII characters." Below this, there is a label "Tx Key" followed by four radio button options numbered 1 through 4. Each option has an adjacent text input field. Option 1 is selected. At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "OK" and "Cancel". A small icon of a keyboard is visible at the very bottom center of the dialog box.

Valid keys are 10 hexadecimal or 5 ASCII characters (for 40-bit encryption) or 26 hexadecimal or 13 ASCII characters (for 128-bit encryption). Enter the key(s) and click **OK**.

Once configured, click the **Commit** button.

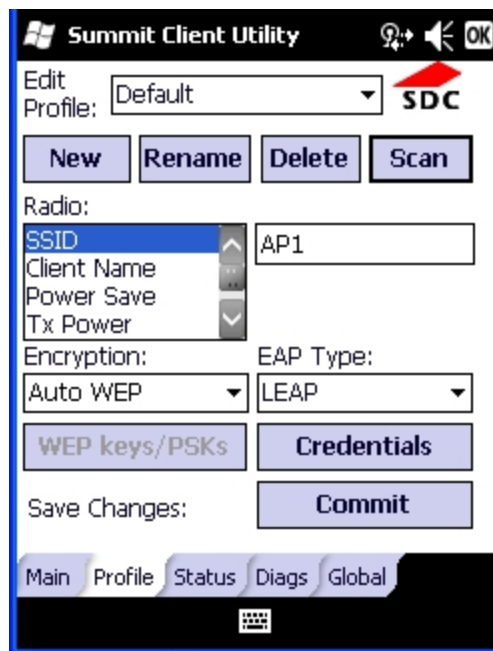
Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the [Main tab](#) and perform a Suspend/Resume. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

---

## LEAP

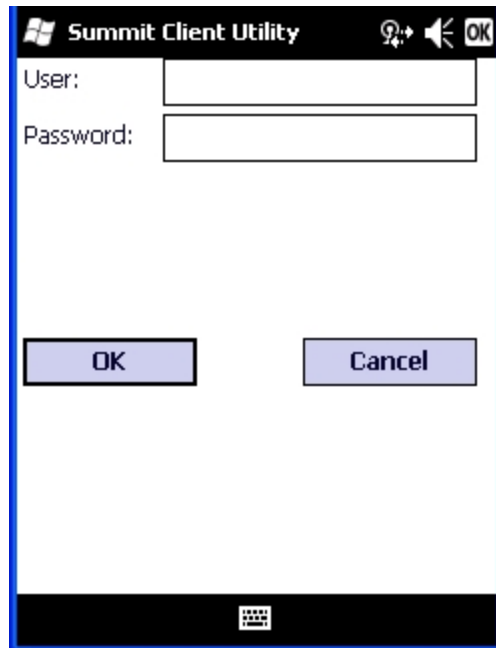
To use LEAP (without WPA), make sure the following profile options are used.

- Enter the **SSID** of the Access Point assigned to this profile
- Set **EAP Type** to **LEAP**
- Set **Encryption** to **WEP EAP** or **Auto WEP** (depending on SCU version)
- Set **Auth Type** as follows:
  - If the Cisco/CCX certified AP is configured for open authentication, set the **Auth Type** radio parameter to **Open**.
  - If the AP is configured to use shared key or passphrase, set the Auth Type radio parameter to **Shared**.
  - If the AP is configured for network EAP only, set the **Auth Type** radio parameter to **LEAP**.



See [Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials](#) for information on entering credentials.

To use Stored Credentials, click on the **Credentials** button. No entries are necessary for Sign-On Credentials as the user will be prompted for the Username and Password when connecting to the network.



Enter the Domain\Username (if the Domain is required), otherwise enter the Username.

Enter the password.

Click **OK** then click the **Commit** button.

Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the [Main tab](#) and perform a Suspend/Resume. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

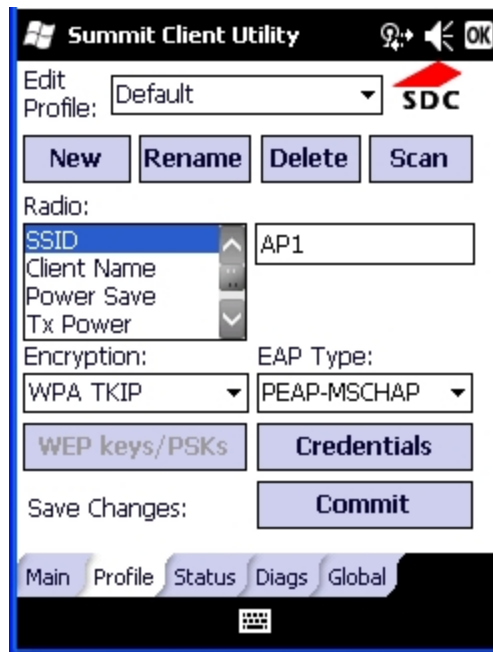
---

## PEAP/MSCHAP

To use PEAP/MSCHAP, make sure the following profile options are used.

- Enter the **SSID** of the Access Point assigned to this profile
- Set **EAP Type** to **PEAP-MSCHAP**
- Set **Encryption** to **WPA TKIP**
- Set **Auth Type** to **Open**

To use another encryption type, select WPA CCKM, WPA2 AES or WPA2 CCKM for encryption and complete other entries as detailed in this section.



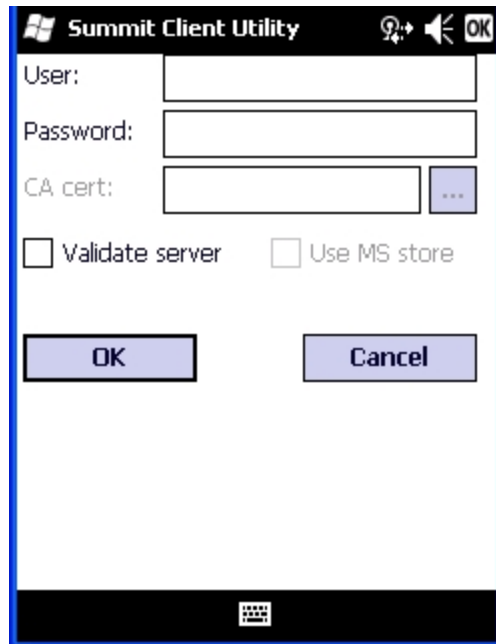
See [Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials](#) for information on entering credentials.

Click the **Credentials** button.

- No entries except the CA Certificate Filename are necessary for Sign-On Credentials as the user will be prompted for the User Name and Password when connecting to the network.
- For Stored Credentials, User, Password and the CA Certificate Filename must be entered.

Enter these items as directed below.

---



Enter the Domain\Username (if the Domain is required), otherwise enter the Username.

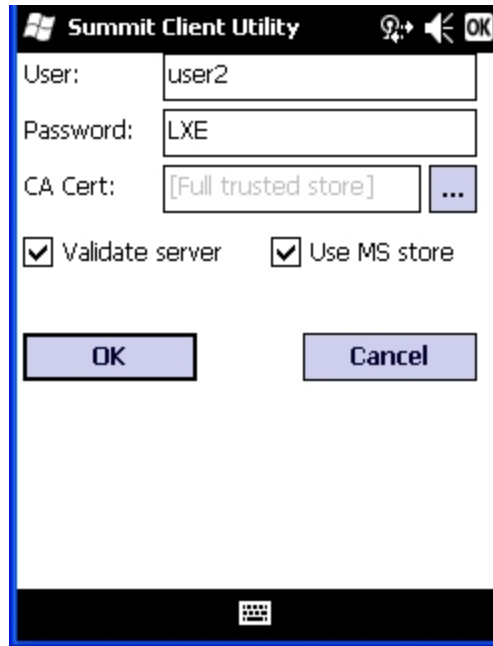
Enter the password.

Leave the CA Certificate File Name blank for now.

Click **OK** then click **Commit**. Ensure the correct Active profile is selected on the [Main Tab](#).

See [Windows Certificate Store vs. Certs Path](#) for more information on certificate storage.

Once successfully authenticated, import the CA certificate into the Windows certificate store. Return to the Credentials screen and check the **Validate server** checkbox.



If using the Windows certificate store:

- Check the **Use MS store** checkbox. The default is to use the Full Trusted Store.
- To select an individual certificate, click on the **Browse** button.
- Uncheck the **Use full trusted store** checkbox.
- Select the desired certificate and click Select. You are returned to the Credentials screen.

If using the Certs Path option:

- Leave the **Use MS store** box unchecked.
- Enter the certificate filename in the CA Cert textbox.

Click **OK** then click **Commit**.

The device should be authenticating the server certificate and using PEAP/MSCHAP for the user authentication.

Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the [Main tab](#) and perform a Suspend/Resume. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

*Note: The date must be properly set on the device to authenticate a certificate.*

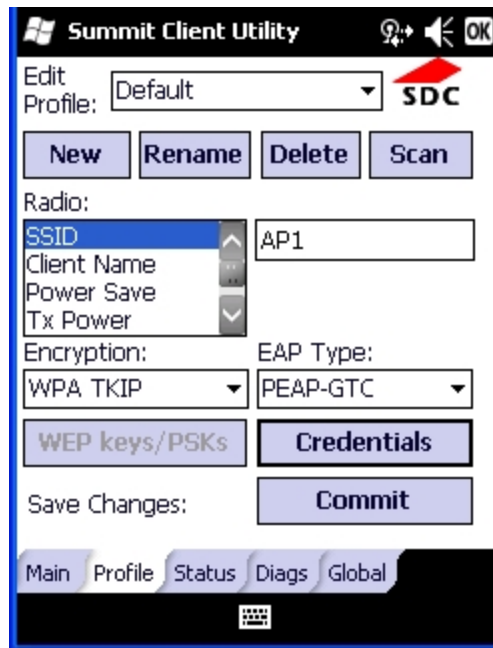
---

## PEAP/GTC

To use PEAP/GTC, make sure the following profile options are used.

- Enter the **SSID** of the Access Point assigned to this profile
- Set **EAP Type** to **PEAP-GTC**
- Set **Encryption** to **WPA TKIP**
- Set **Auth Type** to **Open**

To use another encryption type, select WPA CCKM, WPA2 AES or WPA2 CCKM for encryption and complete other entries as detailed in this section.

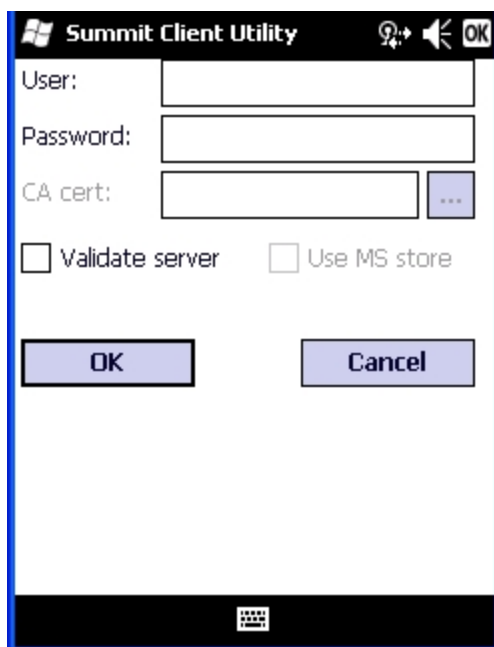


See [Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials](#) for information on entering credentials.

Click the **Credentials** button.

- No entries except the CA Certificate Filename are necessary for Sign-On Credentials as the user will be prompted for the User Name and Password when connecting to the network.

Enter these items as directed below.



Enter the Domain\Username (if the Domain is required), otherwise enter the Username.

Enter the password.

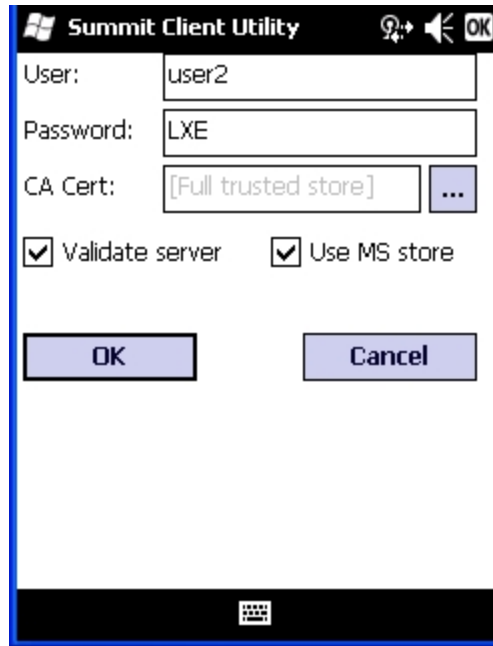
Leave the CA Certificate File Name blank for now.

Click **OK** then click **Commit**. Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the [Main Tab](#).

See [Windows Certificate Store vs. Certs Path](#) for more information on certificate storage.



Once successfully authenticated, import the CA certificate into the Windows certificate store. Return to the Credentials screen and check the **Validate server** checkbox.



If using the Windows certificate store:

- Check the **Use MS store** checkbox. The default is to use the Full Trusted Store.
- To select an individual certificate, click on the **Browse** button.
- Uncheck the **Use full trusted store** checkbox.
- Select the desired certificate and click **Select**. You are returned to the Credentials screen.

If using the Certs Path option:

- Leave the **Use MS store box** unchecked.
- Enter the certificate filename in the CA Cert textbox.

Click **OK** then click **Commit**.

The device should be authenticating the server certificate and using PEAP/GTC for the user authentication.

Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the [Main tab](#) and perform a Suspend/Resume. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

*Note: The date must be properly set on the device to authenticate a certificate.*

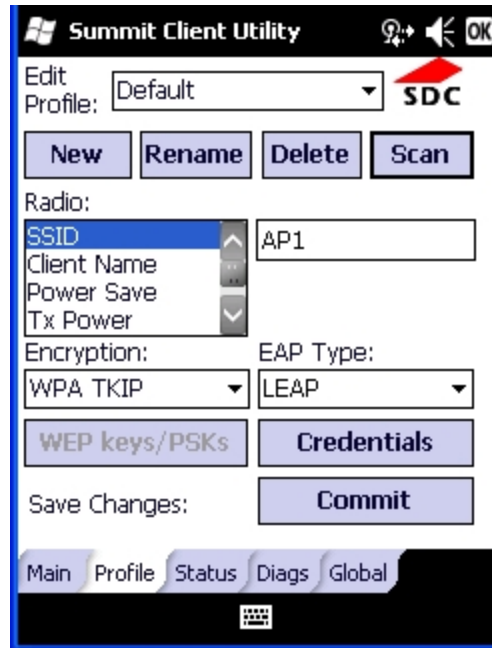
---

## WPA/LEAP

To use WPA/LEAP, make sure the following profile options are used.

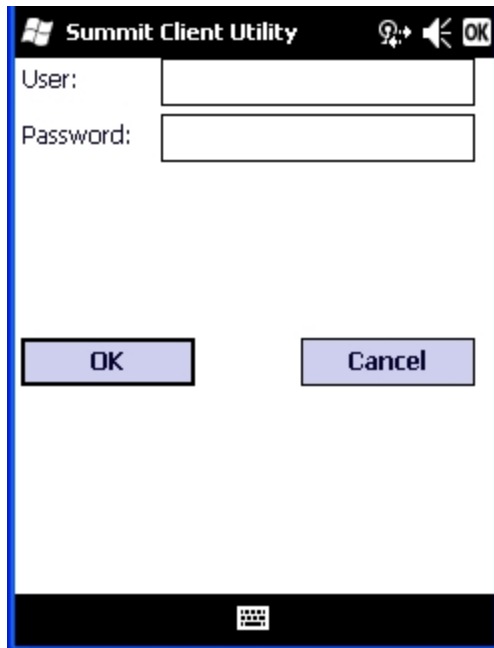
- Enter the **SSID** of the Access Point assigned to this profile
- Set **EAP Type** to **LEAP**
- Set **Encryption** to **WPA TKIP**
- Set **Auth Type** as follows:
  - If the Cisco/CCX certified AP is configured for open authentication, set the **Auth Type** radio parameter to **Open**.
  - If the AP is configured to used shared key or passphrase, set the Auth Type radio parameter to **Shared**.
  - If the AP is configured for network EAP only, set the **Auth Type** radio parameter to **LEAP**.

To use another encryption type, select WPA CCKM, WPA2 AES or WPA2 CCKM for encryption and complete other entries as detailed in this section.



See [Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials](#) for information on entering credentials.

To use Stored Credentials, click on the **Credentials** button. No entries are necessary for Sign-On Credentials as the user will be prompted for the Username and Password when connecting to the network.



Enter the Domain\Username (if the Domain is required), otherwise enter the Username.

Enter the password.

Click **OK** then click the **Commit** button.

Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the [Main tab](#) and perform a Suspend/Resume. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

---

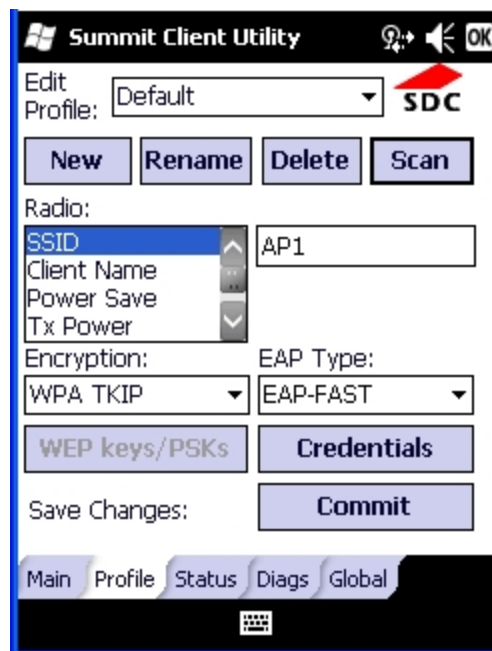
## EAP-FAST

To use EAP-FAST, make sure the following profile options are used.

- Enter the **SSID** of the Access Point assigned to this profile
- Set **EAP Type** to **EAP-FAST**
- Set **Encryption** to **WPA TKIP**
- Set **Auth Type** to **Open**

To use another encryption type, select WPA CCKM, WPA2 AES or WPA2 CCKM for encryption and complete other entries as detailed in this section.

The SCU supports EAP-FAST with automatic or manual PAC provisioning. With automatic PAC provisioning, the user credentials, whether entered on the saved credentials screen or the sign on screen, are sent to the RADIUS server. The RADIUS server must have auto provisioning enabled to send the PAC provisioning credentials to the MX9.



For automatic PAC provisioning, once a username/password is authenticated, the PAC information is stored on the MX9. The same username/password must be used to authenticate each time. See the note below for more details.

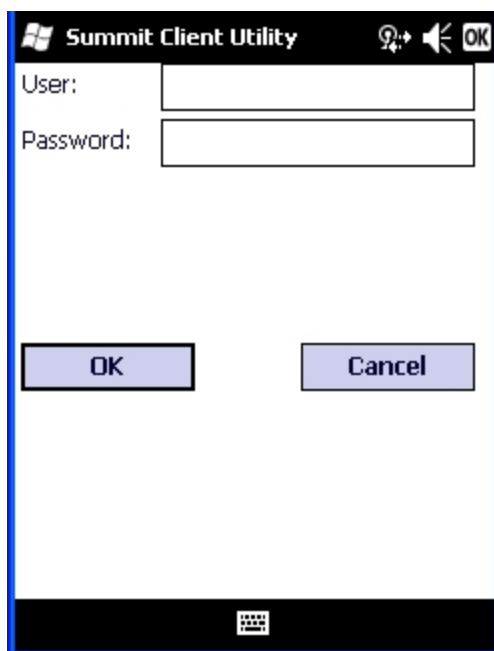
For manual PAC provisioning, the PAC filename and Password must be entered.

See [Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials](#) for information on entering credentials.

The entries on the Credentials screen are determined by the type of credentials (stored or sign on) and the type of PAC provisioning (automatic or manual).

Click on the **Credentials** button.

To use Stored Credentials, click on the **Credentials** button. No entries are necessary for Sign-On Credentials with automatic PAC provisioning as the user will be prompted for the Username and Password when connecting to the network.



To use Sign-On credentials:

- Do not enter a User and Password as the user will be prompted for the Username and Password when connecting to the network.

To use Stored Credentials:

- Enter the Domain\Username (if the Domain is required), otherwise enter the Username.
- Enter the password.

To use Automatic PAC Provisioning:

- No additional entries are required.

To use manual PAC Provisioning:

- Enter the PAC Filename and PAC Password.
- The PAC file must be copied to the directory specified in the Certs Path global variable. The PAC file must not be read only.

Tap **OK** then click the **Commit** button.

Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the [Main tab](#) and perform a Suspend/Resume. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

*Note: When using Automatic PAC Provisioning, once authenticated, there is a file stored in the \System folder with the PAC credentials. If the username is changed, that file must be deleted. The filename is autoP.00.pac.*

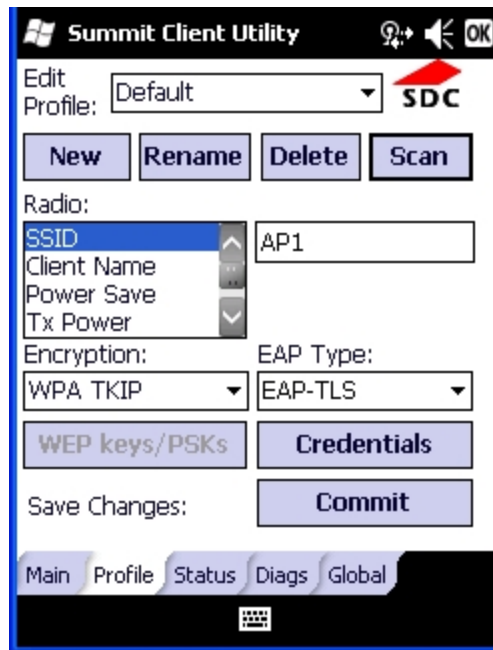
---

## EAP-TLS

To use EAP-TLS, make sure the following profile options are used.

- Enter the **SSID** of the Access Point assigned to this profile
- Set **EAP Type** to **EAP-TLS**
- Set **Encryption** to **WPA TKIP**
- Set **Auth Type** to **Open**

To use another encryption type, select WPA CCKM, WPA2 AES or WPA2 CCKM for encryption and complete other entries as detailed in this section.

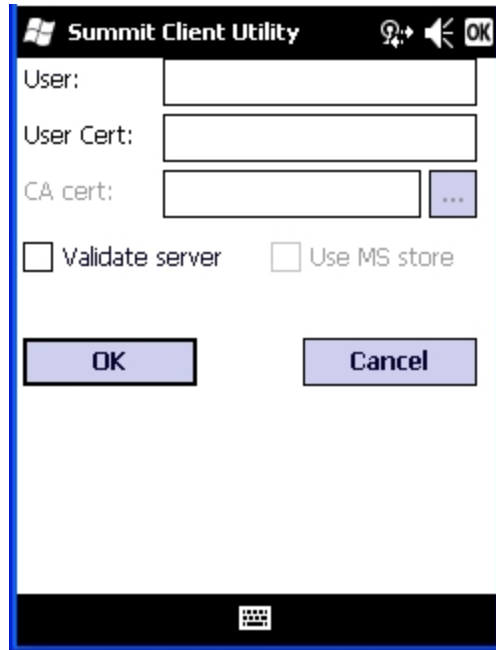


See [Sign-On vs. Stored Credentials](#) for information on entering credentials.

Click the **Credentials** button.

- No entries except the User Certificate Filename and the CA Certificate Filename are necessary for Sign-On Credentials as the user will be prompted for the User Name when connecting to the network.
- For Stored Credentials, User and the CA Certificate Filename must be entered.

Enter these items as directed below.



Enter the Domain\Username (if the Domain is required), otherwise enter the Username.

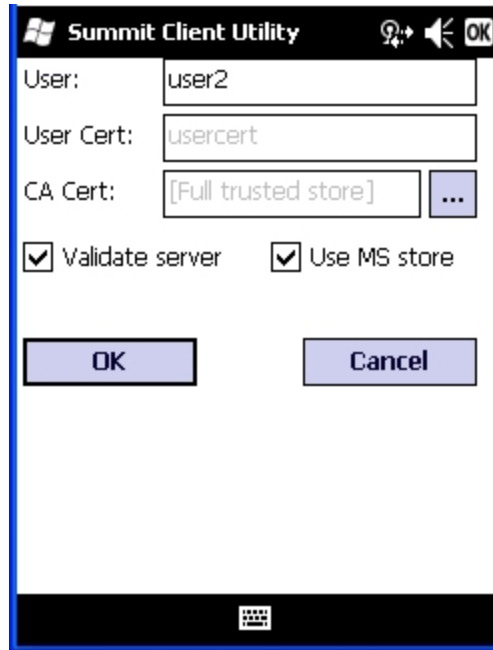
Select a user certificate from the Windows certificate store. Use the **Browse** button to locate the User Cert from the certificate store. Highlight the desired certificate and press the Select button. The name of the certificate is displayed in the User Cert box.

Some versions of the SCU require a User Cert password. If this entry field is present, enter the password for the user certificate in the User Cert pwd box.

If there are no user certificates in the Windows certificate store, follow these instructions to [generate](#) and [install](#) the user certificate.

See [Windows Certificate Store vs. Certs Path](#) for more information on CA certificate storage.

Check the **Validate server** checkbox.



If using the Windows certificate store:

- Check the **Use MS store** checkbox. The default is to use the Full Trusted Store.
- To select an individual certificate, click on the **Browse** button.
- Uncheck the **Use full trusted store** checkbox.
- Select the desired certificate and click **Select**. You are returned to the Credentials screen.

If using the Certs Path option:

- Leave the Use MS store box unchecked.
- Enter the certificate filename in the CA Cert textbox.

Click **OK** then click **Commit**.

The MX9 should be authenticating the server certificate and using EAP-TLS for the user authentication.

Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the [Main tab](#) and perform a Suspend/Resume. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

See [Certificates](#) for information on generating a Root CA certificate or a User certificate.

*Note: The date must be properly set on the device to authenticate a certificate.*

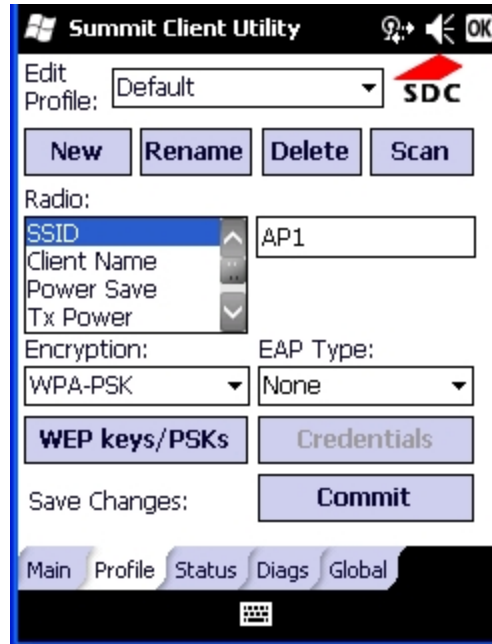


---

## WPA PSK

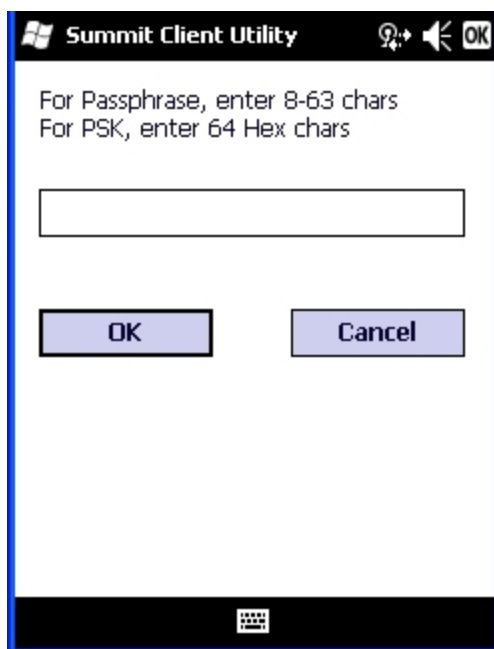
To connect using WPA/PSK, make sure the following profile options are used:

- Enter the **SSID** of the Access Point assigned to this profile
- Set **EAP Type** to **None**
- Set **Encryption** to **WPA PSK** or **WPA2 PSK**
- Set **Auth Type** to **Open**



---

Click the **WEP keys/PSKs** button.



This value can be 64 hex characters or an 8 to 63 byte ASCII value. Enter the key and click **OK**.

Once configured, click the **Commit** button.

Ensure the correct Active Profile is selected on the [Main tab](#) and perform a Suspend/Resume. The SCU Main tab shows the device is associated after the radio connects to the network.

---

## Certificates

*Note: Please refer to the Security Primer to prepare the Authentication Server and Access Point for communication.*

*Note: It is important that all dates are correct on the MX9 and host computers when using any type of certificate. Certificates are date sensitive and if the date is not correct authentication will fail.*

### Quick Start

Root Certificates are necessary for EAP-TLS, PEAP/GTC and PEAP/MSCHAP.

1. [Generate a Root CA Certificate](#) and download it to a PC.
2. Connect the MX9 to the desktop PC using ActiveSync and copy the certificate to the MX9 \System folder.
3. [Install the Root CA Certificate](#).

User Certificates are necessary for EAP-TLS

1. [Generate a User Certificate](#) and download it to a PC.
2. Install the User Certificate on the PC.
3. [Export the User Certificate](#) as a .PFX file.
4. Connect the MX9 to the desktop PC using ActiveSync and copy the certificate to the MX9 \System folder.
5. [Install the User Certificate](#).
6. After installation, perform a Suspend/Resume.
7. [Verify installation](#).

---

## Generating a Root CA Certificate

*Note: It is important that all dates are correct on the MX9 and host computers when using any type of certificate. Certificates are date sensitive and if the date is not correct authentication will fail.*

The easiest way to get the root CA certificate is to use a browser on a PC to navigate to the Certificate Authority. To request the root CA certificate, open a browser to

<http://<CA IP address>/certsrv>.

Sign into the CA with any valid username and password.



## Welcome

---

Use this Web site to request a certificate for your Web browser, e-mail client, or other program. By using a certificate, you can verify your identity to people you communicate with over the Web, sign and encrypt messages, and, depending upon the type of certificate you request, perform other security tasks.

You can also use this Web site to download a certificate authority (CA) certificate, certificate chain, or certificate revocation list (CRL), or to view the status of a pending request.

For more information about Certificate Services, see [Certificate Services Documentation](#).

### Select a task:

[Request a certificate](#)

[View the status of a pending certificate request](#)

[Download a CA certificate, certificate chain, or CRL](#)

---

Click the **Download a CA certificate, certificate chain or CRL** link.

Make sure the correct root CA certificate is selected in the list box.

## Download a CA Certificate, Certificate Chain, or CRL

To trust certificates issued from this certification authority, [install this CA certificate chain](#).

To download a CA certificate, certificate chain, or CRL, select the certificate and encoding method.

### CA certificate:



### Encoding method:

- ☒ DER  
☐ Base 64

[Download CA certificate](#)

[Download CA certificate chain](#)

[Download latest base CRL](#)

[Download latest delta CRL](#)

Click the **DER** button.

To download the CA certificate, click on the **Download CA certificate** link.



Click the **Save** button and save the certificate. Make sure to keep track of the name and location of the certificate. [Install](#) the certificate on the MX9.

---

## Installing a Root CA Certificate

*Note: This section is only if the Windows certificate store is used. If the certificate store is not used, copy the certificate to the \System folder or other path specified in the Summit Certs global parameter.*

Copy the certificate file to the MX9. The certificate file has a .CER extension. Locate the file and tap it.

A certificate installation warning text box is displayed:

*Your device is being asked to install a security certificate. You should block unless you require certificates for processes such as synchronizing with Exchange Server or connecting to a wireless network.*

Tap **More** to view the remainder of the warning in the text box:

*Installing the certificate will cause your device to trust digital certificates from the requester. Malicious requesters may try to mislead you about their identity. Do you want to block this certificate?*

Tap **Install** to continue the installation. An installation successful message is displayed.

You can view any installed user certificates by selecting **Start > Settings > System** and tapping the **Certificates** icon.

Installed root certificates are displayed on the **Root** tab.

---

## Generating a User Certificate

The easiest way to get the user certificate is to use the browser on a PC to navigate to the Certificate Authority. To request the user certificate, open a browser to

<http://<CA IP address>/certsrv>.

Sign into the CA with the username and password of the person who will be logging into the mobile device.



This process saves a user certificate file. There is no separate private key file as used on Windows CE devices.



## Welcome

---

Use this Web site to request a certificate for your Web browser, e-mail client, or other program. By using a certificate, you can verify your identity to people you communicate with over the Web, sign and encrypt messages, and, depending upon the type of certificate you request, perform other security tasks.

You can also use this Web site to download a certificate authority (CA) certificate, certificate chain, or certificate revocation list (CRL), or to view the status of a pending request.

For more information about Certificate Services, see [Certificate Services Documentation](#).

### Select a task:

[Request a certificate](#)

[View the status of a pending certificate request](#)

[Download a CA certificate, certificate chain, or CRL](#)

---

Click the **Request a certificate** link.

## Request a Certificate

---

Select the certificate type:

[User Certificate](#)

Or, submit an [advanced certificate request](#).

---

Click on the **User Certificate** link.

---

## User Certificate - Identifying Information

---

No further identifying information is required. To complete your certificate, press submit:

[More Options >>](#)

---

**Submit >**

Click on the **Submit** button. If there is a message box asking if you want to confirm the request, click **Yes**.  
The User Certificate is issued.

## Certificate Issued

---

The certificate you requested was issued to you.



[Install this certificate](#)

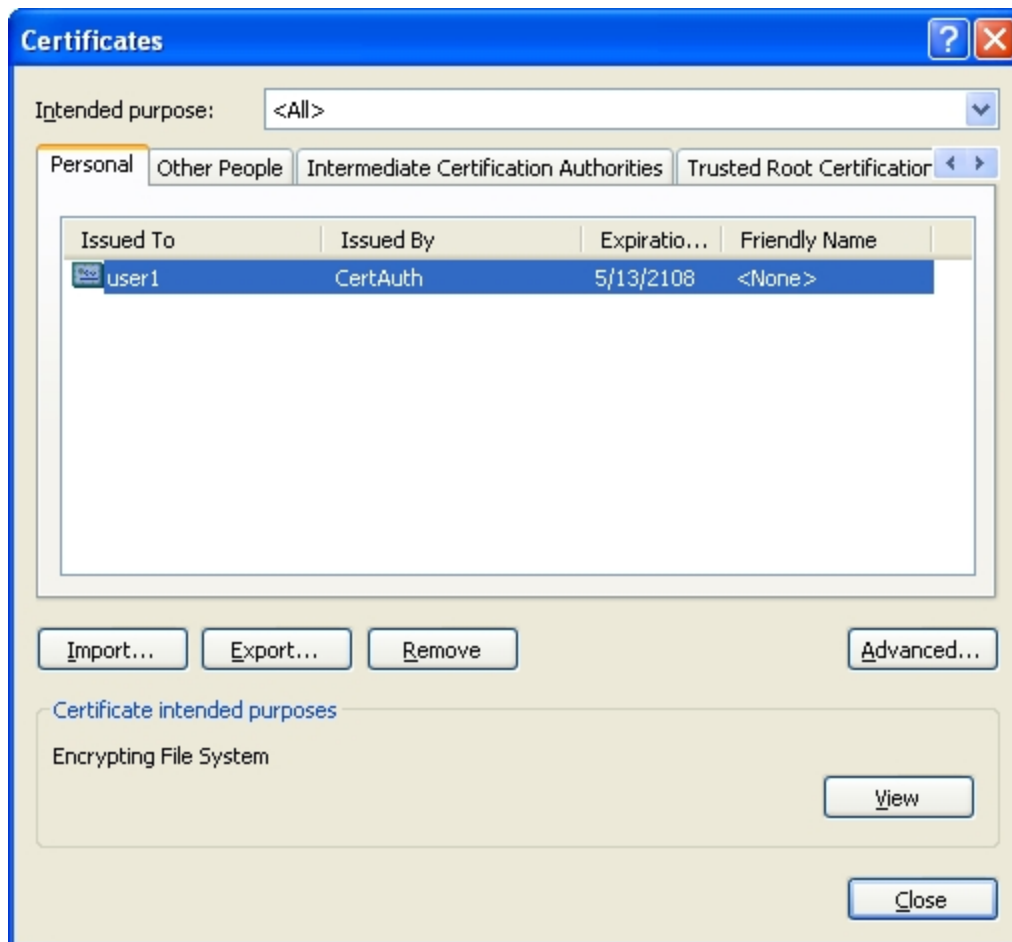
---

Install the user certificate on the requesting computer by clicking the **Install this certificate** link.  
Export the certificate as described below.

## Exporting a User Certificate

Start Internet Explore on the PC that requested the certificate.

Select **Tools > Internet Options > Content** and click the **Certificates** button.



Make sure the **Personal** tab is selected. Highlight the certificate and click the **Export** button.

The Certificate Export Wizard is started

Select **Yes, export the private key** and click Next.

Do you want to export the private key with the certificate?

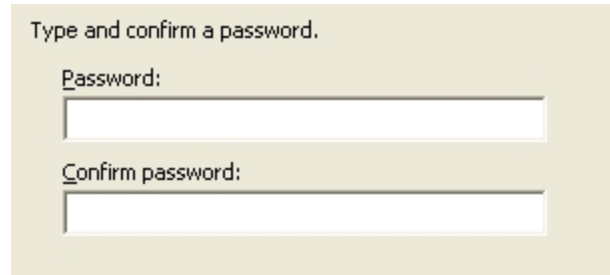
- ☒ Yes, export the private key
- ☐ No, do not export the private key

Uncheck **Enable strong protection** and check **Next**.  
The certificate type must be PKCS #12 (.PFX).

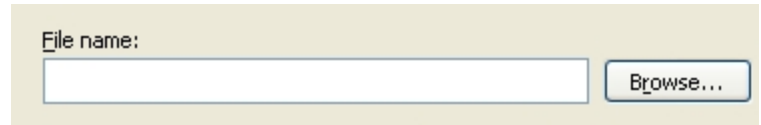
- ☒ Personal Information Exchange - PKCS #12 (.PFX)
  - ☐ Include all certificates in the certification path if possible
  - ☐ Enable strong protection (requires IE 5.0, NT 4.0 SP4 or above)
  - ☐ Delete the private key if the export is successful

---

When the private key is exported, you must enter the password, confirm the password and click **Next**. Be sure to remember the password as it is needed when installing the certificate.

A screenshot of a dialog box with a light beige background. At the top, it says "Type and confirm a password." Below this, there are two text input fields. The first is labeled "Password:" and the second is labeled "Confirm password:". Both fields are empty.

Supply the file name for the certificate. Use the **Browse** button to select the folder where you wish to store the certificate. The certificate is saved with a .PFX extension.

A screenshot of a dialog box with a light beige background. It has a label "File name:" followed by a text input field. To the right of the input field is a button labeled "Browse...".

Click Finish. and OK to close the Successful Export message.

Locate the User Certificate in the specified location. Copy to the MX9. [Install](#) the user certificate.

## ***Installing a User Certificate***

After [generating](#) and [exporting](#) the user certificate, copy it from the PC to the MX9. Copy the certificate to a location on the MX9, such as a storage card or the \System folder.

Locate the certificate file (it has a .PFX extension) and tap on it. You are prompted for the password that was assigned when the certificate was exported.

Enter the password and tap **Done**. A message is displayed that the certificate installation was successful.

You can view any installed user certificates by selecting **Start > Settings > System** and tapping the **Certificates** icon.

Installed user certificates are displayed on the **Personal** tab.

# Chapter 10 - Keymaps

Remember : “Sticky” keys are also known as “second” function keys. Ctl/Ctrl, Alt, Shft, Blue and Orange keys are “sticky keys”. Sticky keys do not need to be held down before pressing the next (or desired) key. It is valid to use combined modifiers on specific keys.

The key mapping in this section relates to the physical keypad. See the [Input Panel](#) for the Virtual (or Soft) Keypad used with the stylus.

## MX9 62-Key Keymap

The following [keypad](#) keymap is used on an MX9 that is not running a Terminal Emulator. Terminal emulators use a separate keymap.

A modifier key pressed after itself toggles that modifier key off.

Modifier keys pressed following any other modifier key clears earlier modifier keys.

Any key press, other than the up arrow or down arrow, exits the volume control and backlight control.

To get this function	Press these keys in this order			Result / Notes
<b>Windows key</b>	CTL	ESC		<i>Windows Start menu</i>
<b>On (when Off)</b>	Power			<i>Power On</i>
<b>Suspend toggle (when On)</b>	Power			<i>Suspend or Resume mode</i>
<b>Volume Up</b>	Orange	Right Scan	Up Arrow	<i>Volume increases</i>
<b>Volume Up</b>	Blue	V	Up Arrow	<i>Volume increases</i>
<b>Volume Down</b>	Orange	Right Scan	Down Arrow	<i>Volume decreases</i>
<b>Volume Down</b>	Blue	V	Down Arrow	<i>Volume decreases</i>
<b>Display Backlight Lighter</b>	Blue	Right Scan	Up Arrow	<i>Backlight lighter</i>
<b>Display Backlight Darker</b>	Blue	Right Scan	Down Arrow	<i>Backlight darker</i>
<b>Alt mode</b>	ALT			<i>Alt mode</i>
<b>Ctl mode</b>	CTL			<i>Control mode</i>
<b>Escape</b>	ESC			<i>Escape</i>
<b>Space</b>	SPC			<i>Space</i>
<b>Enter</b>	Enter			<i>Enter</i>
<b>Capslock toggle</b>	Blue	TAB		<i>Capslock is on or off</i>
<b>Mapped Diamond 1 Key</b>	Diamond 1			<i>Use the Buttons Panel to change default</i>
<b>Uppercase Alpha toggle</b>	SHFT			<i>Shifted letter</i>

To get this function	Press these keys in this order			Result / Notes
<b>Back space</b>	BS (Backspace)			<i>Back one space</i>
<b>Tab</b>	TAB			<i>Tab</i>
<b>Backtab</b>	Orange	TAB		<i>Backtab</i>
<b>Cursor Up</b>	Up Arrow			<i>Cursor up one line</i>
<b>Cursor Down</b>	Down Arrow			<i>Cursor down one line</i>
<b>Cursor Right</b>	Blue	Up Arrow		<i>Cursor right one space</i>
<b>Cursor Left</b>	Blue	Down Arrow		<i>Cursor left one space</i>
<b>Insert</b>	Blue	I (letter i)		<i>Insert mode</i>
<b>Insert</b>	Orange	CTL		<i>Insert mode</i>
<b>Delete</b>	Orange	BS		<i>Delete one character</i>
<b>Home</b>	Orange	SHFT	Down Arrow	<i>Home</i>
<b>End</b>	Orange	SHFT	Up Arrow	<i>End</i>
<b>Page up</b>	Orange	Up Arrow		<i>Up 1 screen</i>
<b>Page down</b>	Orange	Down Arrow		<i>Down 1 screen</i>
<b>F1</b>	F1			<i>F1 mode</i>
<b>F2</b>	F2			<i>F2 mode</i>
<b>F3</b>	F3			<i>F3 mode</i>
<b>F4</b>	F4			<i>F4 mode</i>
<b>F5</b>	F5			<i>F5 mode</i>
<b>F6</b>	F6			<i>F6 mode</i>
<b>F7</b>	F7			<i>F7 mode</i>
<b>F8</b>	F8			<i>F8 mode</i>
<b>F9</b>	F9			<i>F9 mode</i>
<b>F10</b>	F10			<i>F10 mode</i>
<b>F11</b>	Blue	F1		<i>F11 mode</i>
<b>F12</b>	Blue	F2		<i>F12 mode</i>
<b>F13</b>	Blue	F3		<i>F13 mode</i>
<b>F14</b>	Blue	F4		<i>F14 mode</i>
<b>F15</b>	Blue	F5		<i>F15 mode</i>
<b>F16</b>	Blue	F6		<i>F16 mode</i>
<b>F17</b>	Blue	F7		<i>F17 mode</i>
<b>F18</b>	Blue	F8		<i>F18 mode</i>
<b>F19</b>	Blue	F9		<i>F19 mode</i>
<b>F20</b>	Blue	F10		<i>F20 mode</i>
<b>F21</b>	SHFT	F1		<i>F21 mode</i>
<b>F22</b>	SHFT	F2		<i>F22 mode</i>
<b>F23</b>	SHFT	F3		<i>F23 mode</i>

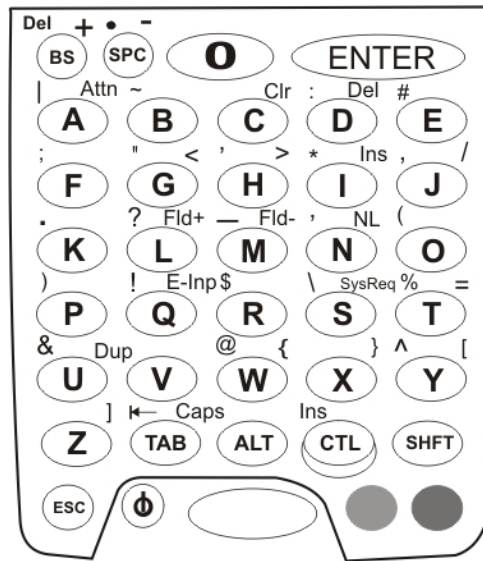
To get this function	Press these keys in this order			Result / Notes
<b>F24</b>	SHFT	F4		<i>F24 mode</i>
<b>a</b>	A			<i>a (lowercase is the default)</i>
<b>b</b>	B			<i>b</i>
<b>c</b>	C			<i>c</i>
<b>d</b>	D			<i>d</i>
<b>e</b>	E			<i>e</i>
<b>f</b>	F			<i>f</i>
<b>g</b>	G			<i>g</i>
<b>h</b>	H			<i>h</i>
<b>i</b>	I			<i>i</i>
<b>j</b>	J			<i>j</i>
<b>k</b>	K			<i>k</i>
<b>l</b>	L			<i>l</i>
<b>m</b>	M			<i>m</i>
<b>n</b>	N			<i>n</i>
<b>o</b>	O			<i>o</i>
<b>p</b>	P			<i>p</i>
<b>q</b>	Q			<i>q</i>
<b>r</b>	R			<i>r</i>
<b>s</b>	S			<i>s</i>
<b>t</b>	T			<i>t</i>
<b>u</b>	U			<i>u</i>
<b>v</b>	V			<i>v</i>
<b>w</b>	W			<i>w</i>
<b>x</b>	X			<i>x</i>
<b>y</b>	Y			<i>y</i>
<b>z</b>	Z			<i>z</i>
<b>A</b>	SHFT	A		<i>A</i>
<b>B</b>	SHFT	B		<i>B</i>
<b>C</b>	SHFT	C		<i>C</i>
<b>D</b>	SHFT	D		<i>D</i>
<b>E</b>	SHFT	E		<i>E</i>
<b>F</b>	SHFT	F		<i>F</i>
<b>G</b>	SHFT	G		<i>G</i>
<b>H</b>	SHFT	H		<i>H</i>
<b>I</b>	SHFT	I		<i>I</i>

To get this function	Press these keys in this order			Result / Notes
J	SHFT	J		<i>J</i>
K	SHFT	K		<i>K</i>
L	SHFT	L		<i>L</i>
M	SHFT	M		<i>M</i>
N	SHFT	N		<i>N</i>
O	SHFT	O		<i>O</i>
P	SHFT	P		<i>P</i>
Q	SHFT	Q		<i>Q</i>
R	SHFT	R		<i>R</i>
S	SHFT	S		<i>S</i>
T	SHFT	T		<i>T</i>
U	SHFT	U		<i>U</i>
V	SHFT	V		<i>V</i>
W	SHFT	W		<i>W</i>
X	SHFT	X		<i>X</i>
Y	SHFT	Y		<i>Y</i>
Z	SHFT	Z		<i>Z</i>
1	1			<i>1</i>
2	2			<i>2</i>
3	3			<i>3</i>
4	4			<i>4</i>
5	5			<i>5</i>
6	6			<i>6</i>
7	7			<i>7</i>
8	8			<i>8</i>
9	9			<i>9</i>
0 (zero)	0			<i>0 (zero)</i>
. (period)	Orange	SPC		<i>Period</i>
. (period)	Orange	K		<i>Period</i>
-	Blue	SPC		<i>Dash or minus sign</i>
/	Blue	J		<i>Reverse Solidus or Backslash</i>
\	Orange	S		<i>Solidus or Forward slash</i>
[	Blue	Y		<i>Left square bracket</i>
]	Blue	Z		<i>Right square bracket</i>
'	Orange	N		<i>Acute accent or single quote or apostrophe</i>



To get this function	Press these keys in this order			Result / Notes
,	Orange	J		<i>Comma</i>
;	Orange	F		<i>Semicolon</i>
=	Blue	T		<i>Equal sign</i>
!	Orange	Q		<i>Exclamation mark</i>
!	SHFT	1 (number)		<i>Exclamation mark</i>
@	Orange	W		<i>At sign</i>
@	SHFT	2 (number)		<i>At sign</i>
#	Orange	E		<i>Number sign</i>
#	SHFT	3 (number)		<i>Number sign</i>
\$	Orange	R		<i>Dollar sign</i>
\$	SHFT	4 (number)		<i>Dollar sign</i>
%	Orange	T		<i>Percent sign</i>
%	SHFT	5 (number)		<i>Percent sign</i>
^	Orange	Y		<i>Caret or circumflex</i>
^	SHFT	6 (number)		<i>Caret or circumflex</i>
&	Orange	U		<i>Ampersand</i>
&	SHFT	7 (number)		<i>Ampersand</i>
*	Orange	I (alpha i)		<i>Asterisk</i>
*	SHFT	8 (number)		<i>Asterisk</i>
(	Orange	O (alpha o)		<i>Left parenthesis</i>
(	SHFT	9 (number)		<i>Right parenthesis</i>
)	Orange	P		<i>Left parenthesis</i>
)	SHFT	0 (zero)		<i>Right parenthesis</i>
"	Orange	G		<i>Double quote</i>
{	Blue	W		<i>Curly left brace</i>
}	Blue	X		<i>Curly right brace</i>
	Orange	A		<i>Vertical bar or Pipe</i>
~	Orange	B		<i>Tilde</i>
<	Blue	G		<i>Less than mark</i>
>	Blue	H		<i>Greater than mark</i>
:	Orange	D		<i>Colon</i>
+	Blue	BS (Backspace)		<i>Plus sign</i>
?	Orange	L		<i>Question mark</i>
_	Orange	M		<i>Underscore or horizontal bar</i>
<b>Enter</b>	ENTER			<i>Enter</i>

## MX9 62-Key 5250 Keypad Keymap



To get this function	Press these keys in this order			Result / Notes
Attention (Attn)	CTL	A		5250 Attn
Clear (Clr)	CTL	C		5250 Clr
Delete (Del)	CTL	D		5250 Del
Duplicate (Dup)	CTL	U		5250 Dup
Erase Input (E-Inp)	CTL	Q		5250 E-Inp
Field Exit (Enter)	Diamond 1			5250 Field Exit
Fld - (Field Minus)	CTL	M		5250 Fld -
Fld + (Field Plus)	CTL	L		5250 Fld +
Ins (Insert)	CTL	I (capital i)		5250 Ins
NL (New Line)	CTL	N		5250 NL
SysReq (System)	CTL	S		5250 SysReq
The following are ANSI keymaps				
Windows key	CTL	ESC		Windows Start menu
On (when Off)	Power			Power On
Suspend toggle (when On)	Power			Suspend or Resume mode
Volume Up	Orange	Right Scan	Up Arrow	Volume increases
Volume Up	Blue	V	Up Arrow	Volume increases
Volume Down	Orange	Right Scan	Down Arrow	Volume decreases
Volume Down	Blue	V	Down Arrow	Volume decreases

To get this function	Press these keys in this order			Result / Notes
Display Backlight Lighter	Blue	Right Scan	Up Arrow	<i>Backlight lighter</i>
Display Backlight Darker	Blue	Right Scan	Down Arrow	<i>Backlight darker</i>
Alt mode	ALT			<i>Alt mode</i>
Ctl mode	CTL			<i>Control mode</i>
Escape	ESC			<i>Escape</i>
Space	SPC			<i>Space</i>
Enter	Enter			<i>Enter</i>
Capslock toggle	Blue	TAB		<i>Capslock is on or off</i>
Mapped Diamond 1 Key	Diamond 1			<i>Use the Buttons Panel to change default</i>
Mapped Diamond 2 Key	Blue	Diamond 1		<i>Use the Buttons Panel to change default</i>
Uppercase Alpha toggle	SHFT			<i>Shifted letter</i>
Back space	BS (Backspace)			<i>Back one space</i>
Tab	TAB			<i>Tab</i>
Backtab	Orange	TAB		<i>Backtab</i>
Cursor Up	Up Arrow			<i>Cursor up one line</i>
Cursor Down	Down Arrow			<i>Cursor down one line</i>
Cursor Right	Blue	Up Arrow		<i>Cursor right one space</i>
Cursor Left	Blue	Down Arrow		<i>Cursor left one space</i>
Insert	Blue	I (letter i)		<i>Insert mode</i>
Insert	Orange	CTL		<i>Insert mode</i>
Delete	Orange	BS		<i>Delete one character</i>
Home	Orange	SHFT	Down Arrow	<i>Home</i>
End	Orange	SHFT	Up Arrow	<i>End</i>
Page up	Orange	Up Arrow		<i>Up 1 screen</i>
Page down	Orange	Down Arrow		<i>Down 1 screen</i>
F1	F1			<i>F1 mode</i>
F2	F2			<i>F2 mode</i>
F3	F3			<i>F3 mode</i>
F4	F4			<i>F4 mode</i>
F5	F5			<i>F5 mode</i>
F6	F6			<i>F6 mode</i>
F7	F7			<i>F7 mode</i>
F8	F8			<i>F8 mode</i>
F9	F9			<i>F9 mode</i>

To get this function	Press these keys in this order			Result / Notes
F10	F10			<i>F10 mode</i>
F11	Blue	F1		<i>F11 mode</i>
F12	Blue	F2		<i>F12 mode</i>
F13	Blue	F3		<i>F13 mode</i>
F14	Blue	F4		<i>F14 mode</i>
F15	Blue	F5		<i>F15 mode</i>
F16	Blue	F6		<i>F16 mode</i>
F17	Blue	F7		<i>F17 mode</i>
F18	Blue	F8		<i>F18 mode</i>
F19	Blue	F9		<i>F19 mode</i>
F20	Blue	F10		<i>F20 mode</i>
F21	SHFT	F1		<i>F21 mode</i>
F22	SHFT	F2		<i>F22 mode</i>
F23	SHFT	F3		<i>F23 mode</i>
F24	SHFT	F4		<i>F24 mode</i>
a	A			<i>a (lowercase is the default)</i>
b	B			<i>b</i>
c	C			<i>c</i>
d	D			<i>d</i>
e	E			<i>e</i>
f	F			<i>f</i>
g	G			<i>g</i>
h	H			<i>h</i>
i	I			<i>i</i>
j	J			<i>j</i>
k	K			<i>k</i>
l	L			<i>l</i>
m	M			<i>m</i>
n	N			<i>n</i>
o	O			<i>o</i>
p	P			<i>p</i>
q	Q			<i>q</i>
r	R			<i>r</i>
s	S			<i>s</i>
t	T			<i>t</i>
u	U			<i>u</i>

To get this function	Press these keys in this order			Result / Notes
v	V			<i>v</i>
w	W			<i>w</i>
x	X			<i>x</i>
y	Y			<i>y</i>
z	Z			<i>z</i>
A	SHFT	A		<i>A</i>
B	SHFT	B		<i>B</i>
C	SHFT	C		<i>C</i>
D	SHFT	D		<i>D</i>
E	SHFT	E		<i>E</i>
F	SHFT	F		<i>F</i>
G	SHFT	G		<i>G</i>
H	SHFT	H		<i>H</i>
I	SHFT	I		<i>I</i>
J	SHFT	J		<i>J</i>
K	SHFT	K		<i>K</i>
L	SHFT	L		<i>L</i>
M	SHFT	M		<i>M</i>
N	SHFT	N		<i>N</i>
O	SHFT	O		<i>O</i>
P	SHFT	P		<i>P</i>
Q	SHFT	Q		<i>Q</i>
R	SHFT	R		<i>R</i>
S	SHFT	S		<i>S</i>
T	SHFT	T		<i>T</i>
U	SHFT	U		<i>U</i>
V	SHFT	V		<i>V</i>
W	SHFT	W		<i>W</i>
X	SHFT	X		<i>X</i>
Y	SHFT	Y		<i>Y</i>
Z	SHFT	Z		<i>Z</i>
1	1			<i>1</i>
2	2			<i>2</i>
3	3			<i>3</i>
4	4			<i>4</i>
5	5			<i>5</i>
6	6			<i>6</i>

To get this function	Press these keys in this order			Result / Notes
7	7			7
8	8			8
9	9			9
0 (zero)	0			0 (zero)
. (period)	Orange	SPC		Period
. (period)	Orange	K		Period
-	Blue	SPC		Dash or minus sign
/	Blue	J		Reverse Solidus or Backslash
\	Orange	S		Solidus or Forward slash
[	Blue	Y		Left square bracket
]	Blue	Z		Right square bracket
'	Orange	N		Acute accent or single quote or apostrophe
,	Orange	J		Comma
;	Orange	F		Semicolon
=	Blue	T		Equal sign
!	Orange	Q		Exclamation mark
!	SHFT	1 (number)		Exclamation mark
@	Orange	W		At sign
@	SHFT	2 (number)		At sign
#	Orange	E		Number sign
#	SHFT	3 (number)		Number sign
\$	Orange	R		Dollar sign
\$	SHFT	4 (number)		Dollar sign
%	Orange	T		Percent sign
%	SHFT	5 (number)		Percent sign
^	Orange	Y		Caret or circumflex
^	SHFT	6 (number)		Caret or circumflex
&	Orange	U		Ampersand
&	SHFT	7 (number)		Ampersand
*	Orange	I (alpha i)		Asterisk
*	SHFT	8 (number)		Asterisk
(	Orange	O (alpha o)		Left parenthesis
(	SHFT	9 (number)		Right parenthesis
)	Orange	P		Left parenthesis

To get this function	Press these keys in this order			Result / Notes
)	SHFT	0 (zero)		<i>Right parenthesis</i>
"	Orange	G		<i>Double quote</i>
{	Blue	W		<i>Curly left brace</i>
}	Blue	X		<i>Curly right brace</i>
	Orange	A		<i>Vertical bar or Pipe</i>
~	Orange	B		<i>Tilde</i>
<	Blue	G		<i>Less than mark</i>
>	Blue	H		<i>Greater than mark</i>
:	Orange	D		<i>Colon</i>
+	Blue	BS (Backspace)		<i>Plus sign</i>
?	Orange	L		<i>Question mark</i>
_	Orange	M		<i>Underscore or horizontal bar</i>
Enter	ENTER			<i>Enter</i>

---

## MX9 38-key Keymap

The following [keypad](#) keymap is used on an MX9 that is not running a Terminal Emulator. Terminal emulators use a separate keymap.

A modifier key pressed after itself toggles that modifier key off.

Any key press, other than a modifier key following any modifier key *unsticks* the modifier keys.

Any key press, other than up or down arrow, exits volume control mode or backlight control mode.

To get this function	Press these keys in this order			Result / Notes
Windows key	CTRL	Esc		Windows Start menu
On (when Off)	Power			Power On
Suspend toggle (when On)	Power			Suspend or Resume mode
Volume Up	Orange	Right Scan	Up Arrow	Volume increases
Volume Down	Orange	Right Scan	Down Arrow	Volume decreases
Display Backlight Lighter	Blue	Right Scan	Up Arrow	Backlight lighter
Display Backlight Darker	Blue	Right Scan	Down Arrow	Backlight darker
Scan (Right)	Right Scan			Activate decoder
Scan (Left)	Left Scan			Activate decoder
Alt mode	ALT			Alt mode
Ctrl mode	CTRL			Control mode
Escape	Esc			Escape
Space	SPC			Space
Enter	Enter			Enter
Capslock toggle	Blue	TAB		Capslock is on or off
Mapped Diamond 1 Key	Diamond 1			Use the Buttons Panel to change default
Mapped Diamond 2 Key	Diamond 2			Use the Buttons Panel to change default
Uppercase Alpha toggle	SHIFT			Shifted letter
Back space	BKSP			Back one space
Tab	TAB			Tab
Backtab	Orange	TAB		Backtab
Cursor Up	Up Arrow			Cursor up one line
Cursor Down	Down Arrow			Cursor down one line
Cursor Right	Blue	Up Arrow		Cursor right one space



To get this function	Press these keys in this order			Result / Notes
<b>Cursor Left</b>	Blue	Down Arrow		<i>Cursor left one space</i>
<b>Insert</b>	Orange	CTRL		<i>Insert mode</i>
<b>Delete</b>	Orange	BKSP		<i>Delete one character</i>
<b>Home</b>	Orange	SHIFT	Down Arrow	<i>Home</i>
<b>End</b>	Orange	SHIFT	Up Arrow	<i>End</i>
<b>Page up</b>	Orange	Up Arrow		<i>Up 1 screen</i>
<b>Page down</b>	Orange	Down Arrow		<i>Down 1 screen</i>
<b>F1</b>	F1			<i>F1 mode</i>
<b>F2</b>	F2			<i>F2 mode</i>
<b>F3</b>	F3			<i>F3 mode</i>
<b>F4</b>	F4			<i>F4 mode</i>
<b>F5</b>	F5			<i>F5 mode</i>
<b>F6</b>	F6			<i>F6 mode</i>
<b>F7</b>	F7			<i>F7 mode</i>
<b>F8</b>	F8			<i>F8 mode</i>
<b>F9</b>	F9			<i>F9 mode</i>
<b>F10</b>	F10			<i>F10 mode</i>
<b>F11</b>	Blue	F1		<i>F11 mode</i>
<b>F12</b>	Blue	F2		<i>F12 mode</i>
<b>F13</b>	Blue	F3		<i>F13 mode</i>
<b>F14</b>	Blue	F4		<i>F14 mode</i>
<b>F15</b>	Blue	F5		<i>F15 mode</i>
<b>F17</b>	Blue	F7		<i>F17 mode</i>
<b>F18</b>	Blue	F8		<i>F18 mode</i>
<b>F19</b>	Blue	F9		<i>F19 mode</i>
<b>F20</b>	Blue	F10		<i>F20 mode</i>
<b>F21</b>	SHIFT	F1		<i>F21 mode</i>
<b>F22</b>	SHIFT	F2		<i>F22 mode</i>
<b>F23</b>	SHIFT	F3		<i>F23 mode</i>
<b>F24</b>	SHIFT	F4		<i>F24 mode</i>
<b>a</b>	Alpha	2		<i>a</i>
<b>b</b>	Alpha	22		<i>b</i>
<b>c</b>	Alpha	222		<i>c</i>
<b>d</b>	Alpha	3		<i>d</i>
<b>e</b>	Alpha	33		<i>e</i>
<b>f</b>	Alpha	333		<i>f</i>
<b>g</b>	Alpha	4		<i>g</i>

To get this function	Press these keys in this order			Result / Notes
<b>h</b>	Alpha	44		<i>h</i>
<b>i</b>	Alpha	444		<i>i</i>
<b>j</b>	Alpha	5		<i>j</i>
<b>k</b>	Alpha	55		<i>k</i>
<b>l</b>	Alpha	555		<i>l</i>
<b>m</b>	Alpha	6		<i>m</i>
<b>n</b>	Alpha	66		<i>n</i>
<b>o</b>	Alpha	666		<i>o</i>
<b>p</b>	Alpha	7		<i>p</i>
<b>q</b>	Alpha	77		<i>q</i>
<b>r</b>	Alpha	777		<i>r</i>
<b>s</b>	Alpha	7777		<i>s</i>
<b>t</b>	Alpha	8		<i>t</i>
<b>u</b>	Alpha	88		<i>u</i>
<b>v</b>	Alpha	888		<i>v</i>
<b>w</b>	Alpha	9		<i>w</i>
<b>x</b>	Alpha	99		<i>x</i>
<b>y</b>	Alpha	999		<i>y</i>
<b>z</b>	Alpha	9999		<i>z</i>
<b>A</b>	SHFT	Alpha	2	<i>A</i>
<b>B</b>	SHFT	Alpha	22	<i>B</i>
<b>C</b>	SHFT	Alpha	222	<i>C</i>
<b>D</b>	SHFT	Alpha	3	<i>D</i>
<b>E</b>	SHFT	Alpha	33	<i>E</i>
<b>F</b>	SHFT	Alpha	333	<i>F</i>
<b>G</b>	SHFT	Alpha	4	<i>G</i>
<b>H</b>	SHFT	Alpha	44	<i>H</i>
<b>I</b>	SHFT	Alpha	444	<i>I</i>
<b>J</b>	SHFT	Alpha	5	<i>J</i>
<b>K</b>	SHFT	Alpha	55	<i>K</i>
<b>L</b>	SHFT	Alpha	555	<i>L</i>
<b>M</b>	SHFT	Alpha	6	<i>M</i>
<b>N</b>	SHFT	Alpha	66	<i>N</i>
<b>O</b>	SHFT	Alpha	666	<i>O</i>
<b>P</b>	SHFT	Alpha	7	<i>P</i>
<b>Q</b>	SHFT	Alpha	77	<i>Q</i>
<b>R</b>	SHFT	Alpha	777	<i>R</i>

To get this function	Press these keys in this order			Result / Notes
<b>S</b>	SHFT	Alpha	7777	<i>S</i>
<b>T</b>	SHFT	Alpha	8	<i>T</i>
<b>U</b>	SHFT	Alpha	88	<i>U</i>
<b>V</b>	SHFT	Alpha	888	<i>V</i>
<b>W</b>	SHFT	Alpha	9	<i>W</i>
<b>X</b>	SHFT	Alpha	99	<i>X</i>
<b>Y</b>	SHFT	Alpha	999	<i>Y</i>
<b>Z</b>	SHFT	Alpha	9999	<i>Z</i>
<b>1</b>	1			<i>1</i>
<b>2</b>	2			<i>2</i>
<b>3</b>	3			<i>3</i>
<b>4</b>	4			<i>4</i>
<b>5</b>	5			<i>5</i>
<b>6</b>	6			<i>6</i>
<b>7</b>	7			<i>7</i>
<b>8</b>	8			<i>8</i>
<b>9</b>	9			<i>9</i>
<b>0 (zero)</b>	0			<i>0 (zero)</i>
<b>. (period)</b>	Orange	SPC		<i>Period</i>
<b>-</b>	Blue	SPC		<i>Dash or minus sign</i>
<b>/</b>	Blue	1		<i>Reverse Solidus or Backslash</i>
<b>\</b>	Orange	1		<i>Solidus or Forward slash</i>
<b>[</b>	Orange	2		<i>Left square bracket</i>
<b>[</b>	Blue	2		<i>Left square bracket</i>
<b>]</b>	Orange	3		<i>Right square bracket</i>
<b>]</b>	Blue	3		<i>Right square bracket</i>
<b>'</b>	Orange	Alpha		<i>Acute sign or single quote or apostrophe</i>
<b>,</b>	Orange	6		<i>Comma</i>
<b>;</b>	Blue	0 (zero)		<i>Semicolon</i>
<b>=</b>	Orange	Esc		<i>Equal sign</i>
<b>!</b>	Blue	ALT		<i>Exclamation mark</i>
<b>!</b>	SHFT	1 (number)		<i>Exclamation mark</i>
<b>@</b>	Orange	5		<i>At sign</i>
<b>@</b>	SHFT	2 (number)		<i>At sign</i>

To get this function	Press these keys in this order			Result / Notes
#	Orange	4		<i>Number sign</i>
#	SHFT	3 (number)		<i>Number sign</i>
\$	Orange	9		<i>Dollar sign</i>
\$	SHFT	4 (number)		<i>Dollar sign</i>
%	SHFT	5 (number)		<i>Percent sign</i>
^	Blue	CTRL		<i>Caret or circumflex</i>
^	SHFT	6 (number)		<i>Caret or circumflex</i>
&	SHFT	7 (number)		<i>Ampersand</i>
*	Orange	Diamond 1		<i>Asterisk</i>
*	SHFT	8 (number)		<i>Asterisk</i>
(	Blue	Esc		<i>Left parenthesis</i>
(	SHFT	9 (number)		<i>Right parenthesis</i>
)	Blue	SHIFT		<i>Left parenthesis</i>
)	SHIFT	0 (zero)		<i>Right parenthesis</i>
"	Blue	Alpha		<i>Double quote</i>
{	Blue	4		<i>Curly left brace</i>
}	Blue	5		<i>Curly right brace</i>
	Orange	ALT		<i>Vertical bar</i>
~	Blue	9		<i>Tilde</i>
<	Blue	7		<i>Less than mark</i>
>	Blue	8		<i>More than mark</i>
:	Orange	0 (zero)		<i>Colon</i>
+	Blue	BKSP (Backspace)		<i>Plus sign</i>
?	Orange	8		<i>Question mark</i>
_	Orange	7		<i>Underscore or horizontal bar</i>

# Chapter 11 - Technical Specifications

Processor	Marvell PXA-320 / 806 MHz
Memory	128MB on-board RAM / 128 on-board Flash
Expansion slots	SD expansion slot for flash memory (128MB / 512MB / 1GB / and 4 GB supported) Internal CF slot for Summit a/b/g radio, protected inside device.
Operating Systems	Microsoft® Windows® CE 5 Microsoft® Windows® Mobile® 6.5
Radio Modules	802.11 a/b/g radio / WWAN / SuperRaptor radio / Bluetooth / GPS receiver
Integrated Scanner / Imager	Symbol SE955 short range scan engine or replacement Symbol SE1524 Lorax scan engine Hand Held Products 5300SF imager
Display technology	TFT / Active Matrix / Transflective / LED backlight
Touch screen actuation force	10 grams min to 80 grams max
Standard Battery	2400mAh (room temperature)
Low Temperature Battery	2200mAh (room temperature)
Backup Power	SuperCap is used for backup, no backup "battery" is used.
External I/O Port Functions	External Power In USB Host USB Client RS232 RS232 w/5V 4-wire Audio 10/100 BaseT Ethernet (Ethernet port available in cradle)
Internal I/O Ports	One serial port (DTE) with appropriate power for a WAN radio One serial port (DTE) for an integrated laser decoder USB 1.1 Host (capable) with power (5V @ 500mA) One SSP port (capable) One SD port for I/O expansion (capable) One SIM port for WAN One serial port (DTE) for interface with GPS receiver chip One camera port for non-decoding imager

---

## Dimensions and Weight

Dimensions and weights for MX9 configurations.

Length (overall)	9.94 in / 25.2 cm
Width at Display	3.87 in / 9.8 cm
Depth at display/scanner	2.67 in / 6.8 cm
Width at keypad	2.94 in / 7.5 cm
Depth at keypad	1.78 in / 4.5 cm
Configured with battery, scanner, Bluetooth, 802.11x radio, handstrap and stylus	34.75 oz / .9.85 kg
Configured with battery, Bluetooth, handstrap and stylus	30.6 oz / .87 kg
Configured with battery, scanner, Bluetooth, 802.11x radio, trigger handle and stylus	37.83 oz / .1.072 kg

## Environmental Specifications

Standard Operating Temperature	-4°F to 140°F (-20°C to 60°C) [non-condensing]
Freezer Operating Temperature	-22°F to 140°F (-30°C to 60°C) [with heater or other additions as required]
Storage Temperature	-4°F to 158°F (-20°C to 70°C) [non-condensing]
Operating Humidity	5% to 95% non-condensing. This does not apply to cold storage areas where condensation will appear.
Water and Dust	IEC 60529 compliant to IP67
Vibration	Based on MIL Std 810D
Bluetooth Range	32.8 feet (10 meters) Direct line of sight only

## Main Battery Technical Specifications

Standard Battery Operating Temperature Range	-20°C to + 60°C (-4°F to 140°F) non-condensing
Standard Battery Storage Temperature Range	-20°C to + 70°C (-4°F to 158°F) to non-condensing
Low Temperature Battery Operating Temperature Range	-30°C to + 60°C (-22°F to 140°F) non-condensing
Low Temperature Battery Storage Temperature Range	-30°C to + 70°C (-22°F to 158°F) non-condensing
Operating Humidity	5% to 95% non-condensing at 40°C (104°F)
Ingress Protection Enclosure Rating	Compliant to IP67
Charge Cycles	500 minimum
Discharge Time (Average)	Standard: 8 hours Low Temperature: 5 hours
Discharge Current (Average)	< 300mA
Charging low-voltage cut-off	3.9A nominal

## Wireless Radio

Two wireless radios are available:

- Summit CF 802.11b/g (2.4GHz)
- Summit CF 802.11a/b/g (5 GHz)

These radios support antenna diversity and are WiFi certified.

For 2.4 GHz frequency band, the site survey limit is -75 dBm signal strength, 15 dB SNR as measured by Honeywell.

For 5 GHz frequency band, the site survey limit is -65 dBm signal strength, 15 dB SNR as measured by Honeywell.

The noise levels for each of the radios (as measured by the MX9 appropriate antenna) is less than or equal to the values specified in the table below for the frequency band specified:

WLAN Radio Type	Noise Level (dBm)	Channel Bandwidth	Frequency Band
802.11 b/g	- 95 dBm	20 MHz	2.4 GHz - 2.483 GHz
802.11a/b/g	- 85 dBm	20 MHz	5.15-5.35GHz (FCC UNII 1 and UNII 2), 5.725-5.825GHz (FCC UNII 3)

WLAN Radio Type	Channels
802.11 b/g	1-11 FCC, 1-13 ETSI
802.11a/b/g	FCC: 1-11, 36, 40, 44, 48, 149, 153, 157, 161 ETSI: 1-13, 36, 40, 44, 48

---

## Bluetooth System Compatibility

Bluetooth specification Version 2.0 + EDR . Supports Bluetooth Enhanced Data Rate (EDR)

- Supports UART
- Class 2 – 2.5mW (4dBm) output power
- Supports the 921 kbps baud rate
- Adaptive Frequency Hopping – AFH
- Backward compatibility with Bluetooth 1.1 and 1.2

## WAN Radio

*Note: Only one radio at a time can be in an MX9.*

The MX9 provides an 802.11a/b/g WAN radio and supports GSM/EDGE.

Carriers are AT&T in the US (GSM) and RTTE Europe.

GSM radios are shipped on deactivated SIM cards.

## COM Ports

COM Port	Used By	Default Power Setting	Communication Default
1	External serial	On	9600 baud, 8 bits, no parity, 1 stop bit
2	Bluetooth	On	9600 baud, 8 bits, no parity, 1 stop bit
3	WWAN	Off	9600 baud, 8 bits, no parity, 1 stop bit
4	Integrated Bar Code Reader	On	9600 baud, 8 bits, no parity, 1 stop bit
5	GPS	Off	9600 baud, 8 bits, no parity, 1 stop bit (Default baud rate is 4800 for NMEA communications)



---

## AC/DC Wall Adapter

The AC/DC Power Adapter is only intended for use in a 25°C (77°F) maximum ambient temperature environment.

Input Power Switch	None
Power "ON" Indicator	LED
Input Fusing	Thermal Fuse
Input Voltage	100 VAC min – 240 VAC max
Input Frequency	50 - 60 Hz
Input Connector	Three prong wall plug with ground
Output Connector	AC wall adapter has a 5.5mm barrel connector. It connects to the I/O cables which transition power to the D connector.
Output Voltage	15 VDC
Output Current	4 Amps max
Output Power	60 Watt max
Charging low-voltage cut-off	3.9A nominal
Operating Temperature	32° F to 100° F / -0° C to 40° C
Storage Temperature	-4° F to 140° F / -20° C to 60° C
Weight	250 grams

---

## GPS Receiver Technical Specifications

The GPS receiver COM port is turned off by default. The COM port is 5, defaults are 9600 baud, 8 bits, no parity, 1 stop bit. COM5 default baud rate is 4800 for NMEA communication. GPS COM settings are stored in the registry.

### Frequency Band

Channel bandwidth is 2 MHz. Frequency band is 1574.42 GHz to 1576.42 GHz.

### Serial Interface

The GPS module supports serial interface for data communication. Transmission (TX) and Reception (RX) signals are implemented to send commands and to receive GPS data. UART B on the module is used for communication.

The default baud rate for the NMEA 0183 protocol is 9600 bps, 8 bits, Parity None, 1 Stop. The baud rate can be increased to 115Kbps.

### Accuracy

Position to within 10 meters, 2D Root Mean Square (RMS) and 5 meters 2D RMS, Satellite Based Augmentation System (SBAS) corrected.

Velocity to within 24 meters per second.

SBAS is compatible with the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS) satellite signal augementer (United States) and the EGNOS satellite signal augementer (Europe).

### Protocol

The module outputs the following messages:

- GGA - GPS Fix Data
- RMS - Recommended Minimum Specific GPS Data
- GSA - GPS DOP and Active Satellites
- GSV - GPS Satellites in View
- GLL - Geographic Position Latitude/Longitude
- VTG - Course over Ground and Ground Speed.

The GPS module supports NMEA 0183 protocol and SiRF Binary Protocol.

# Chapter 12 - Technical Assistance

If you need assistance installing or troubleshooting your device, please contact us by using one of the methods below:

**Knowledge Base:** [www.hsmknowledgebase.com](http://www.hsmknowledgebase.com)

Our Knowledge Base provides thousands of immediate solutions. If the Knowledge Base cannot help, our Technical Support Portal (see below) provides an easy way to report your problem or ask your question.

**Technical Support Portal:** [www.hsmsupportportal.com](http://www.hsmsupportportal.com)

The Technical Support Portal not only allows you to report your problem, but it also provides immediate solutions to your technical issues by searching our Knowledge Base. With the Portal, you can submit and track your questions online and send and receive attachments.

**Web form:** [www.hsmcontactsupport.com](http://www.hsmcontactsupport.com)

You can contact our technical support team directly by filling out our online support form. Enter your contact details and the description of the question/problem.

**Telephone:** [www.honeywellaidc.com/locations](http://www.honeywellaidc.com/locations)

For our latest contact information, please check our website at the link above.

## Product Service and Repair

Honeywell International Inc. provides service for all of its products through service centers throughout the world. To obtain warranty or non-warranty service, please visit [www.honeywellaidc.com](http://www.honeywellaidc.com) and select **Contact Us > Service and Repair** to see your region's instructions on how to obtain a Return Material Authorization number (RMA #). You should do this prior to returning the product.

## Limited Warranty

Honeywell International Inc. ("HII") warrants its products to be free from defects in materials and workmanship and to conform to HII's published specifications applicable to the products purchased at the time of shipment. This warranty does not cover any HII product which is (i) improperly installed or used; (ii) damaged by accident or negligence, including failure to follow the proper maintenance, service, and cleaning schedule; or (iii) damaged as a result of (A) modification or alteration by the purchaser or other party, (B) excessive voltage or current supplied to or drawn from the interface connections, (C) static electricity or electro-static discharge, (D) operation under conditions beyond the specified operating parameters, or (E) repair or service of the product by anyone other than HII or its authorized representatives.

This warranty shall extend from the time of shipment for the duration published by HII for the product at the time of purchase ("Warranty Period"). Any defective product must be returned (at purchaser's expense) during the Warranty Period to HII factory or authorized service center for inspection. No product will be accepted by HII without a Return Materials Authorization, which may be obtained by contacting HII. In the event that the product is returned to HII or its authorized service center within the Warranty Period and HII determines to its satisfaction that the product is defective due to defects in materials or workmanship, HII, at its sole option, will either repair or replace the product without charge, except for return shipping to HII.

EXCEPT AS MAY BE OTHERWISE PROVIDED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE FOREGOING WARRANTY IS IN LIEU OF ALL OTHER COVENANTS OR WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, ORAL OR WRITTEN, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NON-INFRINGEMENT.

HII'S RESPONSIBILITY AND PURCHASER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY UNDER THIS WARRANTY IS LIMITED TO THE REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT OF THE DEFECTIVE PRODUCT WITH NEW OR REFURBISHED PARTS. IN NO EVENT

---

SHALL HII BE LIABLE FOR INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, AND, IN NO EVENT, SHALL ANY LIABILITY OF HII ARISING IN CONNECTION WITH ANY PRODUCT SOLD HEREUNDER (WHETHER SUCH LIABILITY ARISES FROM A CLAIM BASED ON CONTRACT, WARRANTY, TORT, OR OTHERWISE) EXCEED THE ACTUAL AMOUNT PAID TO HII FOR THE PRODUCT. THESE LIMITATIONS ON LIABILITY SHALL REMAIN IN FULL FORCE AND EFFECT EVEN WHEN HII MAY HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH INJURIES, LOSSES, OR DAMAGES. SOME STATES, PROVINCES, OR COUNTRIES DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATIONS OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATION OR EXCLUSION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

All provisions of this Limited Warranty are separate and severable, which means that if any provision is held invalid and unenforceable, such determination shall not affect the validity of enforceability of the other provisions hereof. Use of any peripherals not provided by the manufacturer may result in damage not covered by this warranty. This includes but is not limited to: cables, power supplies, cradles, and docking stations. HII extends these warranties only to the first end-users of the products. These warranties are non-transferable.

The duration of the limited warranty for the MX9 is 1 year.

The duration of the limited warranty for the MX9 Desktop Cradle is 1 year.

The duration of the limited warranty for the MX9 Vehicle Cradle is 1 year.

The duration of the limited warranty for the MX9 Battery Charger is 1 year.

The duration of the limited warranty for the MX9 2400mAh Li-Ion and 2100mAh Li-Ion Battery is 6 months.

The duration of the limited warranty for the MX9 AC power supply and cables is 1 year.

The duration of the limited warranty for the MX9 DC-DC Converter and cable is 1 year.

The duration of the limited warranty for the MX9 cables (USB, Serial, Communication, Power) is 1 year.

The duration of the limited warranty for the MX9 fabric accessories (e.g., belt, case, holster) is 90 days.

---

Honeywell Scanning & Mobility  
9680 Old Bailes Road  
Fort Mill, SC 29707  
[www.honeywellaidc.com](http://www.honeywellaidc.com)